
LIMITED WARRANTY • 1
LIMITED WARRANTY - ROADMASTER CHASSIS • 5
WARRANTY INFORMATION FILE • 8

MONACO COACH CORPORATION LIMITED WARRANTY

**LIMITED
WARRANTY
- 2002 Knight**

What the Period of Coverage Is:

If you use your Monaco motorhome only for recreational travel and family camping purposes, the Limited Warranty provided by Monaco Coach Corporation ("Warrantor") covers your new motorhome when sold by an authorized dealer, for twelve (12) months from the original retail purchase date or the first 24,000 miles of use, whichever occurs first. However, the Limited Warranty provided by Warrantor covers the steel or aluminum frame structure of the sidewalls (excluding slide outs), roof, and rear and front walls for sixty (60) months from the original retail purchase date or the first 50,000 miles of use, whichever comes first.

If you use your motorhome for any rental, commercial or business purposes whatsoever, the Limited Warranty provided by Warrantor covers your new motorhome when sold by an authorized dealer for ninety (90) days from the original retail purchase date or the first 24,000 miles of use, whichever occurs first. In addition, the Limited Warranty provided by Warrantor covers the steel or aluminum frame structure of the sidewalls (excluding slide outs), roof, and rear and front walls for twelve (12) months from the original purchase date or the first 24,000 miles of use, whichever comes first. A conclusive presumption that your motorhome has been used for commercial and/or business purposes arises if you have filed a federal or state tax form claiming any business tax benefit related to your ownership of the motorhome.

The above Limited Warranty coverage applies to all owners, including subsequent owners, of the motorhome. However, a subsequent owner must submit a warranty transfer form by filing the form through an authorized Monaco dealer. A subsequent owner's warranty coverage period is the remaining balance of the warranty coverage period the prior owner was entitled to under this Limited Warranty. Warranty transfer forms can be obtained by contacting the Consumer Affairs Department. There is no charge for the transfer.

Limitations of Implied Warranties

ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES ARISING BY WAY OF STATE LAW, INCLUDING ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY AND ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ARE LIMITED IN DURATION TO THE TERM OF THIS LIMITED WARRANTY AND ARE LIMITED IN SCOPE OF COVERAGE TO THOSE PORTIONS OF THE MOTORHOME COVERED BY THIS LIMITED WARRANTY. There is no warranty of any nature made by Warrantor beyond that contained in this Limited Warranty. No person has authority to enlarge, amend or modify this Limited Warranty. The dealer is not the Warrantor's agent but is an independent entity. Warrantor is not responsible for any undertaking, representation or warranty made by any dealer or other person beyond those expressly set forth in this Limited Warranty. Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, so the above limitation may not apply to you.

What the Warranty Covers

Warrantor's Limited Warranty covers defects in the manufacture of your motorhome and defects in materials used to manufacture your motorhome. Also see the section "What the Warranty Does Not Cover" set out below.

What We Will Do to Correct Problems

Warrantor will repair and/or replace, at its option, any covered defect if: (1) you notify Warrantor or one of its authorized servicing dealers of the defect within the warranty coverage period and within five (5) days of discovering the defect; and (2) you deliver your Motorhome to Warrantor or Warrantor's authorized servicing dealer at your cost and expense. It is reasonable to expect some service items to occur during the warranty period.

Warrantor may use new and/or remanufactured parts and/or components of substantially equal quality to complete any repair.

Defects and/or damage to interior and exterior surfaces, trim, upholstery and other appearance items may occur at the factory during manufacture, during delivery of the motorhome to the selling dealer or on the selling dealer's lot. Normally, any such defect or damage is detected and corrected at the factory or by the selling dealer during the inspection process performed by the Warrantor and the selling dealer. If, however, you discover any such defect or damage when you take delivery of the motorhome, you must notify your dealer or Warrantor within five days of the date of purchase to have repairs performed to the defect at no cost to you as provided by this Limited Warranty.

If two or more unsuccessful repair attempts have been made to correct any covered defect that you believe substantially impairs the value, use or safety of your motorhome, you must, to the extent permitted by law, notify Warrantor directly in writing of the failure to successfully repair the defect so that Warrantor can become directly involved in performing a successful repair to the identified defect.

The Warranty Registration form must be returned to Warrantor promptly upon purchase to assure proper part replacement or repair and to activate your Limited Warranty. For warranty service simply contact one of Warrantor's authorized service centers for an appointment, then deliver your motorhome (at your expense) to the service center. If you need assistance in locating an authorized warranty service facility, contact Warrantor's Warranty Department (1-877-466-6226). The mailing address is:

**Monaco Coach Corporation
91320 Coburg Industrial Way
Coburg, Oregon 97408**

How to Get Service

In the event the motorhome is inoperative due to malfunction of a warranted part, Warrantor will pay the cost of having the motorhome towed to the nearest authorized repair facility provided you notify Warrantor prior to incurring the towing charges to receive directions to the nearest repair facility.

Because Warrantor does not control the scheduling of service work by its authorized servicing dealers, you may encounter some delay in scheduling and/or in the completion of the repairs.

This Limited Warranty does not cover: any motorhome sold or registered outside of the United States or Canada; items which are added or changed after the motorhome leaves Warrantor's possession; items that are working as designed but which you are unhappy with because of the design; normal wear and usage, such as fading or discoloration of fabrics, or the effects of condensation inside the motorhome; defacing, scratching, dents and chips on any surface or fabric of the motorhome, not caused by Warrantor; routine maintenance, including by way of example wheel alignments; the automotive chassis and power train, including, by way of example the engine, drivetrain, steering and handling, braking, wheel balance, muffler, tires, tubes, batteries and gauges; appliances and components covered by their own manufacturer's warranty including, by way of example the microwave, refrigerator, ice maker, stove, oven, generator, roof air conditioners, hydraulic jacks, VCR, television(s), water heater, furnace, stereo, radio, compact disc player, washer, dryer, inverter and cellular phone; or flaking, peeling and chips or other defects or damage in or to the exterior or finish caused by rocks or other road hazards, the environment including airborne pollutants, salt, tree sap and hail.

What the Warranty Does Not Cover

**Events Discharging
Warrantor from
Obligation Under
Warranty**

Misuse or neglect, accidents, unauthorized alteration, failure to provide reasonable and necessary maintenance (See Owner's Manual), damage caused by off road use, collision, fire, theft, vandalism, explosions, overloading, and odometer tampering shall discharge Warrantor from any express or implied warranty obligation to repair any resulting defect.

**Disclaimer of
Consequential &
Incidental Damages**

THE ORIGINAL PURCHASER OF THE MOTORHOME AND ANY PERSON TO WHOM THE MOTORHOME IS TRANSFERRED, AND ANY PERSON WHO IS AN INTENDED OR UNINTENDED USER OR BENEFICIARY OF THE MOTORHOME, SHALL NOT BE ENTITLED TO RECOVER FROM WARRANTOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES RESULTING FROM ANY DEFECT IN THE MOTORHOME. THE EXCLUSION OF CONSEQUENTIAL AND INCIDENTAL DAMAGES SHALL BE DEEMED INDEPENDENT OF, AND SHALL SURVIVE, ANY FAILURE OF THE ESSENTIAL PURPOSE OF ANY LIMITED REMEDY. Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of consequential or incidental damages, so the above exclusions may not apply to you.

Legal Remedies

ANY ACTION TO ENFORCE THIS EXPRESS OR ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY SHALL NOT BE COMMENCED MORE THAN ONE (1) YEAR AFTER THE EXPIRATION OF THIS WARRANTY. Some states do not allow the reduction in the statute of limitations, so the above reduction may not apply to you.

THIS WARRANTY GIVES YOU SPECIFIC LEGAL RIGHTS, AND YOU MAY ALSO HAVE OTHER RIGHTS WHICH VARY FROM STATE TO STATE.

ROADMASTER CHASSIS LIMITED WARRANTY

LIMITED WARRANTY - ROADMASTER CHASSIS

What the Period of Coverage Is:

If you use the Roadmaster Chassis that your motorhome is mounted upon for only recreational travel and family camping purposes, the Limited Warranty provided by Roadmaster ("Warrantor") covers your Roadmaster Chassis for twenty-four (24) months from the original retail purchase date or the first 24,000 miles of use, whichever occurs first.

If you use the Roadmaster Chassis that your motorhome is mounted upon for any rental, commercial or business purposes whatsoever, the Limited Warranty provided by Warrantor covers your new Roadmaster Chassis for Ninety (90) days from the original retail purchase date of the motorhome or the first 24,000 miles of use, whichever occurs first. A conclusive presumption that the Roadmaster Chassis has been used for commercial and/or business purposes arises if you have filed a federal or state tax form claiming any business tax benefit related to your ownership of the motorhome.

ANY IMPLIED WARRANTIES ARISING BY WAY OF STATE LAW, INCLUDING ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY AND ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY OF FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ARE LIMITED IN DURATION TO THE TERM OF THIS LIMITED WARRANTY AND ARE LIMITED IN SCOPE OF COVERAGE TO THOSE PORTIONS OF THE ROADMASTER CHASSIS COVERED BY THIS LIMITED WARRANTY. There is no warranty of any nature made by Warrantor beyond that contained in this Limited Warranty. No person has authority to enlarge, amend or modify this Limited Warranty. Any dealer selling a motorhome assembled upon a Roadmaster Chassis is not the Warrantor's agent but is an independent entity. Warrantor is not responsible for any undertaking, representation or warranty made by any dealer or other person beyond those expressly set forth in this Limited Warranty. Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, so the above limitation may not apply to you.

Limitations of Implied Warranties

Warrantor's Limited Warranty covers defects in the manufacture of the Roadmaster Chassis (as defined herein) and defects in materials used to manufacture the Roadmaster Chassis. The term "Roadmaster Chassis" as used herein means only the frame; frame cross members; steering axle, including the axle king pins and bushings; hubs and bearings; brake calipers; rotors, brake backing plates and related parts of the axle; tie rods; drag links; drive shafts, including the U-joints; carrier bearings; and, the axle housing and its internal parts. Also see the section "What the Warranty Does Not Cover" set out below.

What the Warranty Covers

What We Will Do to Correct Problems

Warrantor will repair and/or replace, at its option, any covered defect if: (1) you notify Warrantor or one of its authorized servicing dealers of the defect within the warranty coverage period and within five (5) days of discovering any such defect; and (2) you deliver the Roadmaster Chassis to Warrantor or Warrantor's authorized servicing dealer at your cost and expense. It is reasonable to expect some service items to occur during the warranty period.

Warrantor may use new and/or remanufactured parts and/or components of substantially equal quality to complete any repairs.

Defect and/or damage to the Roadmaster Chassis may occur during manufacture at the factory, during delivery of the motorhome to the selling dealer or on the selling dealer's lot. Normally, any factory defect or damage is detected and corrected at the factory or by the selling dealer during the inspection process performed by the Warrantor and the selling dealer. If, however, you discover any such defect or damage when you take delivery of the Roadmaster Chassis, you must notify your dealer or Warrantor within five days of the date of purchase to have repairs performed to any such defect at no cost to you as provided by this Limited Warranty.

If two or more unsuccessful repair attempts have been made to correct any covered defect that you believe substantially impairs the value, use or safety of your motorhome, you must, to the extent permitted by law, notify Warrantor directly in writing of the failure to successfully repair the defect so that Warrantor can become directly involved in performing a successful repair to the identified defect.

How to Get Service

For warranty service simply contact one of Warrantor's authorized service centers for an appointment, then deliver your Roadmaster Chassis (at your expense) to the service center. If you need assistance in locating an authorized warranty service facility, contact Warrantor's Warranty Department (1-877-466-6226). The mailing address is:

Warranty Department
91320 Coburg Industrial Way
Coburg, Oregon 97408

In the event the Roadmaster Chassis is inoperative due to malfunction of a warranted part, Warrantor shall pay the cost of having the Roadmaster Chassis that the motorhome is mounted upon towed to the nearest authorized repair facility provided you notify Warrantor prior to incurring the towing charges to receive directions to the nearest repair facility.

Because Warrantor does not control the scheduling of service work by its authorized servicing dealers, you may encounter some delay in scheduling and/or in the completion of the repairs.

This Limited Warranty does not cover: modifications and alterations to the Roadmaster Chassis by others; the motorhome that is mounted upon the Roadmaster Chassis, including by way of example the motorhome manufacturer's design, manufacture, assembly and/or installation of the side walls, roof, windows, flooring, electrical system, plumbing system, LP-Gas system, appliances and slide-outs; items that are working as designed but which you are unhappy with because of the design; normal wear and usage; routine maintenance including by way of example wheel alignments; component parts covered by their own manufacturer's warranty, including by way of example the engine, transmission, tires, tubes, batteries, exhaust system and the emission control systems; and, flaking, peeling rusting and chips or other defects or damage in or to the frame and frame cross members caused by rocks or other road hazards and the environment including airborne pollutants and salt.

What the Warranty Does Not Cover

Misuse or neglect, accidents, unauthorized alteration, failure to provide reasonable and necessary maintenance (See Owner's Manual), damage caused by off road use, collision, fire, theft, vandalism, explosions, overloading, and odometer tampering shall discharge Warrantor from any express or implied warranty obligation to repair any resulting defect.

Events Discharging Warrantor from Obligation Under Warranty

THE ORIGINAL RETAIL PURCHASER OF THE ROADMASTER CHASSIS AND ANY PERSON TO WHOM THE ROADMASTER CHASSIS IS TRANSFERRED, AND ANY PERSON WHO IS AN INTENDED OR UNINTENDED USER OR BENEFICIARY OF THE ROADMASTER CHASSIS, SHALL NOT BE ENTITLED TO RECOVER FROM WARRANTOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES RESULTING FROM ANY DEFECT IN THE MOTORHOME. THE EXCLUSION OF CONSEQUENTIAL AND INCIDENTAL DAMAGES SHALL BE DEEMED INDEPENDENT OF, AND SHALL SURVIVE, ANY FAILURE OF THE ESSENTIAL PURPOSE OF ANY LIMITED REMEDY. Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of consequential or incidental damages, so the above exclusions may not apply to you.

Disclaimer of Consequential & Incidental Damages

ANY ACTION TO ENFORCE THIS EXPRESS OR ANY IMPLIED WARRANTY SHALL NOT BE COMMENCED MORE THAN ONE (1) YEAR AFTER THE EXPIRATION OF THIS WARRANTY. Some states do not allow the reduction in the statute of limitations, so the above reduction may not apply to you.

Legal Remedies

**THIS WARRANTY GIVES YOU SPECIFIC LEGAL RIGHTS, AND
YOU MAY ALSO HAVE OTHER RIGHTS WHICH VARY FROM
STATE TO STATE.**

**ROADMASTER CHASSIS DIVISION
MONACO COACH CORPORATION
91320 COBURG INDUSTRIAL WAY
COBURG, OREGON 97408**

WARRANTY INFORMATION FILE

In addition to this Owner's Manual you will find a Warranty Information File in your unit. This file contains valuable documents about your motorhome's systems and equipment. Many of the component manufacturer's warranty registration cards can be found in the box. They will need to be filled out and mailed. Be sure you read and understand all the information in this file to help you safely operate, maintain and troubleshoot those items.

MONACO COACH FINISH

Because no two trees look alike, authentic woods vary in color and character markings such as streaks, knots and grain patterns.

Since the stains may attach differently to these grain patterns, some natural light and dark areas may result. The beauty lies

in these natural variations of color and grain that give each cabinet its own individual charm.

The beauty of these products is protected with a furniture-quality exterior finish. After a period of time, there may be minimal changes in the finish color as it ages in its surrounding conditions. This is an inherent characteristic of this particular finish, and the natural aging process adds to the unique appearance of the cabinetry.

Due to the minor differences in tone, it may not be possible to match the finish color of existing cabinets exactly when replacing doors or adding additional cabinets at a later date.

Monaco Coach Corporation

The foregoing is not a warning. See the Limited Warranty or call (877) 466-6226 for warranty information and limitations.

KNIGHT **SECTIONS** ***GENERAL INFORMATION***

1

2

DRIVING & SAFETY

3

CARE & MAINTENANCE

4

APPLIANCES

5

EQUIPMENT

6

WATER SYSTEMS

7

LP-GAS SYSTEMS

8

ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS - HOUSE

9

ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS - CHASSIS

10

CHASSIS INFORMATION

INDEX - PAGE 343

SIGNS



This sign indicates a **NOTE**.



This sign indicates a **WARNING** or a **CAUTION** with additional information attached.



This sign indicates **INSPECTION** is required.



This sign indicates **ASSEMBLY/INSTALLATION** or **DISASSEMBLY/REMOVAL** is necessary.



This sign indicates the specified part requires **OIL/LUBRICATION**.



This sign indicates a reference to the **Warranty INFORMATION FILE** located within the grey box inside the motorhome.

The information contained in this document is intended to reflect standard and optional equipment included in a typically equipped model at the time of delivery to the initial retail owner. Your actual unit may vary from this document as a result of optional equipment that is not generally offered on this model. In the case that you are not the initial retail owner of this unit, this document will not reflect modifications that may have been performed by previous owners.

Product information and specifications are shown herein as of the time of printing. Monaco Coach reserves the right to change product specifications, designs and standard equipment without notice and without incurring obligation.

©Copyright Monaco Coach Corporation. All rights reserved. The Knight is a trademark of Monaco Coach. All other trademarks or registered trademarks are property of their respective holders. Brand name products of other companies mentioned in this manual are not endorsed by Monaco Coach Corporation.

KNIGHT

SECTION 1
GENERAL INFORMATION

INTRODUCTION	• 13
CUSTOMER RELATIONS	• 13
REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS	• 14
TAKING DELIVERY	• 14
<i>Monaco Coach Responsibilities</i>	• 14
<i>Dealer Responsibilities</i>	• 14
<i>Customer Responsibilities</i>	• 15
SERVICE SUGGESTIONS	• 15
<i>Prepare for the Appointment</i>	• 15
<i> Prepare a List</i>	• 15
<i> Be Reasonable With Your Requests</i>	• 15
<i>No Looking Over the Technician's Shoulder</i>	• 16
<i> Inspect the Work Properly</i>	• 16
OWNER'S RECORD - SERIAL NUMBERS	• 17
OWNER'S RECORD - PERSONAL PROPERTY	• 18
OWNER'S RECORD - INSURANCE	• 19
VENDOR LIST	• 20

1

This section contains warranty information and knowledge for the operation and care of the motorhome. Not all information may be applicable to your model of motorhome. More detailed information with **CAUTION** or **WARNING** instructions, other than what is found in this chapter, can be found in the manufacturer's owner manuals located in the owner information box.

In time you will develop a knack for spotting wonderful little roadside locations by turning off the main highway and exploring. There are many modern recreational vehicle parks (including state, county and federal parks) with good facilities where you can obtain hook-ups for electrical, water and sewage connections. Directories are published which describe these parks and the availability of services and hook-ups. On overnight or weekend trips, chances are you will probably not fill up the sewage holding tanks, deplete the water or LP-Gas supply, or run down the batteries which supply the living area with 12 Volt DC current. On longer trips, when you have stayed where sewer connections and utility hook-ups were not available, it will be necessary to occasionally empty the holding tanks and replenish the water and LP-Gas supply.

Many gas stations have installed sanitary dumping stations. Publications are available which list these dumping stations. When stopped for the night the Monaco Coach motorhome is built to be safely parked in any spot that is relatively level and where the ground is firm. Try to pick as level a parking spot as possible. Your facilities are with you and the motorhome is fully self-contained.

The safety alert symbols of **CAUTION** or **WARNING** are "Personal Safety Instructions." It is important to thoroughly read and understand these safety instructions where the symbols are displayed throughout the manual. Failure to comply with specific instructions may result in personal injury or death. Many instructions are required by National Safety Associations.

Only by ensuring your confidence and satisfaction with our products and services can we have continued success as a manufacturer of motorhomes. We believe a good relationship with our customers is just as important as improving the technical excellence of our products. Your authorized dealer is pleased to help you with instructions about your motorhome and to offer service when you need it. If problems remain after you have consulted your dealer you are invited to contact our Consumer Affairs Department. Please have all pertinent information (serial numbers, model number, etc.) when calling. We will work with the dealer and see that every attempt to resolve the matter is made.

**Customer Service Department
Monaco Coach Corporation
91320 Coburg Industrial Way
Coburg, Oregon 97408
877-466-6226**

INTRODUCTION

CUSTOMER RELATIONS

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS

If you believe that your motorhome has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Monaco Coach. If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of motorhomes, it may order a recall or remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer or Monaco Coach. To contact NHTSA you may either call the Auto Safety Hot line toll-free at 1-800-424-9393 (or 1-202-366-0123 in the Washington D.C. area) or write to:

NHTSA
U.S. Department of Transportation
400 Seventh Street
Washington, DC 20590

TAKING DELIVERY

Monaco Coach Responsibilities

Your motorhome has been manufactured to the highest quality and standards by factory trained personnel. Quality inspections are performed throughout the manufacturing process of your motorhome. The motorhome has been carefully and almost completely hand assembled in our factory. Prior to the motorhome arriving at the dealership, all systems have been carefully tested and inspected to ensure optimum performance. The necessary forms and required manuals have been placed in the motorhome at the time of shipment to the dealership.

Dealer Responsibilities

The dealer must perform additional pre-delivery inspections and system checks, assist in the customer's understanding of the Limited Warranty and assist in completing any necessary forms. They must do a customer orientation to the motorhome, its systems, components and their operation.

The dealer should also ensure the customer receives a complete Owner's Packet with warranty cards and registrations for the motorhome and for separately warranted products, including detailed operating and maintenance instructions. The dealer is responsible for performing a review of the Limited Warranty provisions with the customer, while stressing the importance of mailing warranty cards and registrations to the manufacturers within the prescribed time limit to avoid loss of warranty coverage. They must assist the customer in completing these forms and locating serial numbers. They should request that the customer reads all warranty information when possible and explain any provision not clearly understood.

The dealer should instruct the customer on how to obtain local and out-of-town service on the motorhome and its various individual warranted components, whether the service is warrantable or out of warranty.

As a new motorhome owner you are responsible for regular and proper maintenance. This will help you prevent conditions arising from neglect that are not covered by your Monaco Coach Limited Warranty. Maintenance services should be performed in accordance with this Owner's Manual, and any other applicable manuals. As the owner, it is your responsibility and obligation to return the motorhome to an authorized dealer for repairs and service (See the Limited Warranty). Since the authorized dealer where you purchased your new motorhome is responsible for its proper servicing before delivery, and has an interest in your continued satisfaction, we recommend that Inspection, Warranty and Maintenance Services be performed by the dealership. We suggest that you take your new motorhome on a weekend shakedown before leaving on an extended trip.

Customer Responsibilities

Know when to take your motorhome in for service. Give some thought to the appointment time. There are several things to consider when selecting a time for service. Location of the service center and the time of year can be a major issue. Monday and Friday are busy days for most dealers. Therefore, it makes sense to make a mid-week appointment whenever possible. Ask your dealer if additional time is needed for check in and completion of paperwork.

SERVICE SUGGESTIONS

If you're having warranty work done, be sure to have your warranty registration papers with you. All work to be performed may not be covered by the warranty; be sure to discuss additional charges with the service manager. Keep a maintenance log of your motorhome service history. This can often provide a clue to the current problem.

Prepare for the Appointment

Make a written list of specific repairs needed. It is important the service manager be aware of all previous work which has been done on your motorhome. For example: if the motorhome has been repaired due to an accident. While this may not seem important, it could have a significant effect on the dealer's diagnosis of a problem.

Prepare a List

Don't leave a list of 20 items to be serviced and expect to have the motorhome back by 5:00 p.m. If you list a number of items, and must have your motorhome back by the end of the day, discuss the situation with the service manager and list items in order of priority. Some items may not be able to be repaired due to work loads or parts availability. Expect to make a second appointment for work not completed or for the long, drawn-out repair item.

Be Reasonable With Your Requests

***No Looking Over
the Technician's
Shoulder***

Please don't be offended when you are told you cannot watch the work being done. Many service area insurance requirements forbid the admission of customers into the service work area.

***Inspect the Work
Properly***

Check out the service or repair job when you pick up your motorhome and notify the service manager of any dissatisfaction. If circumstances prevent returning for immediate corrective work, make an appointment as soon as possible.

FOR YOUR OWN REFERENCE

OWNER'S RECORD - SERIAL NUMBERS



INFORMATION: Many of the serial numbers for various items and components are filed on the Data Card located in the Warranty Information File box. Refer to the Manufacturer's individual Owner's Manuals for serial number locations that are not listed below.

Motorhome Serial Number _____

Motorhome Federal Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) _____

Entry Door Key Number _____

Compartment Door Key Number _____

Range Model & Serial Number _____
(Located under top burner plate)

Microwave Model & Serial Number _____
(Located behind door on case)

Refrigerator Model & Serial Number _____
(Located inside refrigerator compartment)

Generator Model & Serial Number _____
(Located in outside compartment on generator)

Roof Air Conditioner Model & Serial Number _____
(Located under top cover on air conditioner)

Inverter Model & Serial Number _____

FOR YOUR OWN REFERENCE

OWNER'S RECORD - PERSONAL PROPERTY

FOR YOUR OWN REFERENCE

OWNER'S RECORD - INSURANCE

Company: _____

Policy #: _____

Agent's Name & Address: _____

Business Phone #: _____

Emergency Phone #: _____

Renewal Date(s): _____

Notes: _____

VENDOR LIST

Air Bags

Firestone
(317) 818-8600
www.bridgestone-firestone.com

Brakes - ABS

Meritor Wabco
800-535-5560
www.meritorauto.com

Air Conditioner - Dash

Evans-Tempcon
800-878-7147
www.evanstp@iserv.net

Brake (Hydraulic)

Bosch Braking System Corp.
800-521-5462

Air Conditioner - Roof

Dometic Corp.
(219) 463-4858
www.dometic.com

Brake (Exhaust)

Pac Brake
800-663-0096
www.pacbrake.com

Alternator

Dixie Electric
800-478-0608
www.dixie-electric.com

Carbon Monoxide Detector

Safe-T-Alert
800-383-0269
www.safe-t-alert.com

Awnings

Carefree
800-621-2617
www.carefreeofcolorado.com

Carbon Monoxide & Liquefied Petroleum Protectors

MTI Industries, Inc.
800-383-0269

Axle - Front

Westport
(216) 431-2000
www.westportaxle.com

Cooktop

Atwood
800-873-4328
www.atwoodmobile.com

Axle - Rear

Dana Spicer
800-666-8688
www.dana.com

Engine

Cummins
800-343-7357
www.cummins.com

Batteries

Interstate
800-272-6548
www.interstatebatteries.com

Energy Management System (Optional)

Intellitec
800-251-2408
www.intellitecsve.com

Entry Step

Kwikee
800-736-9961
www.kwikee.com

Hitch Receiver

Reese Products
800-758-0869
www.reeseproducts.com

Fan - Bathroom Exhaust

Fan-Tastic Vent
800-521-0298
www.fantasticvent.com

Inverter

Xantrex Technology
800-446-6180
www.xantrex.com

Filters

Racor Fluid Filters
800-344-3286
www.parker.com/racor/

Leveling Jacks

Leveling Jacks - Hydraulic
RVA
(760) 746-5732

Fire Extinguisher

The Fire Extinguisher Co.
(919) 563-4911

LP-Gas Tank

Manchester
800-753-8265
www.mantank.com

Flooring

Wilson Art
800-433-3222
www.wilsonart.com

Microwave

Sharp Electronics Corp.
800-237-4277
www.sharp-usa.com

Fuel Sender

Centroid Products
800-423-3574
www.centroidproducts.com

Monitor Panel

KIB Enterprises
(219) 294-1504
www.kibenterprises.com

Furnace

Atwood
800-873-4328
www.atwoodmobile.com

Outside Mirrors

Velvac Mirror
800-783-8871
www.velvac.com

Generator

Onan
800-888-6626
www.onan.com

Radio - Dash

Kenwood
800-536-9663
www.kenwoodusa.com

Rear Vision System

Jenson
800-732-6866
www.jensonaudio.com

Television Antenna

Winegard
(319) 754-0600
www.winegard.com

Refrigerator

Norcold
800-543-1219
www.norcold.com

Tires

Goodyear Tire & Rubber
800-399-2772
www.goodyear.com

Shock Absorbors

Monroe
800-880-7580
www.tenneco-automotive.com

VE Tires
800-282-1318

Slide-Out

Slide-Out Motor (Bedroom)
Power Gear
800-334-4712
www.powergear.com

Toilet

Sealand
800-321-9886
www.sealandtechnology.com

Slide-Out Motor - Bedroom

Dewald
(219) 256-0782

Transfer Switch

Lyght Power Systems
(219) 295-0229
www.lyghtpower.com

Steering Gear

Sheppard
(717) 637-3751
www.rhsheppard.com

Transmission

Allison Transmission
800-524-2303
www.allison.com

Storage Trays

Kwikee
800-736-9961
www.kwikee.com

VCR

RCA
(877) 266-2728
www.rca.com

Television

RCA
(877) 266-2728
www.rca.com

Water Heater

Atwood
800-873-4328
www.atwoodmobile.com

Washer/Dryer

Splendide
(503) 655-2563
www.splendide.com

Water Pump

Shurflo
800-854-3218
www.shurflo.com

Wheels

Jae Enterprises
800-626-3367

Windshield Wipers

Diesel Equipment
(336) 373-8331
www.dieselevquipment.com

NOTES

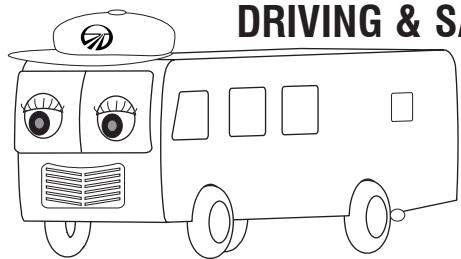
KNIGHT

SECTION 2
DRIVING & SAFETY

DRIVING & SAFETY • 27	SPECIFICATIONS - DIMENSIONS CHART • 59
<i>Inspections • 27</i>	VIEWS - Front • 60
<i>Familiarize Yourself • 27</i>	<i>Rear • 60</i>
<i>Safety Seat Belts • 27</i>	<i>Roadside • 61</i>
<i>Tips for Driving • 28</i>	<i>Curbside • 61</i>
CHECKLIST - PRE-TRIP PREPARATIONS • 31	SMOKE DETECTOR • 62
HITCH - Using the Rear Receiver • 32	<i>Operation • 62</i>
<i>Tow Plug Connection • 33</i>	<i>How to Test • 62</i>
REAR VIEW SYSTEM • 33	<i>Maintenance • 63</i>
BACKING UP A MOTORHOME • 34	<i>Troubleshooting • 63</i>
CHECKLIST - SET-UP PROCEDURES • 36	LP-GAS DETECTOR • 63
DRY CAMPING TIPS • 38	<i>Operation • 64</i>
BREAKING CAMP • 42	<i>Testing • 64</i>
EMERGENCY PROCEDURES - ROADSIDE • 44	<i>Alarm • 64</i>
<i>Transmission - Rocking Out • 44</i>	<i>Care • 65</i>
<i>Jump Starting • 44</i>	CARBON MONOXIDE DETECTOR • 65
TOWING PROCEDURES • 45	<i>Operation Instructions • 66</i>
TIRES • 46	<i>Alarm • 66</i>
<i>The Importance of Air Pressure • 46</i>	<i>Testing • 66</i>
<i>How Much Air Should I Carry in My Tires? • 46</i>	<i>Cleaning • 66</i>
<i>Tire Pressure Inflation Guideline • 46</i>	FIRE EXTINGUISHER • 67
WEIGHT TERMS • 47	EGRESS EXIT WINDOW • 67
<i>Weight Label • 49</i>	
WEIGHING THE MOTORHOME • 49	
TIRE CHART • 53	
<i>Inspecting & Pressure • 54</i>	
<i>Tire Rotation • 55</i>	
<i>Blocking When Leveling • 56</i>	
<i>Storage of Tires - Long Term • 57</i>	
<i>In Case of Flat Tire • 57</i>	

This section contains information on: driving tips, emergency situations, towing, safety devices, weighing the motorhome and tires.

DRIVING & SAFETY



There are significant differences between a passenger automobile and a motorhome. Always be aware of these differences when traveling. The key for safely operating the motorhome is inspection. Any defect found could result in problems on the road that can result in lost time and money. Several states require that the motorhome be inspected prior to registration. Know and observe the laws in the states you will be traveling in. They may vary from state to state. A systematic inspection conducted prior to moving the motorhome will ensure nothing is overlooked. An inspection process assists in familiarizing the owner with the motorhome. Prior to moving the motorhome, perform a general inspection by examining the condition and area around the motorhome for hazards. Look high and low when walking around the motorhome.

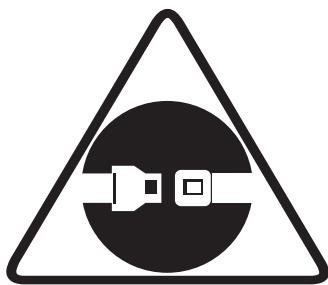
Inspections

The location of the driver's seat in the motorhome is higher and further to the left giving a different perspective of the roadway. Rely on the outside mirrors to line up with the center of the road and to check the conditions behind the motorhome. The dashboard may contain more gauges and controls than are normally found in passenger automobiles. Become familiar with these gauges and what they are indicating before starting out.

Familiarize Yourself

All occupants must be furnished with and use seat belts while the motorhome is moving. Only the seats equipped with safety seat belts are designed to carry passengers while motorhome is in motion. While traveling, do not occupy beds or any seats that do not have a safety belt. Seat belts must only be used on permanently mounted seats. The driver's seat must be locked in the forward facing position while motorhome is in motion. Do not use a seat belt on more than one person. To fasten the seat belt, pull the belt out of the retractors and insert the tab into the buckle; it will click when the tab locks into the buckle. Seat belt lengths automatically adjust to the size and sitting position of the person. Do not route belts over armrest.

Safety Seat Belts



WARNING: Seats must be pointed in a forward position and seat belts fastened while the motorhome is in motion. Avoid seat rotation while in transit. Children must not be transported unrestrained. Infants must be placed in approved safety seats. Small children must be restrained in child safety seats. Failure to comply with these rules can lead to injury or death.



CAUTION: Seat belts must only be used on permanently mounted seats. Do not use any one single seat belt on more than one person.

Seat Belt Care:

Keep the belt clean and dry. To clean, use a mild soap and lukewarm water. Never use bleach, dye, or abrasive cleaners as they may weaken the belt. Inspect the belts periodically. Check for cuts, frays or loose parts. Replace any damaged parts. Do not disassemble or modify the system. Replace the belt assembly if it has been in a severe impact, even if damage is not obvious.

Tips for Driving

The motorhome is a complex vehicle and requires an increased level of driving awareness and attention because of its size and various components. Due to the motorhome length the turning radius will be much wider than that of a standard automobile. Always pay close attention to all perimeters of the motorhome: front, sides, rear, roof and undercarriage. Ensure the surrounding area is clear of any obstacles. Utilize the driving mirrors to observe traffic and parts of the motorhome: tires, bay doors, blind spots, etc. Use a push-pull method of steering, with both hands parallel on the steering wheel. The motorhome is also heavier than an automobile with a higher center of gravity. These factors affect the reaction time of the motorhome. Swerves and sharp turns, especially performed at high speeds, could result in the loss of control of the motorhome. Keep the size of the motorhome in mind and drive with extra caution to avoid situations which might require quick momentum changes. Increase your reaction time by paying attention to traffic and road conditions 12-15 seconds ahead of the motorhome's position.



The motorhome will travel safely and comfortably at highway speed limits. However, it takes more time to reach highway speed. When passing another vehicle, allow extra time and space to complete the pass due to the added length of the motorhome. When descending a long hill, use the exhaust or engine brake. The transmission and engine will help control downhill speed and can extend the service life of the brake lining. The distance required to stop the motorhome is greater than an automobile. The brakes are designed for the (GVWR) Gross Vehicle Weight Rating. Practice stopping away from traffic to get the "feel" of the distance required to stop the motorhome.

When backing up, have the co-pilot stand at the driver's side rear corner so the co-pilot remains visible in the driver's rear view mirror. The co-pilot can watch for any obstacles and give hand signals during the backing up process. When traveling, make sure bridges being crossed can support the weight of the motorhome. Check the tonnage limit of the bridges before crossing them. Signs should be posted at bridge entrances. Check the posted height of all overpasses or situations where overhead clearances are limited. Keep in mind, road surfaces may have been repaved or become packed with snow and therefore the actual posted clearance height would not apply in such conditions.

Driving Cautions:

- Avoid getting too close to the edge of the road, a soft shoulder may not support the weight of the motorhome.
- Side spacing is best maintained by keeping the motorhome centered in the driving lane.
- Driving lanes in work zones can be uneven, congested and more narrow than usual.
- Be cautious of road debris which can damage the undercarriage of the motorhome or become lodged in the dual tires causing damage to the tires, wheel rims or tow car.
- Keep in consideration that posted speed signs are passenger automobile rated. Therefore, an extra awareness of the driving conditions and appropriate speed for a motorhome are necessary, especially on corners and mountain roads.
- Downgrade speed should be at least 5 mph less than upgrade speed, or downgrade speed should be attainable within three seconds of a brake application.
- Use a four second rule when following other vehicles at speeds under 40 mph. Use a five second rule when following at speeds over 40 mph.

Right Turns:

Negotiating a right hand turn in a motorhome can be difficult. Many drivers fear they can not make the turn without entering into the other lane or jumping the curb. Here are a few tips to make a right hand turn easier:

- As the turn approaches, look into the mirror to ensure the lane to the left is clear, then move wide over to the left.
- When you are about to make the turn; the left rear wheel should touch the centerline of the road and your hips should be parallel to the roadside curb of the corner being turned. This will aid in avoiding a premature turn.
- Make the turn slowly.
- Check mirrors frequently. Be aware of necessary clearance and space management for the motorhome, while negotiating the turn.

Left Turns:

- Do not start the turn until the center of the intersection is reached with your hips. If two lanes are available, take the right-hand lane. A car or driver on the left side can be seen more easily.

Night Driving:

- As always be well rested and alert when driving. If necessary, find a safe stopping place to rest until ready to continue.
- Avoid using any interior lights while driving. They can create a glare on the windshield, decreasing visibility.
- Dim the dash lights to a comfortable level to reduce the level of glare.

Extreme Heat and Hot Weather Conditions:

- Observe all gauges frequently. Any variations from the normal conditions should be evaluated promptly.
- Check tire pressure frequently when traveling in hot conditions. Tire air pressure increases with heat. It is not advisable to let air out of a hot tire. When the tires cool down they will return to the correct/previous tire pressure.
- Pay extra attention to hoses and belts which are more susceptible to fatigue in extreme heat.

Winter and Cold Climate Conditions:

- The motorhome should be prepared for Cold Weather Use.
- Keep speeds slow and steady. Make moves gradually and increase visual distance for a gain in reaction time.
- If the road or weather conditions are treacherous find a safe stopping place and wait for conditions to improve.
- Avoid using engine retarding device on wet or slippery surfaces, they can cause the drive wheels to skid.
- Wipers should be in good condition and the washer reservoir should have sufficient window wash fluid that has antifreeze included within it.
- Use the mirror heat to keep the mirrors clear.
- Remove any ice build-up from the entry step to avoid accidental slipping.

Wet Conditions:

- The risk of hydroplaning is increased if tires are worn or improperly inflated.
- Be aware that heavy rain or deep standing water can affect brake application causing them to apply unevenly or grab.

Refueling:

- Truck stops are good refueling points for motorhomes.
- Know which side the fuel port is on. There may not be adequate space to turn around in the parking lot to reposition for the pump.
- Check overhead clearance heights before pulling through the fuel island.
- Be aware of the concrete/steel posts installed around the fuel island.
- Avoid running over the fuel hose as it can get hung up on the motorhome, causing body damage.



WARNING: Avoid the risk of fire or explosion. Turn off all pilot lights and appliances before refueling.

Before departure several items will need to be prepared. Some suggestions are listed below. These lists can be used as general guides when preparing to depart.

CHECKLIST - PRE-TRIP PREPARATIONS

Items To Carry:

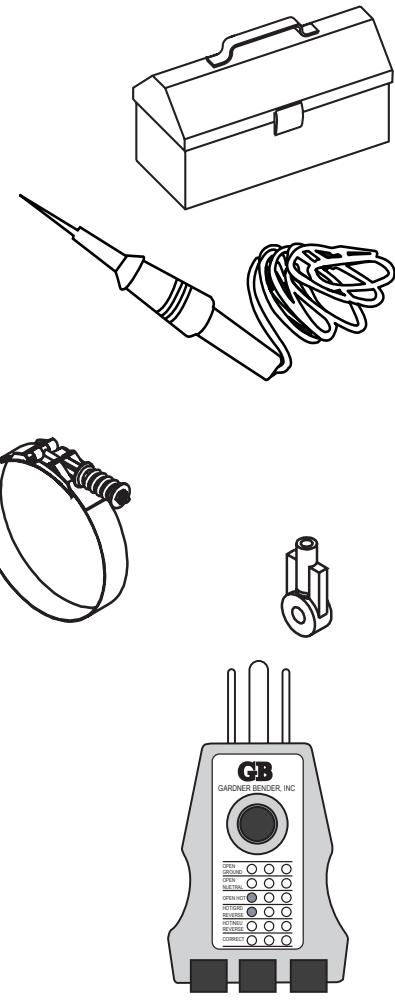
- Local, State and National Maps. Truck atlases can be useful for showing maps, refueling stations and truck repair facilities.
- An emergency road kit and a flashlight.
- Potable/non-potable water hoses and a water pressure regulator.
- Hand tools.
- 12 Volt DC test light, this may be helpful when on the phone with a technician.
- A battery hydrometer to check the condition of battery electrolyte.
- A spare 12 Volt continuous duty solenoid (if applicable).
- An assortment of spare fuses.
- One link kit for ride height control assembly (air suspension only).
- A spare alternator belt.
- Charge air cooler T-bolt clamp.

Interior:

- Start refrigerator operation the night before departure to get a head start on the cooling process. Pre-cool items prior to loading the refrigerator.
- Fill the fresh water tank. Disconnect and store the fresh water hose.
- If necessary, load pots, pans, utensils, soap, linens, etc.
- Secure and fasten the bi-fold and pocket doors. Lock the shower door.
- Close roof vents and windows.
- Secure any loose, heavy or sharp objects in case of a sudden stop.
- Close all cabinet doors and drawers.
- Walk the interior and check for items not secured.
- Turn interior lighting off.

Engine Checklist:

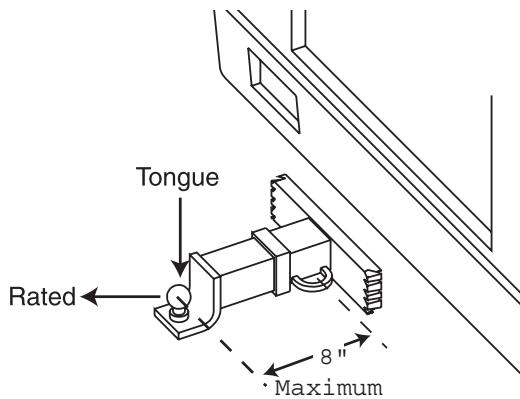
- Inspect the engine, transmission and the engine compartment for fluid leaks.
- Inspect the area under the motorhome for fluid leaks or puddles.
- Check all fluid levels, oil, antifreeze, transmission, hydraulic fluid and washer fluid.
- Inspect belts and hoses for wear.
- Inspect wiring for loose, frayed or corroded connections.
- Start engine and listen for any unusual noises.



Polarity Tester.

Driving Preparations:

- Check operation of all exterior lights, headlamps, taillights, brake and clearance lights.
- Inspect fluid level (if applicable) in oil bath hubs and check tire pressure.
- Check house battery condition.
- If applicable, program the navigation system.
- Secure all awning locks.
- Check items in storage bays to prevent shifting or damage to items.
- Outside compartment doors should be closed and locked.
- Look around, above and under the motorhome for obstructions.
- Check fuel level gauge. Check all other dash gauges for operation and correct level indications.
- Secure and lock the entry door for travel.

**HITCH -
Using the Rear Receiver**

When using the rear hitch remember that the motorhome is intended for towing light loads. The motorhome is designed to be used primarily as a recreational vehicle. Towing will affect durability and economy. Safety and satisfaction require proper receiver use. Avoid excessive loads or other misuse. Do not use the motorhome to tow anything until it has been driven 500 miles (800 kilometers). Weight pushing down on the rear hitch must not exceed 10% of the hitch capacity. It is recommended to weigh the motorhome when fully loaded to ensure proper weight distribution of the GCVW (gross combined vehicle weight). When weighing the motorhome add all passenger weight to the GCVW total. The motorhome fully loaded, and any vehicle or trailer towed by it, must not exceed the GCVW.



WARNING: Any trailer being towed by a motorhome must have adequate brakes. Failure to follow these instructions will create a safety hazard and may result in an accident.

HITCH CAPACITY	RATED CAPACITY	TONGUE WEIGHT
ISB 260	4,000 LBS.	400 LBS.
ISB 300	5,000 LBS.	500 LBS.
ISC 315	5,000 LBS.	500 LBS.

Tow Car or Trailer:

1. Connect tow car or trailer with light harness to motorhome and perform a light check.
2. Connect safety chains.
3. Check the tow car or trailer and the motorhome before starting a trip and at each rest stop.

4. Flat tires on a towed vehicle cannot be detected from the motorhome while driving. A flat tire causes a safety hazard and may cause extensive damage. Check the tires on the tow vehicle frequently.

The motorhome is prewired with a trailer wire harness. The harness is located on or near the hitch receiver. Convoluted tubing protects the tow harness wires until they are ready for use. Current draw should not exceed ten amps for each designated circuit.

When hooking up a tow plug connection, strip the wires 3/8". Twist the wire and place under the clip. Secure the screw. Do not leave any loose strands of wire as they can short against the case or other terminals.

 **NOTE: When towing a trailer or vehicle with a two-wire system, a turn signal/brake light converter will be needed to adapt the tow plug wiring to the item being towed.**

The rear view system is designed to provide the driver with a view of the rear of the motorhome. The field of view is 140° in the diagonal plane, 121° in the horizontal plane, and 90° in the vertical plane. Power is supplied to the system when the ignition key is turned to the Accessory or **ON** position. The **green** LED illuminates. The display on the monitor is controlled by the position of the power switch. When in the **ON** position, the display is present. When placed in the **S/B** (Standby) position, the display is off until the gear shift lever is set to **Reverse**.

Power Switch:

The switch, when **ON** (in) position, turns on the monitor for viewing. The **green** LED indicator illuminates. When the switch is **OFF** (out), the monitor is in a **STANDBY** mode of operation. The **green** LED remains illuminated when the ignition is on. The monitor displays rear viewing when the transmission is shifted to **REVERSE**.

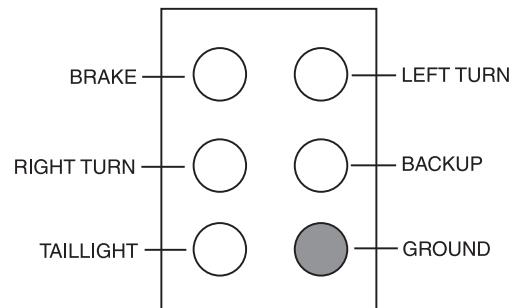
Camera Selector:

This switch should be left in the **CA1** (out) position. **CA2** (in) position is not used in the motorhome.

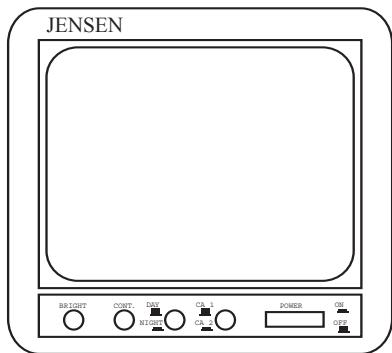
Day/Night Switch:

This switch should be left in the **DAY** (out) position for normal viewing. When set in **NIGHT** (in), picture brightness is reduced. **NIGHT** should be used for night viewing and driving through tunnels.

Tow Plug Connection



REAR VIEW SYSTEM



Bright Control:

Clockwise rotation increases the picture brightness. Counterclockwise rotation decreases the picture brightness.

Contrast Control:

Clockwise rotation increases the picture contrast. Counterclockwise rotation decreases the picture contrast.

Audio Control:

Clockwise rotation increases the volume level. Counterclockwise rotation decreases the volume level.

The camera angle may be adjusted to display a suitable rear view. The camera housing cover will need to be removed to gain access to the hexagon mounting bolts. The mounting bolts can be repositioned to the desired angle. Refasten the camera housing cover and seal using an appropriate sealant.

BACKING UP A MOTORHOME

If the destination does not have “pull-through” sites try to pick a solid, level site. If possible, pick a site located on the left side. The driver will have a better field of vision by using the driver side mirror. If the site is on the right side the driver will have to use the passenger side mirror for backing up, which leaves a blind spot. When a potential site is spotted, stop the motorhome before the site. Get out and observe the area for soft ground, posts, large rocks, low hanging limbs or other obstacles. If the site meets your criteria, prepare to back in carefully.

Backing up can be a challenge for even a long-time owner of recreational vehicles. Follow some simple guidelines to help reduce the challenge. When backing up, the driver (pilot) should be comfortable using the mirrors, the back-up camera and the co-pilot’s directions (ground guide) for assistance. Practice backing up, with the co-pilot’s guidance, in a large unobstructed parking lot. Backing up a motorhome is a team effort.

The backing up process should begin while the motorhome is in forward motion. Maneuver the motorhome to align it with the chosen site. This allows straight alignment with the site. Aligning the motorhome with the site will require considerably more room than an automobile and may require more than one attempt. When the motorhome is properly aligned with the site, the parking area will be visible in both mirrors. Use straight lines, such as road markings, as reference points when possible.

The co-pilot’s job is just as important as the driver. When guiding the driver, the co-pilot should be located safely at the left rear corner of the motorhome, facing forward, while remaining visible in the driver side mirror at all times. The co-pilot should make a conscious effort to maintain sight of the driver through the driver side mirror as the front of the motorhome maneuvers. If the driver loses sight of the co-pilot, stop the backing up process until the co-pilot

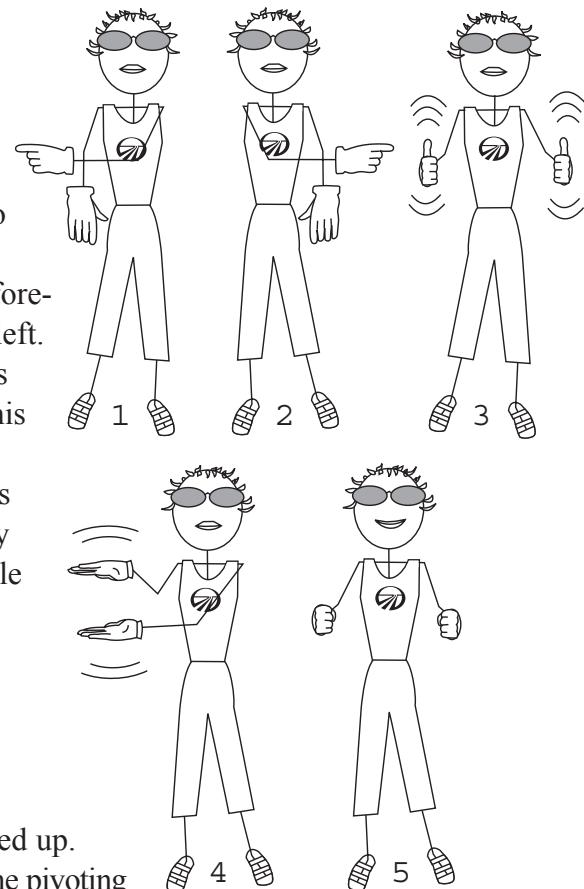
is in view. To avoid mishaps, the co-pilot should be focused only on what the driver is doing, with brief observation moments. The driver should receive directions only from the co-pilot. If necessary, stop the backing up process to have co-pilot inspect other areas or angles of concern. Use of walkie-talkies will aid in guidance.

Five clearly defined signals should be used, with only one signal given at a time, when the co-pilot is guiding the driver. Flailing arms with indecisive signals only confuse the driver. Signals should be precise. Directional signals are directing travel of the rear of the motorhome.

If desired direction is left, the co-pilot points left. For example: The co-pilot uses his/her right arm and forefinger to point distinctly left, with arm and finger held on a horizontal plane, to indicate the desired direction of travel of the rear of the motorhome. This type of directional signal can be easily discerned in the mirror by the driver. The directional signal given should remain steady until the desired movement is completed.

The five directional signals are:

1. Co-pilot uses left hand and arm held horizontal with forefinger pointing right to direct rear of motorhome to the right.
2. Co-pilot uses right hand and arm held horizontal with forefinger pointing left to direct rear of motorhome to the left.
3. Co-pilot uses both arms and hands parallel with thumbs pointing up and to rear in a waving vertical motion. This signals driver to maintain a straight back direction.
4. Co-pilot holds arms vertically, hands open with palms facing one another. Start with a wide separation, gradually closing distance of hands in a rate appropriate to vehicle speed to indicate the amount of distance to stop point.
5. Closed fists indicates STOP.



Backing Up Trailers:

Trailers have only one pivot point. Trailers may be backed up. Towed vehicles using a tow bar or tow dolly have more than one pivoting point which makes this type of equipment not suitable for backing. If using this type of towing equipment, plan ahead. Park safely along the road and walk a distance if necessary to avoid a possible back up situation. Avoid putting the motorhome and tow vehicle in a backing situation. To back up this combination, completely disconnect the tow vehicle from motorhome. Trying to back up the motorhome with a tow vehicle connected will result in damage to the motorhome, tow vehicle and towing device.

The same rules for backing a motorhome may be applied when backing a trailer. When preparing to back a trailer into a space, maneuver the motorhome sweeping wide, then turn back to the opposite direction. This will set the motorhome and trailer in a position to maneuver the trailer into space. When backing a trailer, the driver may become disoriented with the direction of the steering wheel and the direction of the trailer. The bottom of the steering wheel must be moved in the desired direction of the trailer. For example: If the desired direction of the trailer is left, rotate the bottom of the steering wheel left. If the trailer moves in an undesired direction, use a short “pull-up” method, pulling forward just far enough to align the trailer with the space. The co-pilot should stand safely at the left rear corner of the trailer within view of the driver in the driver side mirror, using the five hand signals for guiding.



CAUTION: Tow bars or car dollies generally are made to travel in a forward direction only. Most towing equipment of this type is not designed for backing. Never attempt short back up distances with a tow bar or tow dolly. Damage to the motorhome, vehicle or towing device will result.

CHECKLIST- SET-UP PROCEDURES

If the site for the motorhome has full hook-ups, use this quick reference hook-up checklist. This hook-up list is only a guide. This checklist has information on hooking up the utilities and preparing the appliances for use. Specific information on the slide room, awning and leveling system operations is discussed in detail in other sections.

- If applicable, unlock any travel locks which may be securing the slide room awning. Check for lateral clearance before extending the slide out room.



NOTE: To operate the kitchen slide: The ignition must be OFF, the park brake must be set and the bay doors directly under the slide room must be closed.



CAUTION: Before leveling the motorhome survey the area around and under the motorhome for obstructions which can damage the motorhome or undercarriage components when the air bags are deflated.

- Follow the procedures and guidelines for “Leveling the Motorhome.” If the motorhome is equipped with hydraulic jacks, be certain the parking surface will accommodate the weight placed on the jacks.



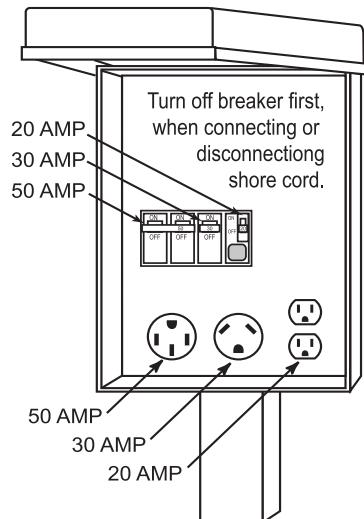
CAUTION: Hot asphalt may not support the weight that is placed on the hydraulic jack pads. Place thick plywood under the jack pads to help disperse the weight. Never use the leveling system to support the entire weight of the motorhome. Damage from excessive torsional twists can result.

- Open the LP-Gas tank valve.
- If possible, begin appliance operation on LP-Gas for the first 60 minutes. Switch the refrigerator operation to gas, start the water heater and furnace (if needed). This will allow time for the inverter to stabilize the battery charging.
- Prepare the shore cord to be plugged in. Uncoil and inspect the cord. Perform any necessary cord maintenance. Install proper electrical adapters if anything other than 50 Amp service is provided. Operate electrical appliances in sequence when hooked to a limited shore power service. Turn shore power circuit breaker OFF prior to plugging in the shore cord.



CAUTION: If shore power service is limited to 15 or 20 Amps, use of light duty extension cords and electrical adapters will create a voltage loss through the cord and at each electrical connection. Line voltage loss and the resistance at each electrical connection can be a hazardous combination. Damage to sensitive electronic equipment may result!

- If cable service is provided, hook-up a 75 Ohm RG59 or RG6 cable to the cable connection in the service center. If the motorhome has a video selector box press the appropriate viewing button for the item desired.
- A phone connection port is provided in the service center. Phone utility outlets are placed throughout the motorhome, including a phone line attached to the satellite receiver for Pay Per View movies and events.
- Hook a potable water hose to the city water connection in the service center. A water pressure regulator is built in. Turn the hand valve so the pointer indicates "city water."



NOTE: A water pressure regulator attached between the city water faucet and the potable fresh water hose will protect the hose from swelling or bursting under high city water pressure. Securing the pressure regulator to the hose with pliers will prevent the regulator from being misplaced.

- Hook-up the sewer hose. Sewer drain pipe diameters are generally either three or four inches. Proper sewer hose adapters will ensure against leaks or spillage. With the sewer hose properly connected open the grey water valve (small valve). The black water valve (large valve) remains closed until the tank is full or until time of departure.

DRY CAMPING TIPS

Plan ahead and use conservation of resources while dry camping.

Dry camping requires fully charged and properly maintained batteries (corrosion cleaned, terminals tightened, cables checked, etc.). If battery water is low, fill the batteries with distilled water only. Water containing a high concentration of minerals will alter the battery's chemistry reducing battery capacity and performance. Before arriving at your destination, fill up with fuel for the generator.

Before leaving, fill the fresh water tank and empty the waste holding tanks. When the fresh tank is low, the waste holding tanks will more than likely be full. Empty the waste holding tanks before refilling the fresh water tank.

Solar panels are a valuable addition to help charge the batteries. If the motorhome is equipped with two panels, the first panel will offset the parasitic loads. The second panel (and adding a third if possible) will charge the batteries during daylight hours. Clean the solar panels regularly for optimum performance. Dust, dirt, grime and pollution from the road and air will decrease their efficiency. Clean the solar panels with window cleaner and a soft cloth.

Most dry camping locations can accommodate motorhomes of various lengths. Confirm the facility you plan on visiting can accommodate your motorhome's length and size. Arrive at the campground during daylight hours so you can properly set-up the motorhome to prepare for the night ahead. Getting to a site on narrow and winding campground roads takes skill and patience. Avoid low hanging limbs, tree trunks and barriers lining the roadway. Have the co-pilot or the campground host provide assistance when maneuvering the motorhome around curves and bends.

When dry camping hookups are not a concern, take extra time to properly set-up. Make sure there is plenty of space to extend the slide-out room(s). Before lowering the air suspension and leveling the motorhome, check underneath for obstacles that may damage undercarriage components.

For motorhomes equipped with automatic leveling, be sure people and pets are not moving in the coach during the leveling process. When leveling manually, interior movement is less critical.

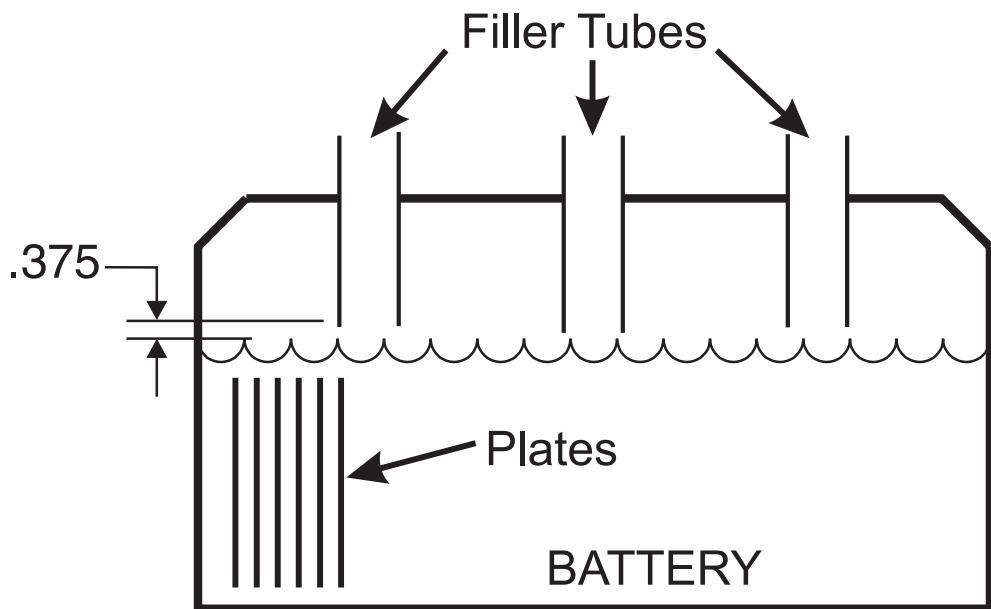
Setting Up for Dry Camping:

- Switch refrigerator operation from Auto to LP-Gas.
- Operate the water heater on LP-Gas. Turn it on about an hour before hot water is needed.
- If the furnace is needed during the nighttime, set the thermostat temperature a bit lower preventing the furnace from cycling all through the night.
- Check on small items that use battery power, such as the porch light, bay lights, the light under the step, generator compartment lights, engine compartment lights, etc. If the television is not being used, turn off the 12 Volt booster. Even one light accidentally left on, such as under the front cap, reduces battery reserves considerably.
- Some battery draw is unavoidable. The battery cut-off switch at the entry door must be on to operate many interior items such as lights or the furnace.
- Keep flashlights handy. Build a campfire when spending nighttime hours outdoors. Illuminate the vicinity around the motorhome with some Tiki torches. Transport the torches empty of fuel (keep the container in the storage bay). Extinguish the flames before retiring for the evening. Many campgrounds place wood or cement barriers between the site space and fire pit. Be sure to illuminate any barriers or obstacles in the pathway to the motorhome.
- Place a large flashlight inside the front door for navigating through the coach during the night without having to use interior lights. If interior lighting is needed, use one light in a central location, such as the vanity.
- During the day it is still important to conserve on energy. Turn on the water pump only when using water. Turn the pump off when not in use. The water pump does not draw an abundance of power, however all battery amp hours are important and should be conserved.
- If it is too early in the morning or too late in the day to run the generator, use the inverter for AC power. Remember to turn off the inverter when not in use. When the rest of the campers are up and about, turn on the generator and run it for a couple of hours to help charge the batteries. The generator may seem loud, however, the noise is minimal just a short distance away from the coach. Run the generator during clean up and preparation for the day.
- Check the monitor panel frequently and keep track of water usage and battery consumption. Routinely check the LP-Gas level. Remember the furnace uses more gas in cold weather.

- Careful management of water is critical when dry camping. Know the motorhome tank capacities. Picture the amount of liquid in a gallon container. Visualize that amount each time you run the water. If you are dry camping for extended period, limit shower usage. Turn the water off when soaping down in the shower. If water conservation is necessary, take a sponge bath. Conserve water while brushing your teeth. Chances are a campground without hookups will not have large comfortable shower rooms or bathrooms. It may only be equipped with primitive facilities, however, if it helps to economize on water, use them.
- Do not fill the sink full of water to wash a few dishes. Use disposable dishes whenever possible. Conserve propane, cook dinner over the campfire. However, if cooking over the campfire is not desired, use the cook top or microwave. If you use the inverter to operate the microwave, battery power will be consumed quickly. If possible, use the generator to operate the microwave. It is healthy for the generator to operate under a heavy load such as the microwave.
- Allow the generator to power up for a couple of minutes before applying a load.
- To conserve on battery power, plan what is needed from the refrigerator prior to opening it. If weather does not permit eating at the picnic table, or if no picnic table is available, eat at the dinette table by candlelight.
- Leave shoes outdoors or at the entry step to avoid tracking in dirt. Open windows during the day instead of using the roof air conditioner.
- Get back to nature and still enjoy the comforts of the motorhome. With a little imagination, the ways to conserve available resources while dry camping are endless.

Typical Current Draw:

- Understand the inverter operations.
- One continuous duty solenoid is a .7 Amp draw, two solenoids will be a 1.4 Amp draw.
- A 13" TV has a 1.7 Amp draw.
- Rope lights (10 ft) are a 1.3 Amp draw.
- The porch light is a 2.0 Amp draw.
- One fluorescent dual bulb light has a 2.1 Amps draw.



The distilled water level in the battery should be 3/8" below the vent tube.

Battery State of Charge vs Voltage/Specific Gravity

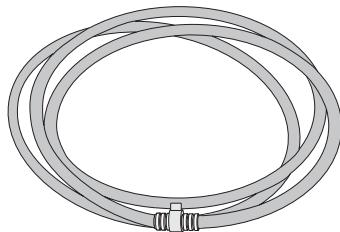
VOLTAGE	SPECIFIC GRAVITY	STATE OF CHARGE	DEPTH OF DISCHARGE
12.66	1.265	100%	0%
12.45	1.225	75%	25%
12.25	1.190	50%	50%
12.05	1.145	25%	75%
11.90	1.100	0%	100%

BREAKING CAMP

A checklist guide is listed below to reference when preparing to break camp. Preparing the motorhome for travel will require several small tasks. Properly securing and storing items will help prevent them from getting lost or being damaged during travel.

Outside Checklist:

- Disconnect the cable TV, lower the television antenna and (if applicable) the satellite dish.
- Disconnect and stow the phone line.
- Retract the awnings and secure them for travel.
- Close LP-Gas tank valve. Check the level of the LP-Gas Tank to ensure a sufficient amount is available.
- Drain and flush the holding tanks. First close the grey water valve, run enough cold water down the sink and shower drains until the grey tank is at least 50% full. Be careful not to overfill or flood the grey tank. Next, open the black tank valve allowing the drain cycle to complete. If applicable, connect a **non-potable** water hose to the No-Fuss hose bib and flush the black tank system. Close the black tank valve, open the grey water valve. The water from the grey tank will help flush the solids from the drain hose.
- Disconnect the sewer hose, flush hose with clean water from **non-potable** hose, store the hose. Install the sewer cap.
- Fill the fresh water tank (using the potable hose). Disconnect and store the fresh water hose. Remove any hose protected water pressure regulator from the city water faucet.
- Turn shore power breaker off and disconnect the shore line. Wind up and store the shore cord.
- Inspect fluid level in oil bath hubs (if applicable) and check all tire pressures.
- Secure all compartment doors and entry door.
- Inspect tires and wheels.
- Check for fluid leaks under or around the motorhome.



Screw the ends of the hose together before storage to prevent leakage and to prevent dust and insects from entering the hose.

Engine Checklist:

- Inspect the engine, transmission and the engine compartment for fluid leaks.
- Inspect the area under the motorhome for fluid leaks or puddles.
- Check all fluid levels: oil, antifreeze, transmission, hydraulic fluid and washer fluid.
- Inspect belts and hoses for wear.
- Inspect wiring for loose, frayed or corroded connections.
- Start engine and listen for any unusual noises.
- Inspect gauges and controls for proper operation.

Interior Checklist:

- If applicable, retract leveling jacks allowing the air suspension to obtain proper ride height.
- If applicable, clear the slide room path, clean the floor, move the driver seat forward and make sure the bay doors are shut. Once the slide room is fully retracted secure any slide room awning locks.



NOTE: To operate the kitchen slide the ignition must be OFF, the park brake must be set and the bay doors under the slide room must be closed.

- Secure and fasten the bi-fold and pocket doors. Lock the shower door.
- Close roof vents and windows.
- Secure any loose, heavy or sharp objects in case of a sudden stop.
- Close all cabinet doors and drawers.
- Turn off interior lights.
- Turn off water heater, water pump and furnace.
- Walk through the interior and check for any unsecured items.
- Turn the interior lighting off.
- Check the fuel level gauge. Check all other dash gauges for operation and correct level indications.

Departure Checklist:

- Check items in storage bays to make sure shifting or damage of items will not occur.
- Look around, above and under the motorhome for obstructions. Check for debris stuck between the rear dual tires.
- Walk around the motorhome and camp area checking for forgotten items.
- Outside compartment doors should be closed and locked.
- Check operation of all exterior lights, headlamp, taillamp, brake and clearance lights.
- Carefully pull forward out of the campsite. If necessary, clean the site and check for any forgotten items.
- Secure and lock the entry door for travel.

EMERGENCY PROCEDURES-ROADSIDE

If an emergency situation occurs, use the appropriate braking technique and pull off the roadway a safe distance from traffic (if possible). Set the parking brake and turn on the hazard warning flashers, especially when parked alongside traffic lanes. In the event of an emergency stop due to a mechanical breakdown or other motorhome related problems, contact Customer Support at **(1-877-466-6226)** or an emergency service provider.

An emergency road kit should include at least three reflective warning signs, road flares, a flashlight, spare automotive fuses and an assortment of hand tools. For added safety a separate fire extinguisher should be considered. The motorhome is equipped with a fire extinguisher located inside next to the co-pilot seat. Road flares or reflective warning signs should be displayed if the motorhome is alongside of the road for any length of time.

Guidelines for placing the warning triangles depend upon the road characteristics and visibility. For example: The standard placement is 10 feet, 100 feet and 200 feet from the rear of the motorhome when on a divided highway or one-way road. On a two-way road with traffic traveling both directions the same placement would also be required at the front of the motorhome. Roads with curves and hills may require the placement of the last/furthest triangle to be 500 feet behind the motorhome in order to safely warn approaching traffic.

Transmission - Rocking Out

It may be possible to rock the motorhome out if you are stuck in snow, mud or deep sand. Shift the selector to **D** (Drive) and apply steady light throttle. Never apply full throttle as the wheels may spin and bury the motorhome deeper. When the motorhome has moved forward as far it will go, apply and hold the service brakes. Allow the engine to return to idle before selecting the **R** (Reverse). Release the brake and apply light throttle until the motorhome has rocked as far it will go. Again, apply the service brake and allow the engine to return to idle. Repeat this process if the motorhome has moved a greater distance. If the process does not free the motorhome call for towing assistance.



NOTE: Sudden movements or lurching the motorhome with an open throttle can result in damage to the transmission. Avoid this condition by making shifts only when the throttle is closed and engine is at normal idle.

Jump Starting

When using jumper cables to start the engine, make sure the cables are connected in parallel. That is positive (+) to positive (+) and negative battery (-) to negative chassis (-). Always connect your positive (+) before the negative (-) and disconnect the negative (-) before the positive (+) to prevent arcing. When using an external electrical source to start the engine, shut the disconnect switch to the **OFF** position. Batteries can emit explosive gases. Always ventilate the battery compartment prior to any work or service to the batteries. Extinguish all smoking material and keep all open flame and spark producing devices away from battery area.

In the event of a roadside emergency, contact the nearest Cummins Center or phone **1-800-DIESELS** (800-343-7357) for Cummins Customer Assistance Center.



WARNING: The gases around the battery can explode if exposed to flames, sparks or lit cigarettes. An explosion can result in injury or vehicle damage. Batteries contain sulfuric acid, which burns skin, eyes and clothing. Do not connect the end of the second cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery to be jumped. A spark may cause an explosion of the gases that surround the battery. Connect only to chassis, away from the battery.

If a towing company is called for service it is recommended that they use a lowboy/landall type of trailer and if a tow truck is used it needs to have a stinger (an arm that goes under motorhome and hooks to front cross member). Inform the tow company of the weight and length of the motorhome, number of passengers and milepost location.

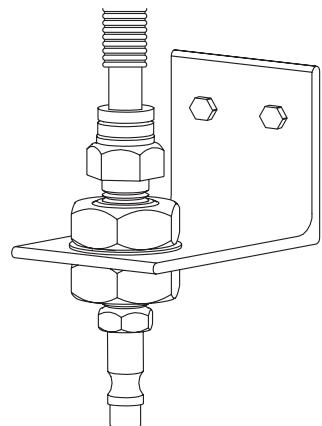
The towing company may need to locate the air nipple to release the air brakes. The air nipple is located inside the frame, on the roadside, in the front run electrical compartment. It should only be used by towing personnel. If the motorhome ever needs to be towed, use the following instructions:

- If the motorhome is damaged, secure any loose or protruding parts.
- Inspect points of attachment on a disabled motorhome. If attachment points are damaged, select other attachment points at a substantial frame structural member.
- Never allow anyone to go under a motorhome while it is being lifted by towing equipment unless the disabled motorhome is adequately supported by safety stands.
- Do not tow the motorhome from the rear. Towing from the rear will cause the front tires and suspension to be seriously overloaded, possibly resulting in a tire or front suspension failure. Rear frame extensions are not designed to withstand weight loads imposed by lifting the rear of the motorhome.
- If rear wheels are disabled, place the motorhome on a flat bed trailer or use a heavy duty dolly under the rear wheels and tow from the front of the motorhome.
- The drive shaft must be removed to prevent damage to the transmission. Secure U-joint caps to prevent lost needle bearings.



WARNING: If the motorhome requires towing, follow all precautions. The driveline must be disconnected and the mudflap may need to be removed. Damage to the motorhome from a towing company is not covered by the manufacturer.

TOWING PROCEDURES

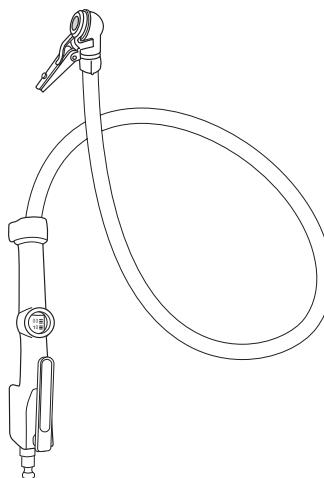


Air Nipple. Located inside the frame rail on the roadside, behind the generator access door.

TIRES

The tire designed for the motorhome is a very technical and precisely engineered product. To obtain the maximum wear and best service out of the tires it is helpful to understand the function of a tire. A tire is a “container” that holds air. It is the combination of air and tire casing that supports the motorhome and its contents. In addition, since the tire is the only contact the motorhome has with the road surface, it must provide other functions such as traction for moving, stopping, steering and providing a cushion for the motorhome.

The Importance of Air Pressure



Remote Inflation Device.

The most important factor in maximizing the life of the tires is maintaining proper inflation. Driving on any tire that does not have the correct inflation pressure for the load of the motorhome is dangerous and may cause premature wear, tire damage and/or loss of control of the motorhome.

An under-inflated tire will build up excessive heat that may go beyond the design limits of the rubber and radial cords, which could result in sudden failure. An under-inflated tire will also cause poor motorhome handling, rapid and/or irregular tire wear and an increase in rolling resistance that results in a decrease of fuel economy.

An over-inflated tire will reduce the tire's footprint/contact patch with the road, thus reducing traction, braking capacity and handling of the motorhome. Over-inflation of a tire for the load will result in a harsh ride and uneven tire wear. The tire becomes susceptible to impact damage.

Maintaining correct tire inflation pressure for each loaded wheel position on the motorhome is of the utmost importance and must be a part of regular motorhome maintenance.



WARNING: Driving on a tire that is under-inflated can exceed the design limits of the tire and may damage the sidewall. A damaged sidewall can burst upon inflation resulting in serious damage, injury or death. Aged tires are also susceptible to sidewall damage. For safety purposes clear the area of people and pets during tire inflation. Inflate the tires using a remote inflation device.

How Much Air Should I Carry in My Tires?

Federal law requires that the specifications for the tire's maximum load rating be molded into the sidewall of the tire. The amount of air pressure to use is dependent on the weight of the motorhome when it is fully loaded. The chart within this section shows weights that can be supported by various air pressures. Utilizing less air pressure means a lesser load can be carried by the tire.

Tire Pressure Inflation Guideline

Always comply with the tire manufacturer's recommended pressure inflation guideline. The actual weight of the motorhome can vary significantly depending on how it is loaded. For optimum tire wear, ride and handling always comply with the manufacturers guideline. A tire inflation chart listing proper inflation pressure for different loads is contained in this section of the manual.

The tires of the motorhome are inflated to pressure(s) appropriate for the actual weight on each axle in the unloaded, shipped condition. When the motorhome is loaded, check and adjust the inflation pressure on each tire as needed.

Always inflate tires to the pressure indicated in the tire chart for the load carried by the tire. **DO NOT OVERINFLATE OR UNDERINFLATE THE TIRES.**

The Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) of the axles listed on the federal certification label attached to the motorhome is the maximum allowable loaded weight on an axle.

When the actual loaded weight of the motorhome and the weight on each axle is unknown, follow the recommended tire inflation pressure(s) listed on the federal certification label. When loading a motorhome never exceed the motorhome's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) or the GAWR for each axle.

Contact the tire manufacturer for further information concerning proper tire pressure inflation and other tire issues.

The **GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)** and **GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)** stickers on the motorhome (normally located on the support pillar next to the driver's seat) will show the chassis manufacturer's and/or the RV manufacturer's total vehicle maximum weight ratings and per axle weight rating.

The GVWR is the maximum total weight for which the motorhome is rated – including passengers, fluids, and cargo. The GAWR is the maximum for which a single axle is designed. These per axle and total maximum weight ratings could be limited by the tires, wheels, axle and axle bearings, the motorhome frame or other components of the motorhome.

The GAWR sticker is only a guide in knowing the maximum loaded axle weights, and subsequently the correct tire inflation pressure. Every recreational vehicle, even of the same make and model, will vary in actual loaded axle weights because of different options and personal loads.

While the actual loaded axle weight should be below the GAWR, the motorhome must be weighed in a loaded condition to know its actual weight. Weigh the front axle, the total unit and the rear axle. It is possible for a motorhome to be within the GVWR yet overloaded on an axle. It is even possible for one wheel position to be overloaded, even though the GAWR has not been exceeded. For this reason (if there is room to the sides of the scales) weigh each wheel position of the motorhome. This will give a clear indication of exactly how the weight of the motorhome is distributed. These instructions and diagrams are presented on the following pages. When the total weight and the weight on each axle is known, the tire load data chart in this manual will show the correct cold inflation pressure per tire for each axle.

WEIGHT TERMS

Two important factors to consider when loading the motorhome: **total weight** and **balance**. When loading heavy objects keep them as low as possible, preferably on the floor. Load weight must be distributed as evenly as possible. The following is an explanation of commonly used weight abbreviations.

- **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR):** GVWR means maximum permissible weight of this motorhome. GVWR is equal to or greater than the sum of UVW plus NCC.
- **Unloaded Vehicle Weight (UVW):** UVW means weight of this motorhome as built at factory with full fuel, engine oil and coolants. UVW does not include cargo, fresh water, LP-Gas, occupants or dealer installed accessories.
- **Net Carrying Capacity (NCC):** NCC means maximum weight of all occupants including driver, personal belongings, food, fresh water, LP-Gas, tools, tongue weight of towed vehicle, dealer installed accessories, etc., that can be carried by this motorhome. (NCC is equal to or less than GVWR minus UVW.)
- **Gross Combined Weight Rating (GCWR):** GCWR means value specified by motorhome manufacturer as maximum allowable loaded weight of this motorhome with its towed trailer or towed vehicle.
- **Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR):** GAWR means load-carrying capacity specified by manufacturer of a single axle system, as measured at tire ground interfaces.
- **Gross Combined Axle Weight (GCAW):** GCAW means the sum of the total weight of all axles when added together.

Weight Label

MODEL YEAR: _____	MAKE: _____	MODEL: _____
UNIT NO. _____	CHASSIS VIN: _____	
		<u>LBS.</u> <u>KGS.</u>
GVWR	(Gross Vehicle Weight Rating) is the maximum permissible weight of this fully loaded motorhome _____	
UVW	(Unloaded Vehicle Weight) is the weight of an exemplar Motorhome as manufactured at the factory with full fuel, engine oil and coolants (*1) _____	
SCWR	(Sleeping Capacity Weight Rating) is the manufacturer's designated number of sleeping positions multiplied by 154 pounds (70 kilograms) _____	
CCC	(Cargo Carrying Capacity) is the GVWR minus each of the following: UVW, full fresh (potable) water weight (including water heater), full LP-Gas weight and SCWR..... _____	
GCWR	(Gross Combination Weight Rating) is the maximum allowable combined weight of this motorhome and the towable product (*2)..... _____	
FACTORY INSTALLED OPTIONS are options installed at the factory but do not include dealer installed after market equipment.. _____		
CARGO CARRYING CAPACITY (CCC) COMPUTATION		
GVWR .....	.....	.....
minus UVW .....	.....	.....
minus fresh water (*3) weight of ____ gallons @ 8.3 lbs./gal .....	.....	.....
minus LP-Gas weight of ____ gallons@ 4.5 lbs./gal .....	.....	.....
minus SCWR of ____ persons @ 154 lbs./person.....	.....	.....
CCC for this motorhome (*4) .....	.....	.....
CONSULT OWNER MANUAL(S) FOR SPECIFIC WEIGHING INSTRUCTIONS AND TOWING GUIDELINES.		
WARNING:DO NOT EXCEED THE GVWR, GCWR AND/OR GAWR AFTER LOADING YOUR MOTORHOME WITH WATER, FUEL, PASSENGERS AND CARGO. GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating) means the maximum permissible load weight a specific axle is designed to carry. See Federal Certification Label for disclosure of The GAWR for each axle.		
(*1) The UVW has been determined by weighing an exemplar motorhome with some but not all optional equipment available for each model year, make and model of motorhome. The result of the weighing of the exemplar motorhome is then used in calculating the UVW of other motorhomes of same model year, make and model. Your actual UVW may vary based upon options ordered. Please contact the manufacturer for the actual weight of each option. (*2) Consult your Owner's Manual for towing limitations, restrictions and other guidelines. (*3) Your motorhome's fresh water tank and water heater taken together determine the gross fresh water capacity. Your usable fresh water capacity, however, may be less. (*4) Dealer installed equipment and towed vehicle tongue weight will reduce CCC.		

Improperly inflated tires or suspension that is incorrectly loaded can result in poor fuel economy, poor handling and over-stressed chassis components. Vehicle loading affects tire inflation pressure and the load carried by each axle. Motorhome axle configuration and floor plan styles will require different weighing procedures.



WARNING: Improperly inflated or overloaded tires can cause a blowout. An overloaded axle can cause a component failure of the suspension system. Tire blowouts or broken suspension components can lead to loss of vehicle control resulting in property damage, personal injury or death.

WEIGHING THE MOTORHOME



CAUTION: If actual weight carried by any tire is below the tire chart weight specification a minimum tire pressure of at least 75 psi. must be maintained. Tire pressure below 75 psi. can overheat and damage the tire casing leading to premature tire failure or blowout.

Slide-out Tire Pressure:

A motorhome equipped with slide-out room(s) will weigh slightly heavier on the driver's side. The tire inflation pressure of the driver's side tires determines the inflation pressure for all tire(s) on that axle. This is due to the weight transfer that occurs when cornering. Approximately the same weight load will be transferred to the passenger side around left-hand corners.



NOTE: When weighing a motorhome equipped with a slide-out room, each tire on any axle must be inflated to the same pressure. The wheel position carrying the most weight will determine the tire inflation pressure for each tire of that particular axle.

Scale:

Certified public scales are located in a variety of places such as moving and storage lots, farm suppliers with grain elevators, gravel pits, recycling companies and large commercial truck stops.

If you are not aware of a nearby public scale, check the local area telephone book yellow pages under "scales-public" section or "weighers." A nominal fee will be charged, but this is money wisely spent.

Weight scale types and weighing methods will affect the procedure used to determine proper tire inflation pressure and axle loading. The size of some scales will allow the entire motorhome to fit on the scale, which will read the GVW with only one scale recording required. Other scales are designed to weigh only one axle at a time, which may require two or three scale readings to determine the GAW or GVW total. Some scales will read only one wheel position at a time due their physical size. Several scale readings may be required to determine the GAW or GVW total.

Slide-out equipped motorhomes will require each wheel position to be weighed. This is referred to as a four corner weigh. This type of weighing procedure will accurately determine what the correct tire inflation pressure should be. Depending on the type of scale being used, several different scale readings may be required.



NOTE: The most accurate method to determine proper tire pressure is a four corner weigh. A slide out motorhome will require each tire to be weighed independently. Weighing an axle will net the total weight carried by that axle. When calculating the drive axle dual tire pressure using a independent corner weigh method, divide the total weight by two to determine the weight carried by each tire. When weighing the entire drive axle, divide the total weight by four to determine the approximate weight carried by each tire.

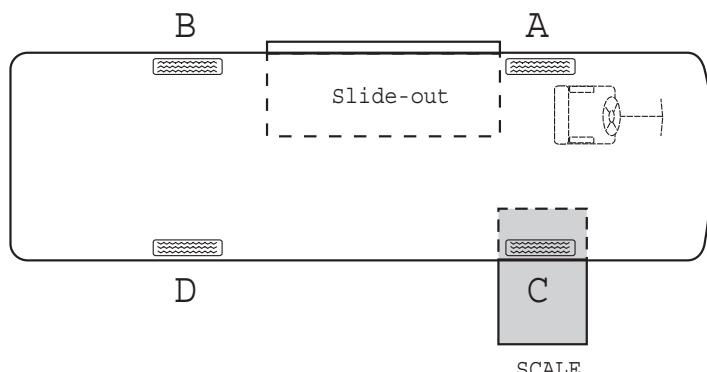
Example:

The motorhome must be weighed fully loaded to obtain accurate scale readings and to determine the proper tire pressure.

- Take the rear axle gross axle weight rating (GAWR) and divide it by two. Record the figure next to scale B, $\text{GAWR} \div 2$. Example: If rear axle GAWR is 13,000 lbs. $\text{GAWR} \div 2$ would be 6,500 lbs.
- Weigh the driver's side rear corner (scale B) and record the scale reading next to gross axle weight (GAW) for scale B. Example: Scale B reading is 5,100 lbs.
- Repeat procedure for the rest of the scale readings.
- Add the GAWR from scales B and D and enter the sum next to the final GAWR. Example: 13,000.
- Add the GAW from scales B and D and enter this sum next to the final GCAW. Example: 10,000.
- Compare scale readings GCAW against GAWR readings. All figures on line 2 are not to exceed figures on line 1.
- Use tire chart with scale reading to determine correct tire pressure.



NOTE: Scale readings and gross axle weight ratings are fictitious. Actual scale readings and gross axle weight ratings will vary with model and options.

**Rear**

Scale 1. GAWR $\div 2$ (6,500)

B 2. GAW (5100)

+

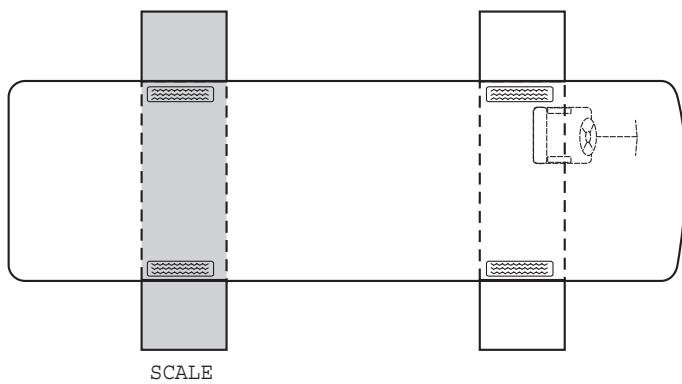
=

1. GAWR (13,000)

2. GCAW (10,000)

Scale 1. GAWR $\div 2$ (6,500)

D 2. GAW (4,900)

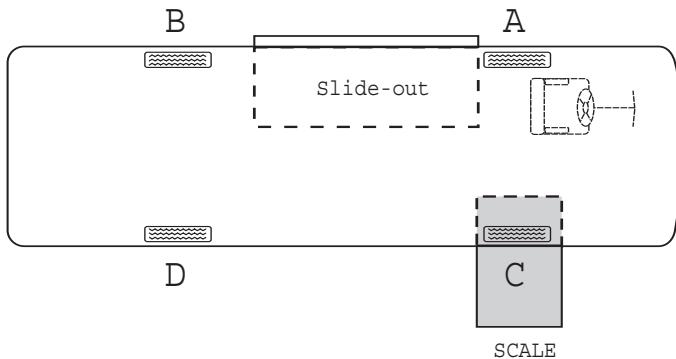


Weighing a two axle non-slide motorhome.

- Record the gross axle weight ratings (GAWR) and the gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR).
- Weigh and record each wheel position or total axle weight.
- If necessary, adjust the payload so the GAWR is not exceeded. Total combined weights must not exceed the GVWR.
- Using the tire chart, locate the recommended air pressure for the weight carried by each tire. Adjust the tire pressure accordingly.

$$\underline{\text{GAWR (Rear)}} + \underline{\text{GAWR (Front)}} = \underline{\text{GVWR}}$$

$$\underline{\text{GAW (Rear)}} + \underline{\text{GAW (Front)}} = \underline{\text{GCAW}}$$



Weighing a two axle slide-out motorhome.

- Slide rooms must be in the retracted position.
- Record the gross axle weight ratings (GAWR) and the gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR).
- Weigh and record the weight placed on each tire.
- If necessary, adjust the payload so the GAWR is not exceeded. Total combined weights must not exceed the GVWR.
- Using the tire chart, locate the recommended air pressure for the weight carried by each tire. Adjust the tire pressure accordingly.

Rear

$$\begin{array}{lll} \text{Scale} & \underline{\text{GAWR} \div 2} \\ \text{B} & \underline{\text{GAW}} \\ & + \\ & = \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \underline{\text{GAWR}} \\ \underline{\text{GCAW}} \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{lll} \text{Scale} & \underline{\text{GAWR} \div 2} \\ \text{D} & \underline{\text{GAW}} \\ & + \\ & = \end{array}$$

Front

$$\begin{array}{lll} \text{Scale} & \underline{\text{GAWR} \div 2} \\ \text{A} & \underline{\text{GAW}} \\ & + \\ & = \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \underline{\text{GAWR}} \\ \underline{\text{GCAW}} \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{lll} \text{Scale} & \underline{\text{GAWR} \div 2} \\ \text{C} & \underline{\text{GAW}} \\ & + \\ & = \end{array}$$

TIRE CHART

TIRE SIZE		MAX Speed Rating (MPH) S	Dial Speed Rating (MPH) S	INFLATION PRESSURE - PSI											
65	70	75	80	85	90	95	100	105	110	115	120	125			
8R19.5	75	D S	2350 2410	2460 2540	2570 2680	2680 2800	2780 2930	2880 3060	2980 3170	3070 3280	3160 3400	3375(F) 3500(F)			
225/70R19.5	75	D S		2720 2895	2860 3040	3000 3195	3115 3315	3245 3450	3415(F) 3640(F)						
245/70R19.5	75	D S	3415 3640	3515 3740	3655 3890	3875(F) 4080(F)	3940 4190	4095 4335	4075 4545(G)	4300 4540	4405 4685	4560 4850	4805 5070	4860 5170	5070(G) 5355(G)
265/70R19.5	75	D S			3750 3970	3930 4180	4095 4355	4300 4540	4405 4685	4560 4850	4805 5070	4860 5170			
9R22.5	65	D S	3120 3190	3270 3370	3410 3560	3550 3730	3690 3890	3820 4050	3950(F) 4210	4350 4500(F)					
10R22.5	65	D S	3690 3770	3870 4000	4040 4210	4200 4410	4375 4610	4520 4790	4670 4970	4875(F) 5150(F)	4970 5320	5110 5490	5250(G) 5680(G)		
11R22.5	75	D S				4760 4990	4950 5220	5120 5430	5300 5640	5470 5840	5750(G) 6175(G)	5800(H) 6240	6430	6610(H)	
12R22.5	65	D S				5190 5450	5390 5690	5590 5920	5780 6140	5960 6370	6150 6590	6320 6790	6500 7010	6750(H) 7390(H)	
245/75R22.5	75	D S	3260 3470	3425 3645	3640 3860	3740 3980	3890 4140	4080 4300	4190 4455	4335 4610	4410 4675	4455 4675	4610 5205	4675 5510(H)	
255/70R22.5	75	D S	3585 3815	3765 4005	3970 4190	4110 4370	4275 4550	4410 4675	4455 4895	4610 5065	4675 5205	5070(H) 5510(H)			
265/75R22.5	75	D S		4040 4070	4205 4255	4370 4440	4525 4620	4685 4800	475(G) 4975	5150 5150	5205(G) 5205(G)				
275/80R22.5	75	D S				4855 5265	5080 5515	5305 5755	5525 6000	5745 6235	5965 6475	6180 6710	6395(H) 6940(H)		
295/75R22.5	75	D S		4690 4725	4885 4945	5070 5155	5260 5370	5440 5510	5675(G) 5780	5800 5980	6005(H) 6175(G)	6005(H) 6370	6610(H) 6610(H)		
295/80R22.5	75	D S				4855 5480	5100 5750	5335 6020	5570 6285	5805 6550	6035 6810	6265 7070	6490 7320	6720 7580	6940(H) 7830(H)
315/80R22.5	75	D S					5840 6415	6070 6670	6395 6940	6540 7190	6770 7440	6940 7610	7210 7920	7610(J) 8270(J)	
285/75R24.5	75	D S				4740 4770	4930 4990	5205 5210	5310 5420	5495 5675	5835 6040	6175(G) 6175(G)			

The motorhome manufacturer is not the author of this chart and makes no representation or warranty concerning the accuracy of the information disclosed by the chart. The motorhome manufacturer is not responsible for the accuracy of the information disclosed or for any errors within the Tire Inflation Chart.

Inspecting & Pressure

Regularly check the tire pressure. If a nail or screw punctures a tire, the object can lodge in a tire creating a slow leak. The object may eventually be spotted on a front tire or an outside rear dual. However, if there is a slow leak on an inside dual, it will probably go unnoticed. If you begin driving unaware that an inside dual tire is low on air pressure or is flat, very quickly (in most cases a few miles) the outside rear tire will heat up due to carrying double the load. This can lead to failure of the outside tire resulting in two flat tires on the same side on the same axle.

Check the tire pressure every two weeks or at least once a month and before any major trip. Check the tire pressure every "drive" morning on both long and short trips (driving a day or less). Check the tire pressure before leaving on a trip and again before starting your trip home. Check the tire pressure before storing the motorhome for any length of time. More importantly, check the tire pressure when removing the motorhome from storage.

Check the tire pressure when the tires are "cold" and have not been driven for more than one mile. The rated load capacity for cold inflation pressure is based on ambient temperature. If you must check the tires when they are warm or hot, allow for a slight increase in air pressure. The pressure should be within a couple of pounds of each other on the same axle. Never let air out of a hot tire.

When checking the inflation pressure, use a high-quality truck tire air gauge. These have an angle dual head. This type of pressure gauge can check the pressure of the inner dual wheel that has the valve stem pointing outward and the outer wheel has the valve stem pointing inward. Nothing should restrict the ability to easily check the tire's air pressure daily when traveling in the motorhome. Use valve stem caps with a positive seal to prevent air escaping from the valve stem. If there are extension hoses on the valve stem, make sure they are good quality reinforced stainless steel braid. Attach hoses securely to the outer wheel.

Optimum tire performance is achieved at proper inflation pressure for the load carried. Do not mix tires of different tread patterns on the same axle. The difference in traction could cause rear end gear fight and mechanical damage to the drive train. Never mix tires of a different size or construction on the same axle.

Higher than recommended pressure can cause:

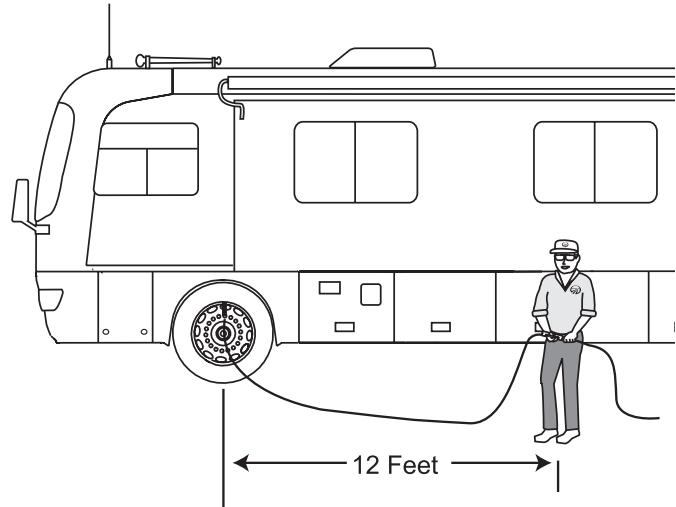
- Hard ride.
- Tire bruising or carcass damage.
- Rapid tread wear in the center of the tire.



WARNING: Improperly inflated tires can effect handling or cause sudden tire failure possibly resulting in loss of vehicle control. Always use an accurate tire pressure gauge when checking tire pressure.

Lower than recommended pressure can cause:

- Tire squeal on turns.
- Rapid and uneven wear on the edges of the tread.
- Tire rim bruises and rupture.
- Tire cord breakage.
- Excessive tire temperature.
- Reduced handling quality.
- High fuel consumption.



Unequal tire pressures on same axle can cause:

- Uneven braking, swerve upon acceleration.
- Steering lead, torque steer.
- Reduced handling quality.



WARNING: Driving on a tire with low air pressure can exceed the design limits of the tire. Damage to the sidewall of the tire can occur. A damaged sidewall can burst upon inflation causing serious damage, injury or death. Aged tires are also susceptible to sidewall damage. For safety purposes clear the area of people and pets during tire inflation. Inflate tires using a remote inflation device.

Tire rotation can increase the useful life of the tires by achieving uniform wear on all of the tires. The first tire rotation is the most important. Have the tire manufacturer determine the tire rotation pattern. Any unusual or unique wear pattern that may have developed should be evaluated before rotation. Misalignment, imbalance or other mechanical problems may exist and will need corrected prior to rotation.

The tire rotation should be performed if there is any sign of uneven wear. After a tire rotation, check and adjust the inflation pressures for the actual loads of the wheel position accordingly.

Tires are warranted by the tire manufacturer. The motorhome manufacturer is not responsible for warranty coverage or tire wear.

Tire Rotation

Blocking When Leveling

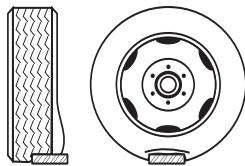
Extreme caution must be taken to ensure that the tires are fully supported when placing blocks under the tires. The load on the tire should be evenly distributed on the block. In the case of dual tires, distribute the load evenly on blocks for both tires. If not properly blocked, the steel cables in the sidewall of the tires may be damaged and could lead to premature fatigue of the sidewall.

Tire "Blocking" Methods

INCORRECT

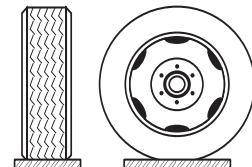
Singles

Only a portion of the tire is supporting the full load.



CORRECT

Singles

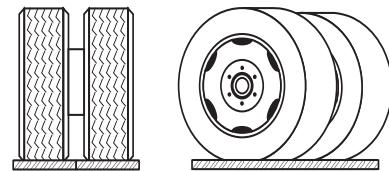
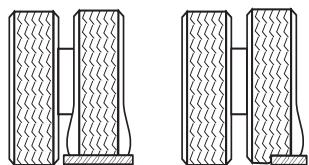


Tire Footprints



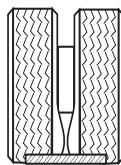
Duals

One tire or a portion of one tire is supporting the full load.

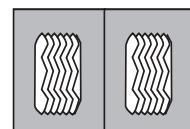


Duals

One tire or a portion of the two tires supporting the full load.



Dual Tire Footprints



Proper Cleaning:

Road oil will cause deterioration of the rubber. Dirt buildup will help hold chemicals in the air next to the tire and will also cause deterioration.

Proper care and methods of cleaning must be used to obtain the maximum years of service from the tires. Use a soft brush and a mild detergent to clean the tires. If a product is applied to "protect" the tires from aging, use extra care and caution. Petroleum or alcohol based products may cause deterioration or cracking. A chemical reaction to the rubber may occur over time.

When these same products are used on a passenger car tire that is replaced every three to four years, it is rare to see a major problem. However, in most cases, motorhome tires may last longer due to limited annual mileage and exposure.

Storage of Tires - Long Term

The recreational vehicle is designed for recreation not long-term storage. However, unless you are living in your motorhome full-time you will have a need to store it. Rubber tires age faster when not being used. A cool, dry, sealed garage is the preferred method of storage. Many recreational vehicles are stored outside in the elements. Some storage surfaces may cause tires to age prematurely. Placing a barrier (i.e. cardboard, plastic or plywood) between the tire and the storage floor/ground surface will help to protect the tires.

There are a few steps that can be taken to reduce the aging effects from long-term storage or a non-use period. Thoroughly clean the tires. Cover the tires to block direct sunlight and ultraviolet rays. Store the recreational vehicle out of a high ozone area. Failure to take these steps can cause early deterioration and shorten the life of the tires.



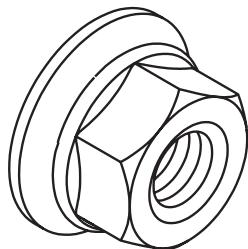
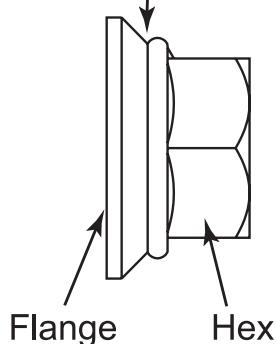
NOTE: When the motorhome is stored the tires should be inflated to maximum inflation pressure as indicated on the sidewall of the tire.

Before removing the motorhome from long-term storage thoroughly inspect each of the tires. This means a close examination of each tire's tread area and air pressure. If the pressure check indicates the tires have lost air during storage, inflate them to the correct pressure for the current load before putting the motorhome into service.

In Case of Flat Tire

In case of a flat tire, it is recommended to call for roadside assistance. The size and weight of the motorhome and its tires require the proper equipment to change the tire. A professional service technician will have the equipment and training needed to repair or replace the tire. In the case of sudden tire failure, avoid heavy braking. Hold the steering wheel firmly and gradually decrease speed. Slowly move to a safe off-road place, which should be a firm level spot. Turn the ignition off and turn the hazard flasher system ON. Goodyear Tire Company has an emergency number that offers 24-hour assistance. To contact **Goodyear** call **(877) 484-7376**. Save the old tire for any warranty coverage.

For Used Nuts
Add 2 drops of Oil
Between Flange
and Hex

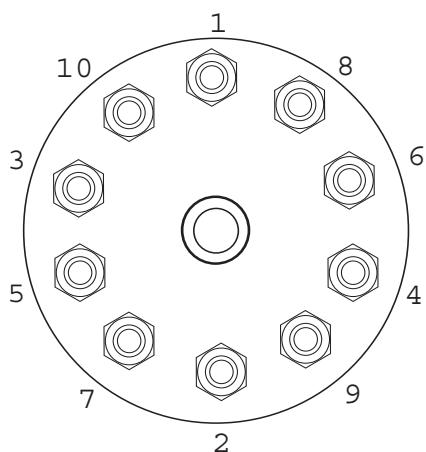


Hub Piloted Mounting:

- Before using flange nuts that have already been used in service, apply two drops of oil at one point between the flange and hex. This will allow parts to rotate freely and provide the proper clamping force when tightened. Use any common lubricant typically used for fasteners. Examples are motor oil and general purpose lubricating oils. Excessive lubricant is not desirable, this will not improve the nut performance. Excessive lubricant makes the nuts hard to handle, attracts dirt to the nuts and may cause unsightly appearance to the wheel. Only used nuts need to be lubricated.
- Since flange nuts generate higher clamping force always use grade eight studs with hub mount wheels.
- Before installing the wheels, lubricate the hub pilot pads with a drop of oil to prevent galling. Do not lubricate any other wheel or hub surface.
- For a hub with intermittent pilot pads, position a pad at the twelve o'clock position to center the wheel and reduce runout.



NOTE: Loosen and tighten lug nuts in a star pattern sequence. Sequence tighten to 50 ft lbs. first, then sequence tighten to 500 lbs. Over tightening can cause distortion.



Nut Tightening Sequence

Front Wheels:

Slide the front wheel over the studs, being careful not to damage stud threads. Snug the nuts in sequence, do not tighten them fully until all have been seated. Tighten the nuts to 500 ft.lbs in sequence (as shown in the illustration).



WARNING: Never use wheels or lug nuts different than the original equipment as this could damage the wheel or the mounting system. Damage to the wheel or mounting system could cause a wheel to come off while the recreational vehicle is in motion.

Dual Rear Wheels:

Slide the inner dual wheel over the studs, being careful not to damage the stud threads. Align the handholds for valve access and slide the outer dual wheel over the studs, again being careful not to damage the stud threads.

Snug the nuts in sequence, do not tighten them fully until all have been seated. Tighten the nuts to 500 ft. lbs. using the sequence as shown in the illustration. The hub mount wheels use two piece flange cap nuts for both front and rear applications. No inner cap nuts are required.

Torque the Nuts Properly:

- Tighten the wheel nuts to the recommended lug nut torque. Do not over tighten.
- Maintain the nut torque at the recommended level through planned periodic checks or at 10,000 miles intervals, whichever comes first.
- If air wrenches are used they must be periodically calibrated for the proper torque output. Use a torque wrench to check the air wrench output and adjust the line pressure for the correct torque.

SPECIFICATIONS - DIMENSIONS CHART

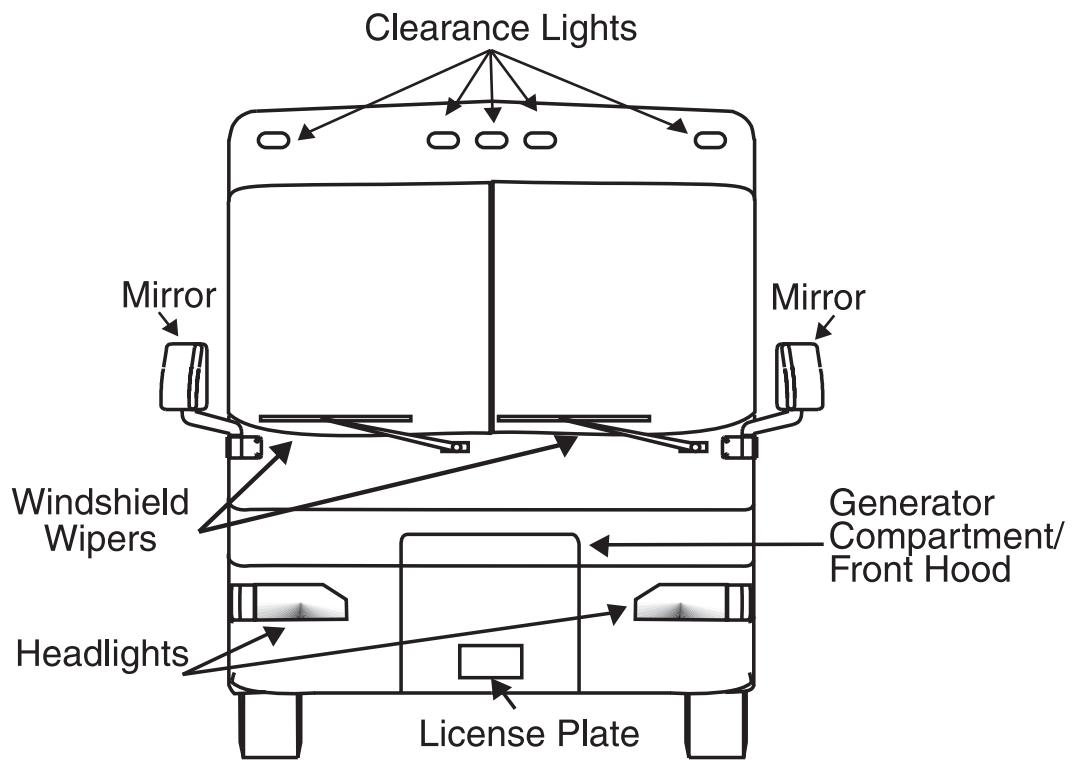
MODELS	30PBD	32PBD	34PBD	36PBS	36PBD	38PBD	38PBT
Wheelbase	160"	184"	204"	228"	228"	252"	252"
Overall Length	30' 11"	32' 4"	34' 4"	36' 4"	36' 4"	38' 5"	38' 5"
Overall Height with A/C*	11' 9"	11' 9"	11' 9"	11' 9"	11' 9"	11' 9"	11' 9"
Interior Height	6' 6"	6' 6"	6' 6"	6' 6"	6' 6"	6' 6"	6' 6"
Interior Width	94.5"	94.5"	94.5"	94.5"	94.5"	94.5"	94.5"
Exterior Width	100.5"	100.5"	100.5"	100.5"	100.5"	100.5"	100.5"

*NOTE: Satellite systems may vary in heights.

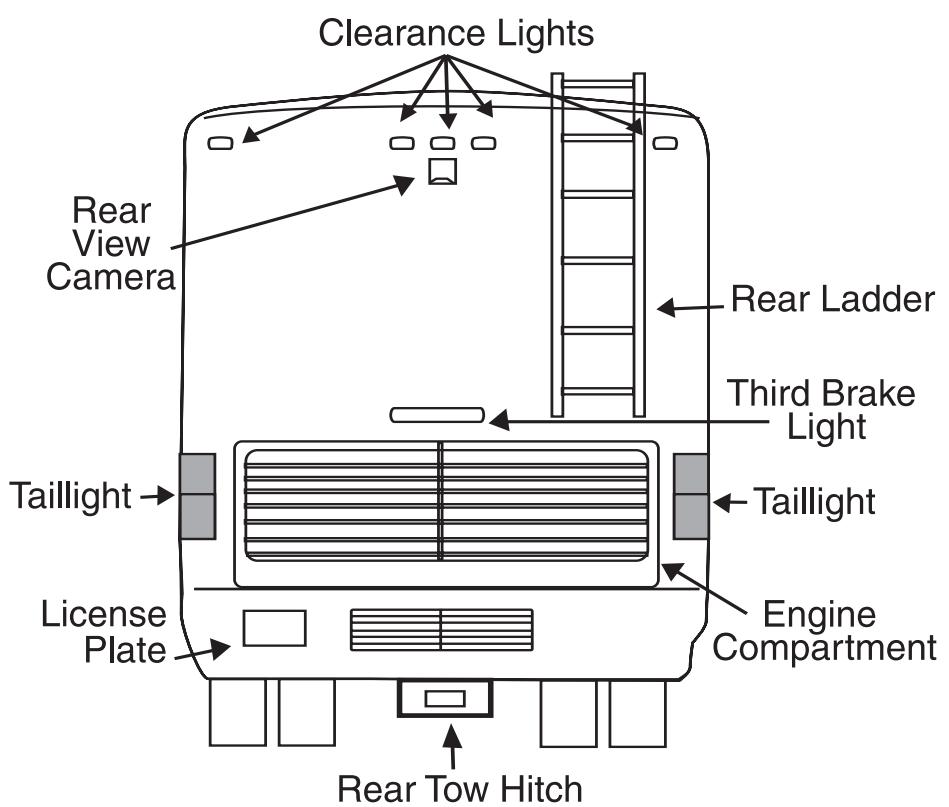


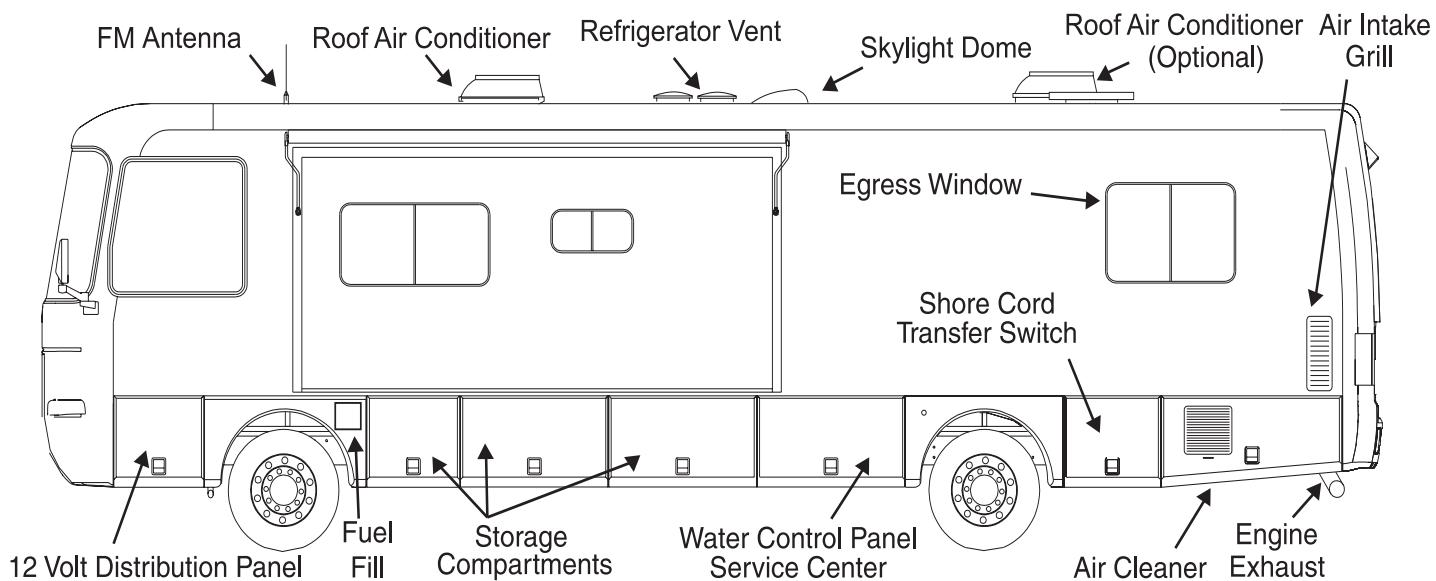
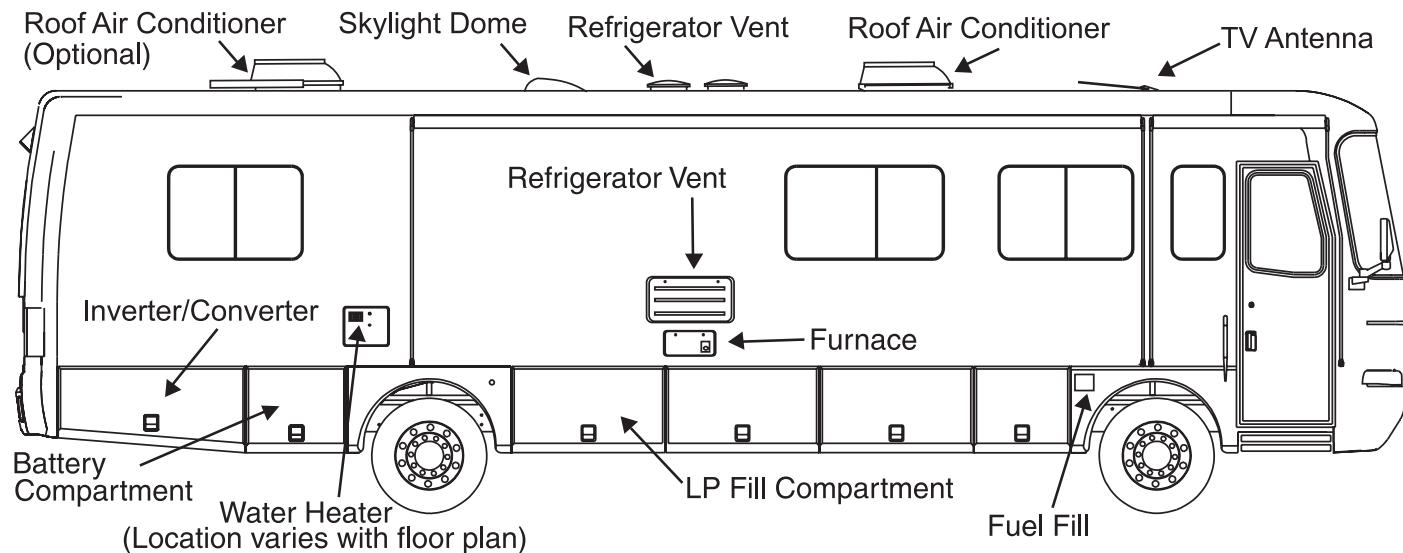
NOTE: This chart reflects product specifications available at the time of printing. Therefore any floor plans introduced thereafter may not be reflected in the chart. All other information contained throughout the manual will still apply.

VIEWS - Front



Rear



VIEWS - Roadside**Curbside**

SMOKE DETECTOR



Statistics show that most fire casualties are not caused by direct flame, but by less visible smoke (products of combustion). The smoke detector responds to both visible and invisible products of combustion. The smoke detector will automatically return from alarm to normal state when the reason for activation, the presence of smoke, is completely removed. Fires are commonly caused by smoking in bed, leaving children unattended or using flammable cleaning fluids. Please be safety conscious and avoid unnecessary risk.



WARNING: There is no way to ensure there will be no injury or loss of life in a fire; however, the smoke detector is intended to help reduce the risk of tragedy. Additional smoke detectors may help to reduce the risk. Proper use and care of the smoke detector could save lives.

Operation

Once a 9 Volt DC battery is correctly connected, the smoke alarm is operating. The LED will flash every minute showing the battery is supplying power. A load alarm will sound when a production of combustion is sensed.



NOTE: The unit will not operate without a battery. A battery flag will pop up preventing the unit from being installed to the mounting bracket without a battery. Most carbon zinc batteries average service life is one year. Most alkaline batteries service life is one to two years.

How to Test

Simply press the test button on the smoke alarm cover for approximately three seconds. The alarm will sound if all electronic circuitry, horn and battery are working properly. The smoke alarm should be tested at least once a week when the motorhome is in use. Prior to each trip, and when the motorhome has been in storage, are other times when the smoke alarm must be tested. When testing the smoke alarm it is advised to stand at arms length.



CAUTION: Never use an open flame to test the smoke alarm. You may ignite and set fire to the alarm and to the motorhome.

A smoke alarm is designed to be as maintenance free as possible. However there are some simple steps that must be performed to keep the smoke alarm working properly:

Maintenance

- Test the smoke alarm once a week.
- Keep a supply of 9 Volt DC batteries on hand.
- Vacuum the slots in the cover and sides with a soft brush attachment every month. Test the smoke alarm once the unit has been vacuumed.
- The smoke alarm should be cleaned every six months to help keep the unit working efficiently.
- The smoke alarm will beep once a minute when a low battery condition exists. The battery must be replaced immediately.

If the alarm does not sound when the test button is pushed, or with a smoke test, try the following:

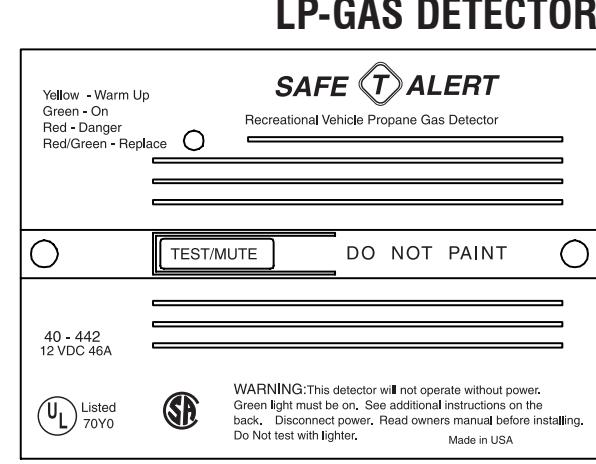
Troubleshooting

- Inspect for obvious damage.
- Check for the recommended battery type.
- Check the battery for proper connection or replace the battery if needed.
- Gently vacuum as recommended.

If these procedures do not correct the problem, do not attempt repairs. If the smoke alarm is within the warranty period and the terms indicate the nature of the problem, return the unit to your dealer. Smoke detectors beyond the warranty period cannot be economically repaired.

The LP-Gas detector is provided for safety. It detects both LP-Gas and methane gas. Liquefied Petroleum (LP) Gas is heavier than air, while methane gas is lighter than air. LP-Gas will settle to the lowest point, generally the floor of the motorhome, whereas Methane gas will rise. The gas detector is also sensitive to other fumes such as hair spray, of which most contain butane as the propellant. Butane, like propane, is heavier than air and will settle to the floor level where it will be detected. When this occurs, press reset button to stop the alert sound for 60 seconds.

The other combustibles which will be detected include alcohol, liquor, deodorants, colognes, perfumes, wine, adhesives, lacquer, kerosene, gasoline, glues, most cleaning agents and propellant of aerosol cans. Most are lighter than air in their vapor state and will only be detected when the motorhome is closed up.



Operation

Upon first application of power the LED will flash **yellow** for three minutes while the detector is stabilizing. At the end of the start cycle the LED will turn **Green**, indicating full operation. If the detector senses unsafe levels of gas it will immediately sound an alarm. The gas detector operates on 12 Volt DC, with a current draw less than 1/10th of one amp.



CAUTION: The detector will not alarm during the three minute warm up cycle.

Testing

Press the **TEST** switch any time during the warm up cycle or while in normal operation. The LED should flash **red** and the alarm should sound. Release the switch. This is the only way the detector should be tested. The test feature checks full operation of the detector.



WARNING: Test the operation of this detector after the motorhome has been in storage, before each trip and at least once per week during use.

Alarm

The **red** LED will flash and the alarm will sound whenever a dangerous level of propane or methane gas is detected. The detector will continue to alarm until the gas clears or the **TEST/MUTE** switch is pressed.

Procedures To Take During An Alarm:

1. Turn off all gas appliances, (stove, heaters, furnace), extinguish all flames and smoking material. Evacuate, leave doors and windows open.
2. Turn off the propane tank valve.
3. Determine and repair the source of the leak. Seek professional help if necessary.



CAUTION: Do not re-enter until the problem is corrected.

Alarm Mute:

Press the Test-Mute button when the detector is in alarm.

1. The red LED will continue flash and the alarm will beep every 30 seconds until the gas level has dropped to a safe level.
2. The LED will flash green until the end of the Mute cycle.
3. If dangerous gas levels return before the end of the Mute cycle, the alarm will beep four times and return to phase 1.
4. After two minutes the detector will return to normal operation (solid green) or resound the alarm if dangerous levels of gas remain in the area.

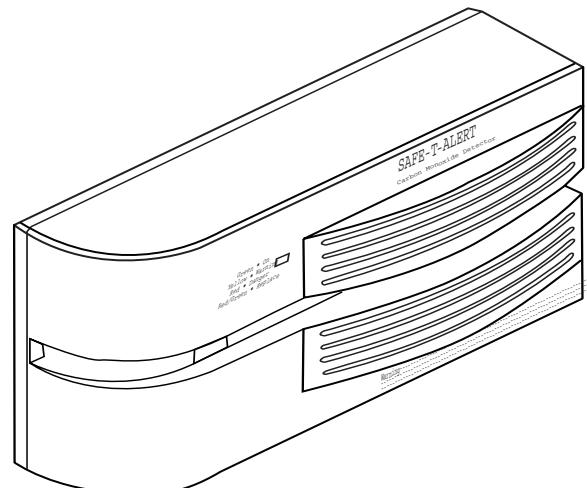
Fault Alarm:

Should the microprocessor sense a fault in the gas detector, a fault alarm will sound twice every 15 seconds. The LED will alternately flash **red** to **green** and the **MUTE** switch will not respond to any command. The gas detector must be repaired or replaced.

1. Vacuum the dust off the detector cover weekly (more frequently in dusty locations) using the soft brush attachment of the vacuum.
2. Do not spray cleaning agents or waxes directly onto the front panel. This action may damage the sensor, cause an alarm or cause a detector malfunction.

Care

The motorhome is equipped with a carbon monoxide detector. Carbon monoxide (CO) is a colorless, odorless and tasteless gas. Even low levels of CO have been known to cause brain and other vital organ damage in unborn infants, with no effect on the mother. In cases of mild exposure the symptoms may include: a slight headache, nausea, vomiting and fatigue. Symptoms for medium exposure may include a severe throbbing headache, drowsiness, confusion and fast heart rate. Extreme exposure can result in unconsciousness, convulsions, cardio-respiratory failure and death. Young children and household pets may be the first affected. The CO detector is designed to detect the toxic CO fumes that result from vehicle exhaust and incomplete combustion sources like a furnace, gas stove or water heater. Consequently, it is uncommon for household smoke from cigarettes or normal cooking to cause the alarm to sound.

CARBON MONOXIDE DETECTOR

Carbon monoxide detector.



NOTE: Activation of this device indicates the presence of carbon monoxide (CO) which can be fatal. A concentration of above 100 PPM will cause a warning condition. Individuals with medical problems may consider using detection devices with lower carbon monoxide alarming capabilities. Prolonged exposure to the horn at a close distance may be harmful to your hearing.

Operating Instructions

The detector is equipped with a self-cleaning CO sensor and requires a ten minute initial warm-up period to clean the sensor element and achieve stabilization. The green power light should be lit when the power is on. If the light is not lit, turn off the power and check all wire connections. If the power is on and the connections are correct but the indicator still does not light, the detector should be returned for service. Do not attempt to fix the detector. The indicator light displays a specific color to monitor the conditions as follows:

- **Green** - Indicates **ON** or normal condition. The CO detector has power and is sensing air for the presence of CO gas. The alarm horn will not sound.
- **Yellow** - Indicates a “**trouble**” or malfunction condition. The alarm horn will sound and cannot be reset by the **TEST/RESET** button. The CO detector is not working properly and must be immediately replaced or repaired.
- **Red** - Indicates an “**alarm condition**.” The detector has sensed the presence of a hazardous level of carbon monoxide. The alarm horn will sound continuously until the **RESET** switch is reset.

Alarm

When the alarm sounds have the detector and the motorhome checked by an authorized service technician as soon as possible. Never disconnect a CO detector to silence an annoying alarm. Evacuate the motorhome immediately when the RED light is lit and the alarm sounds. Do a head count to check that all persons are accounted for. Call the nearest fire department and ask them to determine the source of the carbon monoxide. Do not re-enter the motorhome until it has been aired out and the problem corrected.

Testing

Test the carbon monoxide detector operation after the motorhome has been in storage, before each trip and at least once a week during use. Test the alarm by holding the test button in until the alarm sounds. The alarm will stop beeping in about 30 seconds.

Cleaning

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust or any other buildup on the detector. Do not wash. Wipe the detector with a damp cloth and dry it with a towel. Do not open the detector for cleaning. Do not paint the detector. It is recommend that the carbon monoxide detector be replaced every 10 years.

The fire extinguisher in the motorhome is located near the main entrance door. Please read the operating instructions that are printed on the fire extinguisher. If there is any doubt on how to operate the fire extinguisher, you and your family should practice using it. Be sure to replace or recharge the extinguisher immediately after use.

Inspect the fire extinguisher at least once a month. Do so more frequently if the extinguisher is exposed to weather or possible tampering. Do not test the extinguisher by partially discharging, this will cause a loss of pressure.

Use the PASS word!

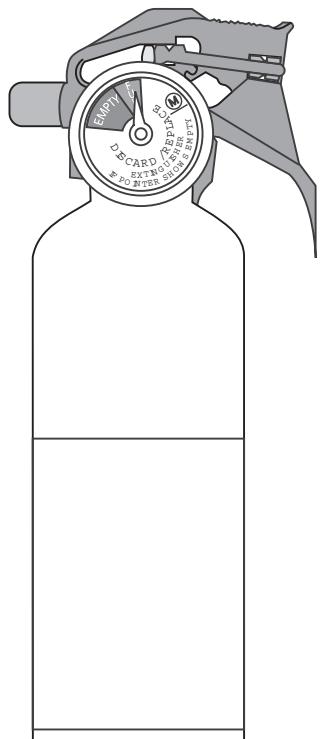
Pull the pin to unlock the extinguisher.

Aim at the base (bottom) of the fire and stand 6-10 feet away.

Squeeze the lever to discharge the agent.

Sweep the spray from left to right until totally extinguished.

FIRE EXTINGUISHER



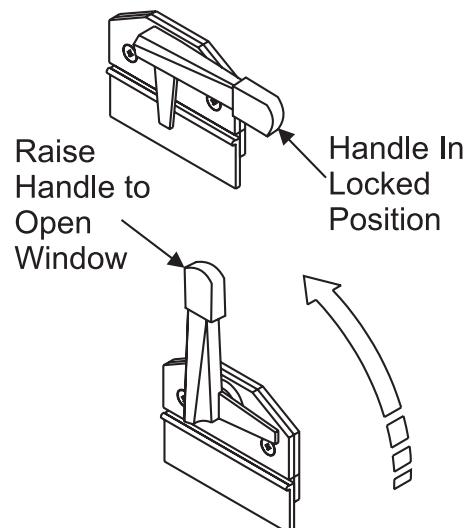
An egress window is designated for use as an exit in the case of an emergency. Inside the motorhome the egress window is easily identified by the red locking handle. It is also marked as an "EXIT." Outside of the motorhome, the egress window is identified by hinges along the top of the window. The glass slider in the egress window operates the same as all other windows.

To open the egress window:

- Lift the red handle and push outward on the window.
- Pull the window closed and lower the handles to lock the egress window.

The egress window should be opened twice a year to ensure proper operation. Over time, the rubber seal will tend to stick to the egress window. Occasional operation will help prevent the rubber seal from sticking.

EGRESS EXIT WINDOW



Egress Window Handle

NOTES

KNIGHT

SECTION 3
CARE & MAINTENANCE

EXTERIOR CARE • 71
<i>Corrosion • 71</i>
<i>Washing • 71</i>
<i>Drying • 72</i>
<i>Waxing • 72</i>
<i>Tire Care • 73</i>
<i>Care & Maintenance of Wheel Covers • 73</i>
<i>Bright Metal • 74</i>
<i>Maintenance - Exterior • 74</i>
<i>Roof Care & Seal Inspections • 74</i>
INTERIOR CARE • 76
<i>Fabrics • 76</i>
<i>Fabric Specifications Charts • 78</i>
<i>Vinyl • 80</i>
<i>Naugahyde Leather • 82</i>
<i>Floors - Carpet Cleaning • 83</i>
<i>Floor - Laminate • 84</i>
<i>Shower - Cleaning • 85</i>
<i>Ceiling • 85</i>
<i>Ozite Material • 86</i>
<i>Wall Coverings • 88</i>
<i>Countertops • 89</i>
<i>Windows • 90</i>
<i>Mini-Blinds • 91</i>
<i>Day/Night Shades (Optional) • 91</i>
<i>STORAGE - Short Term • 91</i>
<i>STORAGE - Long Term • 92</i>
<i>CHECKLIST - Winter Storage • 95</i>
<i>STORAGE - Removal • 95</i>

The most common cause of corrosion to the motorhome is the accumulation of road salts, grime and dirt. These elements, combined with moisture, may possibly cause early component failure. Salt air and fog from coastal trips can greatly accelerate the corrosion process. Corrosive materials collected from roadways accumulate on the undercarriage, around wheel openings and on the radiator charge air cooler package. These areas need to be cleaned periodically to help prevent component failure due to corrosion. If the motorhome is driven in areas where road salts are used it should be washed at least once a week. Otherwise, it is recommended to hose off the undercarriage area at least once a month to help minimize the corrosion process. High pressure washers or steam cleaners are the most effective way of cleaning off the underside and inside wheel openings. **Avoid directly spraying the painted surface with a high pressure washer.** Remove road debris and mud that has accumulated. Material left behind can intensify the corrosion problem.

EXTERIOR CARE

Corrosion



CAUTION: Exercise caution when cleaning the radiator charge air cooler package. Damage to the fins can result when using a high pressure washer or steam cleaner. Nozzle discharge pressure can exceed 1,800 psi. Avoid using high pressure steam cleaners on the exterior paint surfaces. Remove all spattered washing debris from the exterior paint surfaces as soon as possible.

The life of the exterior paint finish can be extended if properly cared for. Periodic cleaning will help preserve the paint finish. The motorhome is painted with a “base coat, clear coat system.” The clear coat is a polyurethane based material which brings out the shine or luster to the base coat paint. Care should be used when washing the motorhome. Use only mild detergents or preferred specifically designed automotive detergents. Avoid using abrasive cleansers or laundry detergents as they will scratch the clear coat and leave a soap film. The use of specially designed automotive washing utensils such as soft bristle brushes are acceptable, as long as they do not trap abrasive material and scratch the surface while being used. Before washing the motorhome, remove most of the accumulated dirt and “road wash” behind wheel openings, below the windshield and on the rear of the motorhome. If the build up is excessive, run water over a soft brush while gently scrubbing the surface in one direction. This will help float away the “build-up” from the clear coat. Avoid back and forth or circular motions as this may act like sandpaper, scratching the clear coat and leaving a haze or “swirl marks.” After removing the heavy build-up, use the mixed detergent solution to wash the motorhome. Start washing at the top of the motorhome working towards the bottom. If possible, wash the motorhome in a shaded area when the exterior is not hot to the touch. If necessary, turn the motorhome around to keep the area being washed in the shade. Try not to allow the detergent to dry onto the clear coat surface. Use plenty of water when rinsing the surface to remove any detergent residue.

Washing

Drying

Drying chamois cloths come in natural and synthetic materials. Either type is acceptable as long as the surface is clean. Soak the chamois in clean water until all chamois material has absorbed water. Wring excess water from chamois. Start at the top and work towards the bottom. Use a downward “S” pattern to remove water from the surface and wring out the chamois as needed. Using a chamois cloth to remove the rinse water is not necessary, but the effort can be worthwhile.

Waxing

To wax or not to wax? This is a good question. There are many schools of thought on this issue. The two most common thoughts are:

- The clear coat needs to “breathe.” A layer of wax will seal the clear coat not allowing it to breathe, possibly leading to failure of the clear coat.
- If the surface is not waxed, what is protecting the surface from the environment (road salts, acid rain, road tar, ultraviolet light)?

It is recommended to wax the motorhome twice a year: spring and fall. Many types of protective barriers are available today that may be applied to the clear coat: glazes, waxes, polishes, rubbing compounds or combinations of these products.



NOTE: When selecting a product for use follow the product manufacturer's recommended application instructions.

Types of Products:

Glazes: Glazes are generally used to fill very fine scratches in the clear coat, being applied either by hand or by using a polisher with a special pad.

Waxes: Waxes come in many types of chemical make-ups. The popular Carnauba wax is a natural occurring wax from the leaves or fronds of the Carnauba palm tree. Mineral waxes have a paraffin base. There are also other topical application products which contain silicone.

Polishes: Polishes usually contain a combination of wax based substances with an abrasive, getting the two for one idea. These products can be too abrasive for clear coats and are not recommended for use.

Rubbing Compounds: These types of products are generally applied by using a buffer. The use of rubbing compounds should be left to professionals as undesired results can quickly occur. These types of products are generally used to correct or flatten a surface by removing high spots or small amounts of material.

When selecting a product the container should be marked, “safe for clear coats” or “clear coat safe.” Carefully follow all manufacturer’s application instructions when using a product. Upon first use of a product, try it on a “small test spot” in an inconspicuous area in case an undesired reaction occurs.

Observe the test area from different angles checking for hazing or swirl marks. If an abnormal reaction to the finish occurs, discontinue product use and consult the

product's manufacturer. If the product is a paste, do not allow dried paste to be baked on by the sun. Remove paste shortly after drying. Clean, dry, 100% cotton cloths or cotton baby diapers are best suited for the removal of dried paste. Turn the cloth often. Use a separate clean cloth to buff. The surface should feel "slick" when rubbing the cloth lightly over it. Avoid repeated wax applications which can cause wax to build up. Some very fine scratches or swirl marks may be removed by an application of a glaze. These types of glazes fill the scratches or swirl marks.

The motorhome has a large surface area. Washing and waxing may not be completed in one afternoon. Select sections to wax until the motorhome is complete. If the task seems overwhelming, have an automotive detailer perform the task.

Road oil will cause deterioration of the rubber. Dirt buildup will help hold chemicals in the air next to the tire and will also cause deterioration.

When cleaning any rubber product, proper care and methods in cleaning must be used to obtain the maximum service years out of the tires. Use a soft brush and a mild detergent to clean the tires. If a dressing product is used to "protect" the tires from aging, use extra care and caution. Tire dressings that contain petroleum products or alcohol may cause deterioration or cracking.

In many cases it is not the dressing that causes a problem but the chemical reaction that subsequently occurs. When these same dressing products are used on a passenger car tire that is replaced every three to four years, it is rare to see a major problem. However, in most cases recreational vehicle tires may last longer due to limited annual mileage and exposure.

Tire Care

- Clean frequently with high pressure water from a hose. The use of mild detergent will speed the cleaning process. Do not use harsh alkalis, alcohol or acidic cleansers. A secondary hand washing with a soft cloth may be required to remove some stubborn road films.

- When the tires are removed the entire wheel must be cleaned and inspected. With a wire brush or sandpaper remove dirt, corrosion or any foreign materials from the tire side of the rim. Do not use a wire brush or other abrasive substances to remove dirt and corrosion on the polished surface of the wheel.
- To maintain the original appearance of the aluminum wheels the following procedures are recommended:

1. After installing new wheels (prior to operating your motorhome) use a sponge, cloth or soft fiber brush to wash the exposed wheel surfaces with a mild detergent/warm water solution.
2. Rinse thoroughly with clean water.
3. Wipe dry to avoid water spots.
4. Use a high quality, non-abrasive polish to remove stubborn road tars, insects or hard to remove deposits.
5. To protect the appearance surface on wheels, wax the cleaned surface with a high quality car wax.
6. Clean the aluminum wheels as frequently as required to maintain their appearance.

Care & Maintenance of Wheel Covers

Bright Metal

All chrome, stainless steel and aluminum should be washed and cleaned each time the motorhome is washed. Use only automotive approved non-abrasive cleaners and polishes on exterior bright work.



NOTE: When using chemicals to remove road tars, use only automotive type products that are recommended for use on painted surfaces and fiberglass. Observe the warning recommendations and directions printed on the container of any agent being used.

Maintenance - Exterior

The motorhome is subject to a great deal of outside conditions. While the coach is parked it is exposed to extreme temperatures, humidity, ultraviolet rays, acid rain and other organic environmental conditions. While in operation the coach is subject to twisting and flexing caused by (for example) going in and out of driveways, bouncing through potholes and driving through winding mountain roads.

Periodic inspections of the fiberglass exterior may reveal minute cracks in the surface commonly called "spider cracks" or "hairline cracks" which are caused by the flexing of the fiberglass exterior. These are normal. If a crack represents a threat to the integrity of the fiberglass it will open up and the weave of the cloth would be visible. If the exterior has been damaged, prevent moisture penetration, especially in freezing climates. Cover the area as quickly as possible. Use plastic sheeting and tape, if necessary, so that moisture will not get into the motorhome and damage the interior.

Roof Care & Seal Inspections

Periodic resealing of the joints and seams is necessary to prevent the entrance of moisture into the motorhome. Enough emphasis cannot be placed on this issue.

Extreme damage from a water leak can occur rapidly. Never leave the vehicle unattended with the slide room extended. If the vehicle is to be stored outside throughout the winter months, a full interior inspection for water leaks should be made bi-monthly. Extensive sealing has been done at the factory; however, the normal twisting and flexing that occurs while traveling may have compromised a seal or seam. All joints and seams should be inspected at least twice a year and recaulked as necessary.

Special attention should be directed toward the roof air conditioning seals, ceiling and plumbing vents, skylights, roof mounted antennas, windows, door molding, clearance lights and the beltline molding. Specific sealant products should be used in the areas for which they were designed. These items can be obtained from recreational vehicle parts suppliers. Listed below are some of the more common sealants and the areas in which they are used. Approved sealants are available at service centers and authorized dealers.



WARNING: Some products may contain hazardous materials which require special handling. Read labels carefully. Follow all of the product manufacturer's safety requirements.

Sealant Types:

Acryl-R:

Acryl-R is used on all roof openings such as vents, skylights, any roof

mounted antennas and ladder roof mounts. The sealant should be applied only where the equipment bases meet the roof. Clean the old sealant that is lifting before applying with new. Make sure the roof is dry and free of dirt. This product is usually found in a caulking tube. Care should be used when near an edge, as the product will spread out. Masking tape may be used to mask around area to avoid mishaps. The roof air conditioners use a closed cell foam base gasket. No sealants are required. The roof air conditioners should be checked for tightness by the four mounting bolts located in each interior corner of the air conditioner roof opening. Torque specification is 40-50 in/lbs. The base gasket should be compressed to approximately one half inch.

Clear Silicone Sealant:

Primarily this product is used on the sidewalls where a hole has been made and an item installed. This includes Windows, Doors, Handles, Beltline Molding, Latches and around bases of items surface mounted such as clearance lights. Old peeling sealant should be removed. Avoid using metal utensils which can scratch the painted surface. Use nylon sticks or equivalent. Avoid using lacquer thinners or ketone based solvents as these chemicals can damage the painted surfaces. Be sure the surface is clean and dry before application. Cut the tube at an angle with smallest usable opening. Avoid a heavy bead as a little goes a long way. Use finger at a 45° angle on beaded surface to smooth out product. Do not moisten finger, use a disposable latex glove. Keep rags or paper towels handy for clean up. Use care when applying silicone. Plan ahead before starting a bead, look for obstacles that may impede application.

Black Urethane:

This product is used for sealing the windshields. It was not designed to fill holes or other imperfections. Black urethane comes in a tube and it applies much the same way as silicone does. Clean up using solvents such as paint thinner. Gloves are required as this material is hazardous.

Acrylic Sealants (geocel 2300):

This product is used where items are sealed under a painted surface such as the metal corners of the slide-out room. The material is specially formulated to allow paint adhesion.

Spray Foam:

This product is used as a sealant where a hole has been made for items such as water lines or wires that are coming through a floor opening.

INTERIOR CARE

Fabrics

The fabrics have been manufactured with the same quality you would expect to find in a furniture store. If the fabric is abused, it can be damaged. Special care needs to be taken when your motorhome is exposed to a very humid climate for an extended period of time. Cover all upholstery and make sure window coverings are down to protect from sun damage.

Protect the fabric from any unnecessary exposure to moisture. The sofa, pillows, dinette cushions, living area chair, driver/passenger seating and window treatments have been treated with *Scotch Guard* to prevent overall water spots and soiling. Frequently used items will wear accordingly and may require more attention than those items not regularly used.

Use the following guidelines for cleaning upholstery fabrics:

- Water-based cleaners are not recommended.
- If a spill does occur, blot the soiled area. Do not rub it.
- Some solvents are not recommended since they may have an adverse reaction on specific backings of your upholstery fabric.
- To prevent overall soiling, frequent vacuuming or light brushing are recommended to remove dust and grime.
- Clean spots using a mild water-free solvent or dry cleaning product.
- Clean only in a well ventilated area and avoid any product containing carbon tetrachloride or other toxic materials.
- Use a professional furniture cleaning service for an overall cleaning.

Fabric Cleaning Codes:

The codes listed below refer to cleaning instructions recommended by the fabric manufacturer for specific fabrics. The “Fabric Specification Charts” (located on the following pages) list specific fabric codes under “Cleaning Code.”

“W” - Clean this fabric with the foam only of a water-based cleaning agent to remove the overall soil. Many household cleaning solvents are harmful to the color and life of a fabric. Cleaning only by a professional furniture cleaning service is recommended. To prevent overall soil, frequent vacuuming or light brushing to remove dust and grime is recommended.

“S” - Clean this fabric with pure solvents (petroleum distillate-based products such as *Enerjine*, *Carbona*, *Renuzit*, or similar products may be used) in a well ventilated room. Cleaning only by a professional furniture cleaning service is recommended.



CAUTION: Use of water-based or detergent-based solvent cleaners may cause excessive shrinking. Water stains may become permanent and unable to be removed with solvent cleaning agents. Avoid products containing Carbon Tetrachloride as it is highly toxic. To help prevent overall soiling, frequent vacuuming or light brushing to remove dust and grime is recommended.

“S/W” - Clean this fabric with the foam only of a water-based cleaning agent or with a pure solvent in a well ventilated room (petroleum distillate-based products such as *Energine*, *Carbona*, *Renuzit*, or similar products may be used). Cleaning only by a professional furniture cleaning service is recommended. To help prevent overall soiling, frequent vacuuming or light brushing to remove dust and grime is suggested.

“P” - The article is resistant against perchlorethene, cleaning benzine (spirit), white spirit, R-11 and R-13.

“Dry Clean Only” - Cleaning only by a professional dry cleaner or furniture cleaning service is recommended for this fabric.

***Machine Washing Instructions for 100% Polyester:**

- **“Wash Cycle”** - Use synthetic setting and high water level with mild agitation. A mild soap or detergent in water not to exceed 160° F. **No bleach or fabric softener.**
- **“Drying”** - Use low temperatures, a synthetic setting of 85° F to 90° F maximum should be used. Do not exceed three to five minutes time on the synthetic cycle. If washed at 160° F, the maximum temperature which can be used to dry is 140° F. Hang or fold immediately after drying.
- **“Finishing”** - If necessary, press as following:
 - Iron on low setting (275° F) with damp cloth or steam iron using a dry press cloth.
 - Grid Head press for short intervals with minimum steam. Do not lock the head.
 - Flat bed press dampened drapery using cloth covering.
 - Avoid prolonged contact with heat.

Fabric Specification Charts

FABRIC	CONTENT	CLEANING CODE	WHERE USED
ROSETTA .469			
Supreme Satin Raisin	69% Rayon, 31% Acetate	Dry Clean	BR Pillow, LR & BR Valance.
Fame 5628-0845	57% Nylon, 43% Polyester	W/S	FSD & LR Pillow.
R-Carnegie Inca 01500	–	W/S	Chair, LR Valance, LR Pillow.
Dempsey Chablis	100% Polyester	Dry Clean	Windshield.
Kindred Spirit 005 MO28457-005-1	60% Polyester, 40% Cotton,	S	Sofa, Din Cushion, LR Valance
Parnell Sage	57% Cotton, 43% Polyester	S	Bedspread BR Pillow, BR Valance, Headboard.
Tumbleweed New Oyster	Vinyl	Vinyl	--
ROYAL BLUE .470			
Supreme Satin Light Coffee	69% Rayon, 31% Acetate	Dry Clean	BR Pillow, LR & BR Valance.
Dempsey Chablis	100% Polyester	Dry Clean	Windshield
Newvill Capri 28961-A5VU	42% Cotton, 34% Polyester, 24% Rayon	S	Sofa, Dinette Cushion, LR Valance
Doogie 007 MO30675-007-1	100% Olefin	W	Chair, LR Pillow, FSD, LR Valance
Dakota Alabaster	57% Cotton, 43% Poly	S	Bedspread BR Pillow, BR Valance, Headboard.
Tumbleweed New Oyster	Vinyl	Vinyl	--

FABRIC	CONTENT	CLEANING CODE	WHERE USED
WILD RIVER .471			
Catherine SH-Sun Gold	57% Cotton, 43% Rayon	Dry Clean	Bedspread, BR Pillow, BR Valance
Shantung - SH Willow	57% Cotton, 43% Rayon	Dry Clean	Headboard, BR Pillow, BR Valance.
Dempsey Chablis	100% Polyester	Dry Clean	Windshield.
Luff 023 MO 29777-023-1	83% Rayon, 15% Poly, 2% Nylon	S	Chair, LR Pillow, FSD, LR Valance.
Cher Ocean	56% Cotton, 44% Poly,	S	Sofa, LR Pillow, Dinette Cushion, LR Valance.
Tumbleweed New Oyster	Vinyl	Vinyl	--
TAUPE .405			
Shantung - SH Willow	57% Cotton, 43% Rayon	S	BR Pillow, Headboard, LR & BR Valance.
Dempsey Chablis	100% Polyester	Dry Clean	Windshield.
Sparkles Thyme 28963-A5	47% Poly, 43% Cotton, 5% Olefin, 2% Acrylic Rayon, 1% Nylon	S	Sofa, LR Pillow, Dinette Cushion, LR Valance.
Sennara 007	55% Acrylic, 32% Polyester, 13% Olefin	S	Chair, FSD, LR Pillow, LR Valance.
Luminesse Flint	100% Cotton	Dry Clean	Bedspread, BR Pillow, BR Valance
Tumbleweed Taupe	Vinyl	Vinyl	--

* See instructions for "Machine Washing 100% Polyester" under **Fabric Cleaning Codes**.

LR = Living Room BR = Bedroom FSD = Free Standing Dinette

Vinyl

Several areas of the motorhome can be covered in vinyl, such as the dash and items of furniture. The care and cleaning of these areas are outlined in the Morbern Vinyl section below.

Morbern Vinyl:

Vinyl requires periodic cleaning to maintain its neat appearance and to prevent the buildup of dirt and contaminants that may permanently stain and/or reduce the life of the vinyl if they are not removed. The frequency of cleaning depends upon the amount of use and the environmental conditions in which the vinyl is subjected. The procedures used for cleaning are dependent upon the end-use circumstances.

Normal Cleaning:

Most common stains can be cleaned using warm soapy water and clear water rinses. Moderate scrubbing with a medium bristle brush will help to loosen soil from the depressions of embossed surfaces. For stubborn stains use the following commercially available mild detergents in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions: *Mr. Clean* or *Fantastik*. Full strength rubbing alcohol or mineral spirits may be tried cautiously as a last resort on very stubborn stains if the above suggestions do not work. Indiscriminate use of any solvent, or solvent containing cleaner, can severely damage or discolor the vinyl. Stains may become permanent if they are not removed immediately. The procedure for removal of the more severe staining agents are outlined below.



NOTE: Detergents should never be used on a regular or repeated basis for normal cleaning.



CAUTION: Powdered cleaners containing abrasives, steel wool and industrial strength cleaners are not recommended for Morbern vinyl.

Bird Excreta & Vomit Stains:

Sponge the area with soapy water containing a diluted bleach until the stain is removed. Rinse thoroughly with clean water.

Urine Stains:

Sponge them with soapy water containing a small amount of household ammonia. Rinse thoroughly with clean water.

Surface Mildew:

Wash with diluted bleach and use a soft brush for stubborn growth. Rinse repeatedly with clear, cold water.



CAUTION: Lacquer solvent will cause immediate irreparable damage to the vinyl. Do not use wax on any vinyl upholstery, as it will cause premature embrittlement and cracking. Dilute chlorine bleach before using. Never use full strength bleach. If flammable solvents such as alcohol, turpentine, or varsol are used for cleaning, use only small quantities while in a well-ventilated area. Exercise proper caution by notifying any persons in the area. Keep away from any ignition source. Always wear protective gloves.

Ballpoint Ink:

Permanent Marker Ink spots will stain the vinyl permanently. Wipe the stain immediately with rubbing alcohol in a well ventilated area to remove much of the stain.

Oil-Base Paint:

Use turpentine in a well ventilated area to remove any fresh paint. Dried paint must be moistened using a semi-solid, gel-type stripper. The softened paint can be gently scraped away. Rinse with soap and water.



NOTE: Paint strippers will remove the print pattern and damage the vinyl if it comes in direct contact.

Latex Paint:

Fresh paint can be wiped off with a damp cloth. Hot soapy water will normally remove dried latex.

Tar or Asphalt:

Remove immediately, as prolonged contact will result in a permanent stain. Use a cloth lightly dampened with mineral spirits and rub the stain gently, working from the outer edge of the stain toward the center to prevent spreading. Rinse with soap and water.

Crayon, Mustard or Ketchup:

Sponge with mild soap and water. For stubborn stains that may have set, use a cloth soaked in diluted mild detergent with gentle rubbing. Any remaining stain should be washed with diluted bleach. Rinse repeatedly with cold water.

Chewing Gum:

Scrape off as much gum as possible using a dull knife. Rub the gum with an ice cube to harden it and make it easier to remove. In a well ventilated area, use a cloth saturated with mineral spirits and gently rub the remaining gum. Rinse thoroughly with clean water.

Lipstick, Grease, Oil, Make-Up or Shoe Polish:

Apply a small amount of mineral spirits with a cloth. Rub gently. Be careful not to spread the stain by smearing it beyond its original source. Remove shoe polish immediately as it contains a dye which will cause permanent staining. Rinse thoroughly with clean water.

Candy, Ice Cream, Coffee, Tea, Fruit Stains, Liquor, Wine, Tanning**Lotion or Soft Drinks:**

Use lukewarm water and sponge repeatedly. Any loose material should be gently scraped with a dull knife. Any soiled area that remains after drying should be gently rubbed with a cloth, dampened with a mild detergent solution. Rinse thoroughly with clean water.

Blood or Plant Residue:

Rub out any spots with a clean cloth soaked in cool water. If stubborn spots remain use household ammonia and rinse repeatedly with a clean, wet cloth. Do not use hot water or soap suds as this will set the stain.



NOTE: Vinyl requires periodic cleaning to maintain its appearance and to prevent the buildup of dirt and contaminants that may permanently stain or reduce the life of the vinyl if left untreated. The frequency of cleaning and procedures used depend upon the amount of use and the environmental conditions in which the vinyl is subjected to. Vinyl tears or holes can be temporarily covered with clear "office" tape to prevent further damage. Repairs should be made by a professional upholstery shop. Commercial repair products may contain lacquers and cause the vinyl to become brittle and more difficult to repair.

Naugahyde Leather

Naugahyde Leather is a vinyl coated fabric. Use the following care and cleaning methods to ensure long lasting beauty of the fabric. For best results stains should be removed immediately. The longer a stain is allowed to set, the more difficult it becomes to remove it. Always use a clean, soft, damp cloth when cleaning the fabric.

Light soiling:

- A solution of 10% liquid dish soap and warm water applied with the soft damp cloth will remove most soiling.
- Use a solution of liquid cleanser and warm water applied with a soft bristle brush, if needed. Wipe away the residue with the soft cloth.

Difficult stains:

- Mix a solution of one part bleach to four parts water.
- Dampen the soft cloth and rub gently.
- Rinse with a water dampened cloth to remove the residue.
- It may be necessary to allow the solution to puddle on the affected area for 30 minutes. Rinse using a water dampened cloth to remove the residue.



CAUTION: This method should be attempted on an inconspicuous spot prior to using on the effected area. Never use harsh solvents or cleanser intended for industrial use.

Stains such as lipstick, crayon, felt tip pen, ball point pen, mustard and certain dyed suntan lotions must be cleaned immediately. The longer these and other harsh or permanent stains are exposed to the fabric the more difficult they will be to clean. Other cleaning methods and cleaning agents may be attempted in an inconspicuous area to determine possible damage to the fabric.

Spot Removal Procedures:

- Act quickly when anything is dropped or spilled. Remove spots before they dry.
- Blot liquids with a clean, white absorbent cloth or paper towel.
- For semi-solids, scoop up with a rounded spoon.
- For solids, break up and vacuum out as much as possible.
- Pretest the spot removal agent in an inconspicuous area to make certain it will not damage the carpet dyes.
- Apply a small amount of the cleaning solution recommended for the particular spot. Do not scrub. Work from the edges of the spot to the center. Blot thoroughly. Repeat until spot is removed.
- Follow steps on the Carpet Spot Removal Guide.
- After each application, absorb as much as possible before proceeding to the next step.
- Absorb remaining moisture with layers of white paper towels, weighted down with a non-staining glass or ceramic object.
- When completely dry, vacuum or brush the pile to restore texture.
- If the spot is not completely removed, contact a professional carpet cleaner.

Cleaning Solutions:

(A) Dry Cleaning Fluid: A nonflammable spot removal liquid, available in grocery and hardware stores.

(B) Nail Polish Remover: Any acetate, which often has a banana fragrance. Do not use if it contains acetone.

(C) Detergent Solution: Mix two cups of cold water and 1/8 teaspoon mild liquid detergent (no lanolin, non-bleach).

(D) Warm Water: Lukewarm tap water.

(E) Vinegar Solution: One cup white vinegar to one cup water.

(F) Ammonia Solution: One tablespoon household ammonia to one cup water.

Floors - Carpet Cleaning

	A DRY CLEANING FLUID	B NAIL POLISH REMOVER	C DETERGENT SOLUTION	D WARM WATER	E VINEGAR SOLUTION	F AMMONIA SOLUTION	G SPOT REMOVAL KIT	H CALL PROFESSIONAL	I PERMANENT CHANGE
SPOTS									
Acid									
Acid				2		1	3	*	
Acne Medication	1		2	5	4	3	6	*	
Alcoholic Beverage			1	4	3	2			*
Ammonia				2	1				*
Bleach	1	2					3	*	
Blood	1	3		2	4				
Candle Wax	1				2				
Cement & Glue	2	1	3		5	4	6	*	
Chalk		1	2						
Charcoal		1	2						
Chewing Gum	1								
Coffee			1	3	2		4	5	*
Cosmetics	2	1	3	6	5	4	7	*	
Crayon	1		2	3					
Drain/Toilet Cleaner			2	1	3			4	*
Dye	1		2		4	3	5	6	*
Food				1	4	3	2	5	*
Fungicides/Insecticides/ Pesticides	1		2	5	4	3	6	*	
Furniture Polish (Water Based)			1	4	3	2	5	6	*
Furniture Polish (Solvent Based)	2	1	3	6	5	4	7	8	*
Furniture Stain	2	1	3	6	5	4	7	8	*
Graphite		1	2						
Grease	1	2	3				4	5	*
Ink	2	1	3	6	5	4	7	8	*
Iodine	1		2	5	4	3	6	7	*
Lipstick	2	1	3	6	5	4	7	8	*
Medicine	2	1	3	6	5	4	7	8	*
Merthiolate			1	4	3	2	5	6	*
Nail Polish	2	1	3				4	5	*
Oil	1		2	4		3		5	*
Paint	2	1	3				4	5	*
Plant Food			1	4	3	2	5	6	*
Rust			2	3	1		4	5	*
Shoe Polish	2	1	3	5		4	6	7	*
Soft Drinks				1	4	3	2	5	*
Soot	1		2	3				4	*
Tar	1						2	3	*
Toothpaste				1					
Urine				1		2	3	4	*
Vomit				1	4	3	2	5	*

(G) Spot Removal Kit: Available from retail carpet stores or professional cleaners.

(H) Call Professional: Additional suggestions, special cleaning chemicals or the ability to patch the area might be available.

(I) Permanent Change: Due to the nature of the stain, there may be color loss. The carpet has been permanently dyed or the carpet yarns have been permanently damaged.



NOTE: While the recommended cleaning agents have proven to be effective, some stains may become permanent.

Floor - Laminate

The laminate flooring used in the motorhome provides style, durability and easy maintenance. The laminate flooring is a high pressure laminated flooring designed to be incorporated as a floating floor. The flooring material is constructed of three main components. The surface, similar to many countertops, contains aluminum oxide particles to form an extremely hard, durable surface. The carrier or core layer is constructed from high density fiberboard. A tongue and groove design will allow for a tighter bond. The backer or bottom layer is also made of laminate for balance and strength.

Care and Cleaning:

Everyday cleaning is as simple as vacuuming the floor to remove dirt and debris. A cotton string mop is recommended for occasional mopping with a minimal amount of water. Use a mixture of soap-free household cleaner and water (vinegar and ammonia both work well) for a more thorough cleaning.

- Stains should be wiped away with a damp cloth.
- Stains caused by inks or paints may require a cloth moistened with acetone (nail polish remover).
- Stains caused by gum or tar should be allowed to harden completely, then gently scraped away.
- Felt protectors on the bottom of furniture and floor mats can preserve the beauty and appearance of the flooring.



CAUTION: Abrasive cleaners and scouring pads can scratch and damage the flooring. Never wax, sand or apply lacquer to laminate flooring.



NOTE: Any unusual or unique problems can be addressed by contacting Wilsonart at (800) 433-3222.

Showers are susceptible to soap build up. Showers should be cleaned weekly to prevent burdensome clean-up. Using the same solution used to clean tile floors will be sufficient for the shower. However, to control mildew growth spray the shower with household chlorine bleach and allow it to stand for five minutes. Clean the glass shower doors with window cleaner on a weekly basis to maintain the shine. If water spots cannot be removed from the glass, rub lightly with the flat edge of a razor blade to remove the deposits.

Shower - Cleaning

To prevent excessive moisture and a continual growth of mildew, use the shower only with adequate ventilation. The sealant in a regularly used shower should be replaced once a year. To replace the sealant, remove the old sealant using a sharp plastic instrument. Apply a new sealant, which can be found at recreational vehicle supply stores.

The ceiling of the motorhome can be a variety of materials or fabrics, many of which require little or no care or maintenance.

Ceiling

Vinyl:

The soft touch padded vinyl ceiling can be cleaned using the procedures discussed in the vinyl article of this section. Generally, a mild soap and water is sufficient for cleaning vinyl.



NOTE: Use care not to puncture the padded vinyl.

Ozite:

To clean the ozite ceiling, mix a solution of 8 oz. warm water, 4 oz. white vinegar, 1 oz. bleach and 4 oz. club soda. Spritz on and blot dry. Do not rub or scrub as this may damage the surface.



NOTE: Do not oversaturate the Ozite surface as this may damage the ceiling.

Hardwood Vinyl & Decorated Paneling:

Hardwood vinyl and decorated paneling are sensitive and demanding materials. Certain cleaning agents will affect the surface on both printed and unprinted vinyl. Use only a mild, non-abrasive detergent and warm water with a soft cloth or sponge for the cleaning to protect the material.

Under no circumstance should bleach, alcohol, oil-based spray cleaners or cleaning agents with solvents, citrus oil or harsh chemicals be used. Other liquid spray cleaners may also cause damage to the material.

Ozite Material

Ozite fabric can be used in a variety of applications in the motorhome, from ceilings to shelf deck lining. The following are guidelines for the care and cleaning of Ozite fabrics. These materials are made from synthetic fibers. They clean easily with virtually no damage to the color or the construction.

Cleaning Ozite Fabric

Through the installation procedures and/or consumer use Ozite fabric may become contaminated and require spot cleaning. Most commercially available carpet and upholstery cleaners will do an excellent job removing stains. However, additional cleaning methods may be needed to remove stubborn stains.

As with any stain a quick response is the best. It is important to make sure you have selected the right cleaning agent from the list below before you begin the cleaning process. We have listed most common types of stains.



NOTE: In many cases repeated steps may be required to fully extract contaminant from material.



NOTE: Always check to see that the cleaner used will not cause damage to the material by testing on an area out of sight.

Ceiling Solution

To clean the ozite ceiling, mix a solution of 8 oz. warm water, 4 oz. white vinegar, 1 oz. bleach, and 4 oz. club soda. Spritz on and blot dry. Do not rub or scrub as this may damage the surface.



NOTE: Do not oversaturate the Ozite surface as this may damage the ceiling.



NOTE: The recommendations made in the chart are done in good faith and are based on a history of actual experiences and laboratory evaluations. Foss Mfg. Co. and/or its designated distributor does not warrant, either expressed or implied the effectiveness of the cleaning agents listed and the process for cleaning described above.

Type of Stain	Cleaning Agent	How to Remove
Adhesive (water based), Pencil (graphite lead), Chalk, Felt Tip marker (indelible)	detergent	scrub-rinse-blot dry
Oil	high strength detergent	soak-blot dry
Adhesive (solvent based)	mineral spirits	soak-blot dry
Ink	dry clean solvent	soak-blot dry
Paint/Stains (latex)	high strength detergent	scrub-rinse-blot dry
Paint/Stains (oil)	mineral spirits	soak-blot dry
Tar/Asphalt	K-1 kerosene/solvents	soak-blot dry
Mustard, chewing gum	dry clean solvent	scrub-soak-blot dry
Ketchup, coffee, tea, oil, crayon, blood	high strength detergent/degreaser	scrub-rinse-blot dry
Chocolate, dirt	detergent	scrub-rinse-blot dry
Grease	high strength detergent/degreaser	
Wax	detergent	hot iron on detergent soaked cloth
Rust	rust remover	soak-rinse-blot dry
Lipstick, Nail polish, Shoe Polish	dry clean solvent	soak-blot dry
Vomit*, Urine*, Blood*, Excrement*	high strength detergent	scrub-rinse-blot dry, deodorize with vinegar

*May also be removed through steam extraction.



NOTE: The recommendations made above are done in good faith and are based on a history of actual experiences and laboratory evaluations. Foss Mfg. Co. and/or its designated distributor does not warrant, either expressed or implied, the effectiveness of the cleaning agents listed and the process for cleaning described above.

Wall Coverings

Care for the Satinesque Wall Covering:

Any stain should be removed as quickly as possible to minimize any reaction between the staining agent and the wall covering. Time is very important when removing substances that are solvent based or contain color. Examples: nail polish, oil, shampoo, lacquer, enamel, paint, ink and lipstick.

Always begin cleaning with a mild detergent such as soap. If necessary, move to a stronger cleaner such as household bleach, liquid household cleaners or rubbing alcohol. Before using one of the stronger cleaners test the cleaning agent on a small inconspicuous portion of the wallcovering to make sure that the cleaner does not affect the color or gloss of the wall covering.

Normal dirt:

Remove normal dirt using a mild soap or detergent and warm water. Allow it to soak for a few minutes then rub briskly with a cloth or sponge.

Nail polish, Shellac, or Lacquer:

Remove liquid using a dry cloth. Use care not to spread the stain. Quickly clean the remaining stain with rubbing alcohol. Rinse with clean water.

Ink:

Remove immediately by wiping with a cloth dampened in rubbing alcohol. Rinse with clean water.

Chewing gum:

Rub the gum with an ice cube to cool and harden it. Gently pull off the bulk of the gum. Remove any remaining gum with rubbing alcohol.

Pencil:

Erase as much of the pencil mark as possible. Wipe any remaining marks with rubbing alcohol.

Blood, Feces or Urine:

Remove these staining substances as quickly as possible. Wash the stained area with a strong soap. If the stain does not disappear, rinse the soapy area thoroughly with clean water. Mix a solution of 50% water and 50% household bleach. Clean the stained area with the bleach solution. Rinse with clean water.

Care for the Tower Wall Covering:

Remove ordinary stains with mild soap and warm water. Sponge it on.

Rinse well and dry with a soft cloth. **For special cleaning problems:** To remove ball point pen, blood, lipstick, etc., use a sponge or soft bristle brush and *Formula 409*, *Fantastik* or a similar product. Rinse well and dry. Finish cleaning by applying full strength isopropyl alcohol with a sponge or soft brush. Rinse well and dry.

The Solid Surface was created for a lifetime of easy care. Just follow the simple guidelines listed here to the keep countertop surface looking nice.

Countertops**Routine Care:**

The motorhome countertops are finished with one type of finish: matte/satin. All solid surface sinks and bowls have the matte/satin finish. Soapy water or ammonia-based cleaners will remove most dirt and stains from all tops and bowls. However, slightly different techniques must be used to remove different stains. Follow the recommendations below.

Cleaning Countertops:

- Most dirt and stains: Use soapy water or ammonia-based cleaner.
- Water marks: Wipe with damp cloth and towel dry.
- Difficult stains: Use soft scrub and a Grey *Scotchbrite* Pad.
- Disinfecting: Occasionally wipe surface with diluted household bleach (one part water and one part bleach).

Cleaning Solid Surfaces Sink:

Occasionally clean by using *Soft Scrub Liquid Cleanser* and a Grey *Scotchbrite* pad. Scrub the sink, rinse and towel dry. Do this as often as necessary.

Removing Cuts and Scratches:

Because the beauty of the surface goes all the way through the Solid Surface, the countertops are completely renewable. Use the following instructions to remove minor cuts and scratches.

- Sand with 180 grit and then 320 grit sandpaper until the scratch is gone.
- Restore the finish using a Grey *Scotchbrite* pad. Never sand hard in one small area. Feather out lightly to blend restoration.

Preventing Heat Damage:

The Solid Surface withstands heat better than ordinary surface materials; however, hot pans and some heat-generating appliances, such as frying pans or crockpots, can damage the surface. To prevent heat damage always use a hot pad or a trivet with rubber feet to protect the surface. In most cases the surface can be repaired if it is accidentally damaged.

Other Important Tips:

Avoid using strong chemicals on the Solid Surface such as paint removers or oven cleaners. If these come in contact with the Solid Surface quickly wash with water. Avoid contact with nail polish or nail polish remover. If contact is made quickly wash with water.



NOTE: Do not cut directly on the solid surface. Always run cold water into the Solid Surface sink when pouring boiling water into the sink.

Windows

Water Spots:

Any glass will develop water spots if the glass is not cleaned properly. A spotting effect is magnified when the glass has a reflective finish. Use a squeegee immediately after washing to reduce water spotting. To remove stubborn water stains from reflective glass we recommend *Cerium Oxide Polishing Compound*, made by C.R. Lawrence, available at most glass shops.

Condensation:

Condensation is a natural phenomenon. The amount of condensation will vary with climate conditions, particularly in relative humidity. Condensation occurs from water vapor present in the air. Each of us add more vapors by breathing, bathing, cooking, etc. Water vapor collects wherever there is available air space. When the temperature reaches the dew point the water vapor in the air condenses and changes to liquid form.

Controlling Moisture Condensation:

Reduce or eliminate interior moisture condensation during cold weather by using the following steps:

- Partially open the roof vents and windows so that outside air can circulate into the interior. Increase the ventilation when large numbers of people are in the motorhome. Even in raining or snowing conditions the air outside will be far drier than the interior air.
- Install a dehumidifier. Continuous use of a dehumidifier is effective in removing excess moisture from the interior air. Using a dehumidifier is not a cure-all, however, it will reduce the amount of outside air needed for ventilation.
- Run the range vent fan when cooking and the bath vent fan (or open the bath vent) when bathing, to reduce water vapor. Avoid excessive boiling or use of hot water as it produces steam.
- Do not heat the motorhome interior with the range or oven. Heating with the range or oven increases the risk of toxic fumes and allows oxygen depletion. Also, open flames add moisture to the interior air increasing condensation.
- In very cold weather leave the cabinet and closet doors partially open. The air flow will warm and ventilate the interior of the storage compartments and the exterior wall surface, reducing or eliminating condensation and preventing the possibility of ice formations.

- To maintain the mini-blinds, on a frequent basis vacuum with the brush attachment or use a dusting tools (available on the market) designed specifically for mini-blinds.
- Wash the mini-blinds with mild soap and water in a tub or hang the blinds on a fence or wall and gently rinse them with a hose.

Mini-blinds

The day/night shades are made of a polyester blended material. Use the following guidelines to care and maintain the day/night shades:

**Day/Night Shades
(Optional)**

- Vacuum with a brush attachment, or use a dusting tool on a regular basis.
- Use a weak solution of dish soap and water to spot clean the blinds with a slightly damp cloth. Avoid soaking or saturating the shades with water. This will break down the finish of the shade.
- Leave Day-Night shades in the up position when not in use to help the shades hold their shape.
- String tension for the shades should be equal. The tension can be adjusted if the shades will not remain folded up.

Short term storage is defined as storing the motorhome for a period of thirty days or less. Properly preparing the motorhome during periods of short term storage will make bringing the motorhome out of storage a much easier process. Winterize the plumbing system if the motorhome is stored in winter months or if stored when temperatures are below 32° F.

**STORAGE
- Short Term****Checklist-Short Term Storage**

- If applicable, retract the slide room(s). Do not store the motorhome with slide room(s) extended.
- Shut off all appliances. Close the LP-Gas valve.
- Remove all articles from refrigerator/freezer and clean thoroughly. Prop doors open to prevent mildew.
- The holding tanks should be drained and fresh water system winterized with potable antifreeze or winterize the plumbing system using air pressure.
- Retract and secure all awnings.
- Turn the battery cut-off switch OFF.
- If applicable, disable auto-genstart feature.
- Batteries should be stored fully charged. Batteries stored in a discharged state will readily freeze.
- If possible, park the motorhome leaving the batteries accessible. A battery may be charged or changed without moving the motorhome.
- If available, leave the motorhome hooked to shore power. Leave the main battery disconnect switches ON.

- Careful placement of a small heat source in the interior will help control moisture. Desiccate filter systems will help remove interior moisture.
- If AC power is not available turn main battery disconnect switches OFF.
- If possible, store the motorhome inside a storage building.
- If stored outside, inspect all seams and seals for possible leakage.
- Store the motorhome with a full fuel tank to help against moisture condensing at top of fuel tank.
- Vents and windows should be closed to prevent wind driven rain entrance.
- Tires should be stored at maximum inflation pressure.
- A full interior inspection for water leaks should be made bi-monthly, inspecting behind all cabinet doors and drawers.

STORAGE - Long Term

Long term storage of the motorhome can be defined as leaving a motorhome unattended for a period of thirty days or more. A motorhome requires protection from the elements just as a house or a car would. When left out in the environment without proper storage or maintenance, a motorhome, house or car is vulnerable to the moisture and oxidation processes inherent in the environment.

There are preventative measures which should be taken and preferable situations to use when storing a motorhome. Such measures will aid in protecting and preventing a motorhome from the damaging effects caused by an accumulation of moisture.



NOTE: The natural process of moisture in the air condensing will occur with temperature changes of 30° F or more in one day. Humidity readings of 60% or greater will allow the accumulated moisture to remain for extended periods of time.

If the motorhome is stored in a location where AC power is not available:

- Turn off all the appliances.
- Turn the battery cut-off switch to the OFF position.
- If possible, situate the motorhome so the batteries remain accessible. This allows a battery to be charged or replaced without moving the motorhome.
- Charge the batteries to a full state of charge.
- Turn the main battery disconnects to OFF.
- When stored outside, use the available DC volt meters to make a quick reference check of the batteries while the motorhome is in storage. If the motorhome is stored outside solar panels may offset the parasitic loads.
- Preventative measures should be used if the voltage readings are low. When using preventative measures, taking the motorhome out of storage or moving the motorhome in case of an emergency is a much easier process.



**NOTE: Batteries in a low state of charge will readily freeze.
Freezing will damage the battery.**

If AC power is available:

Both main battery disconnect switches will remain ON. The inverter will charge both the house and engine battery banks. A 30 amp shore power service will be more than adequate.



CAUTION: A 20 amp service using light duty extension cords and the required adapters create serious voltage losses. Line voltage loss and the resistance at each electrical connection is a hazardous combination and should be avoided. Damage to sensitive electronic equipment may result!

Type of surface to park and store the motorhome on:

- The type of surface the motorhome is parked upon will affect how much moisture accumulation occurs on the chassis and flooring. Moisture can eventually seep into the interior.
- Parking the motorhome on a grass surface, with the tires supported by blocks, is a perfect situation for moisture to accumulate.
- A gravel covered parking area still allows moisture to evaporate from the ground, through the gravel and to the underside of the motorhome.
- Concrete pads seal the surface allowing better ventilation under the motorhome.
- Storage buildings with concrete floors or heated storage facilities greatly reduce the amount of moisture accumulation and protects the motorhome from moisture damage.

If the motorhome is stored outdoors:

- The interior should be heated to help prevent mold and mildew growth. Moisture removing desiccate filter systems are available from hardware and RV supply stores. Place the filter system inside the motorhome to reduce inside moisture condensation or humidity. These systems help control mold and mildew growth.
- Proper winterization of the fresh water system will prevent potential damage in extreme cold.
- Ultraviolet radiation affects soft goods and rubber products such as privacy curtains, window shades and tires. These items should be protected.
- Cardboard templates can be made for the windows to protect these items from exposure to direct sunlight.

- Tire covers are available to protect the sidewall of the tires from cracking. Make sure the tires contain the correct air pressure. Underinflated tires can be damaged.
- Washing the exterior regularly will help control moss accumulation. The clear coat has UV protective substances. Waxing the motorhome twice a year will augment these substances.

Inspect the motorhome:

- Perform a full interior inspection for water leaks every two weeks while the motorhome is in storage. Open all cabinet doors looking for signs of dampness or leaks. Inspect the ceiling areas around roof vents or other roof openings.
- The roof and sidewall seams should be inspected and cleaned at least twice a year. Inspect for exterior sealant gaps of all roof seams, vents, skylights, roof air conditioners and windows. If necessary, use the proper sealants and recommended application procedures.

Fuel:

A full tank of fuel will help moisture from condensing at the top of the tank. Diesel fuel is an organic material which will develop a microbe growth (black slime). Fuel stabilizers may be added to help prevent the microbe growth. Consult the Cummins manual or a Cummins distributor for further detailed information on fuel stabilizers and additives.

Brakes:

Brakes also suffer from non-use during periods of storage. The bare metal machined surfaces of brake drums or rotors have only a light coating of dust from the brake lining friction material. The brake dust is the only thing protecting the bare metal surfaces from rusting. Only regular brake applications dry the moisture preventing rust on brake drum or rotor surfaces. During periods of non-use, oxygen and moisture oxidize the machined surfaces. Only occasional use keeps these surfaces from oxidizing. Rusty brake drum or rotor surfaces permeate the brake linings upon the first few applications, reducing the friction action of the linings.

Engine:

Internal combustion engines need to be “exercised” on a regular basis. This will ensure that an adequate supply of lubricating oil coats the cylinder walls and piston rings. Valve and valve seat surfaces also suffer from non-use. Some valves will remain open depending at which part of the combustion cycle the engine has stopped. The heat and cold of the day allows moisture to accumulate through the exhaust system.

Electric Motors:

Electric motors in the motorhome should be operated occasionally to help lubricate and keep surfaces rotating freely. These items include the roof air conditioners, dash fans, dash blower motor, furnace or Aqua Hot motors, heat exchangers and powered roof vents.

- **Plumbing Lines** - Drain and protect by filling with approved RV antifreeze.
- **Fresh Water Tank** - Drain.
- **Body** - Clean and wax. Oil locks and hinges. Repair roof seams as needed.
- **Countertop and Cabinets** - Wash with mild soap and water.
- **Curtains** - Remove and clean according to care specifications.
- **Windows** - To protect the interior fabric from fading, cover windows by pulling blinds, closing shades or using a separate cover such as a sheet.
- **Holding Tank** - Drain and rinse. Close valves.

CHECKLIST
- *Winter Storage*



Add a small amount of antifreeze to keep valves and gaskets lubricated.

- **Drain Traps** - Pour RV antifreeze down all drains.
- **Refrigerator** - Clean and leave both doors propped open. Cover the exterior panels and roof vents.
- **Batteries** - Add distilled water and recharge if needed. Disconnect the cables. Remove the batteries and store them in a cool dry place. Check and recharge as needed. Never park the coach where the battery door cannot be opened.
- **Air Conditioner** - Remove the air filters. Clean or replace.
- **Roof** - Keep clear of snow accumulation or damage may occur.
- **Interior/Exterior** - Storing under cover or indoors helps extend interior and exterior life.
- **Fuel Tank** - Diesel fuel tank should be full of fuel.

If the motorhome was properly and carefully prepared for storage, removing it from storage will not be difficult. The following checklist pertains to items or areas which should be checked before operating or moving the motorhome. If the motorhome was not properly winterized, extensive freeze damage or other serious deterioration may have occurred. Consult a dealer or an authorized service center for advice.

STORAGE
- *Removal*

- Thoroughly inspect the outside of motorhome. Look for animal nests in the wheel wells or in other out of the way places.
- Remove all appliance flue vent covers, ceiling vent covers and air conditioning covers. Be sure the refrigerator openings are free of debris, insect nests, webs, etc.
- Open all doors and compartments. Check for animal or insect intrusion, water damage or other types of damage which may have occurred.
- Check the state of charge of the batteries. If necessary fill the cells with distilled water only and charge as necessary. Inspect the cable ends and terminals. They should be clean and free of corrosion.
- Check all the chassis fluid levels: engine oil, engine coolant, hydraulic fluid reservoir, transmission oil and rear axle oil.
- Start the engine, allowing it to reach operating temperature. Ensure the engine instruments are indicating proper readings.
- While the engine is running check the operation of headlights, tail-lights, turn signals, back-up lights, license plate light and emergency flasher. Operate the dash air conditioner. If the air conditioner does not work, or the compressor makes unusual noises, have the system checked by a qualified air conditioner technician.
- Shut the engine down. Adjust or add fluids as necessary. Inspect the engine for fluid leaks. Look under the motorhome for any other type of fluid leaks.
- Drain, sanitize and flush the fresh water system as outlined in the **Water Section**. Inspect the sewer drain hose and connections for leaks. Replace if necessary.
- Operate all faucets and fixtures in the fresh water system. Run a sufficient amount of fresh water through all the water lines and faucets to thoroughly purge any potable antifreeze from the fresh water system.



NOTE: Discard at least the first two trays of ice from the icemaker to ensure the ice does not contain traces of antifreeze or other contaminants.

- Open cabinet doors and drawers inspecting for water leaks at joints or fittings. Repair as necessary.
- Operate all 12 Volt lights and accessories. If something does not work there may be a bad 12 Volt circuit breaker or blown fuse.
- Install new batteries in battery operated safety detectors or devices. Test the carbon monoxide, LP-Gas and smoke detectors for proper operation.
- Check that the monitor panel is functioning properly.
- Inspect the 120 Volt electrical system which includes the power cord, inverter/converter all outlets and exposed wiring.

**NOTE: Prepare the generator for operation following the instructions in the Generator Manual.**

- Start and run the generator.
- Ensure the batteries are being charged. Operate the 120 Volt appliances and air conditioners. If an electrical item or appliance is not functioning properly, contact the dealer or an authorized service center to have it evaluated.
- Have a qualified technician inspect the LP-Gas system and perform an LP Gas leak test. The leak test should also include an LP-Gas regulator adjustment (if needed). The test can also verify if the regulator is faulty and should be replaced. Have the LP-Gas tank inspected.
- Operate each LP-Gas appliance. Observe all burner/pilot flames for proper color and size.
- Inspect and clean the interior.
- Check the sealant around all roof and body seams and windows. Reseal if necessary.
- Lubricate all the exterior locks, hinges and latches with a graphite lubricant.
- Check the windshield wiper blade condition. Check the wiper/washer operation.
- Wash and wax the exterior. Inspect the body for scratches or other damage; touch up or repair as necessary. Flush the underside thoroughly.
- Run through the operational checks for steering, brakes, engine and transmission. Operate the motorhome slowly during these checks to allow sufficient circulation of fluids and resetting of the components.
- If desired, have the dealer or repair center double check any preparation and correct any defects or make any necessary adjustments.

NOTES

KNIGHT

SECTION 4
APPLIANCES

INTRODUCTION • 101	WALL THERMOSTAT • 124
REFRIGERATOR • 101	AIR CONDITIONER - ROOF • 124
<i>Operation Specifics</i> • 102	<i>Operation</i> • 124
<i>Refrigerator Controls</i> • 102	FURNACE • 125
<i>Control Panel - Two Door</i> • 103	<i>Operation</i> • 125
<i>Control Panel - Four Door (Optional)</i> • 104	<i>Tips</i> • 126
<i>Ice Maker Operation (Optional)</i> • 105	<i>If Furnace Fails to Light</i> • 126
<i>Doors</i> • 105	WATER HEATER • 127
<i>Alarm</i> • 106	<i>Before Using the Water Heater</i> • 127
<i>Service</i> • 106	<i>Operation</i> • 128
<i>Cooling Unit Fans (Four Door Models)</i> • 106	<i>Water Heater Bypass System</i> • 129
<i>Storage</i> • 107	<i>Pressure - Temperature Relief Valve</i> • 129
MICROWAVE OVEN • 107	<i>Burner Compartment</i> • 130
<i>Operation</i> • 110	<i>Tips</i> • 130
MICROWAVE/CONVECTION OVEN (Optional) • 115	<i>Draining & Storage</i> • 131
<i>Microwave Cooking</i> • 117	<i>Troubleshooting</i> • 131
<i>Convection Cooking</i> • 118	WASHER/DRYER PREPARED • 131
<i>Tips</i> • 119	WASHER/DRYER (Optional) • 132
<i>Care & Cleaning</i> • 120	<i>Operating Instructions</i> • 133
COOKTOP RANGE/OVEN • 121	<i>Cleaning the Drain Screen</i> • 133
<i>Operation</i> • 121	<i>Cleaning the Washer/Dryer</i> • 134
<i>Lighting Top Burners</i> • 121	<i>Winterizing the Washer/Dryer</i> • 134
<i>Burner Grate</i> • 122	
<i>Lighting Oven Pilot</i> • 122	
<i>Tips</i> • 122	
<i>Cleaning & Maintenance</i> • 123	
COOKTOP RANGE (Optional) • 123	



This section covers operation and care of various appliances found in the motorhome. The motorhome is equipped with a refrigerator, cooktop range, microwave, furnace, water heater, roof air conditioner and several optional appliances. Many of these appliances operate on AC or DC current, LP-Gas or a combination of all three.

INTRODUCTION



Detailed information with CAUTION or WARNING instructions for the various appliances, other than what is found in this section, can be found in the manufacturer's manual.



WARNING: Before entering any type of refueling station make sure all LP-Gas operated appliances are off. Most LP-Gas appliances used in recreational vehicles are vented to the outside. When parked close to a gasoline pump it is possible for fuel vapors to enter this type of appliance and ignite, resulting in an explosion or fire. Carbon monoxide gas may cause nausea, fainting or death. Operating an LP-Gas appliance with inadequate ventilation or partial blockage of the flue can result in carbon monoxide poisoning. Do not store flammable liquids such as lighter fluid, gasoline or propane in the outside refrigerator compartment.

The refrigerator in the motorhome operates on a different principle than a standard household refrigerator. Knowing these differences should answer questions or solve problems that may arise. A standard household refrigerator uses a different type of refrigerant. In a household refrigerator, a compressor pumps refrigerant vapor into a condenser where the heat from the refrigerant dissipates and the vapors condense to a liquid. The liquid refrigerant pumps through a metered orifice or capillary tube at the evaporator. At this time, the refrigerant changes from liquid to a vapor. This change cools the evaporator. Air blows across the evaporator and into the interior of the refrigerator. This system is efficient as long as 120 Volts AC is available.

REFRIGERATOR

The motorhome refrigerator uses a combination of fluids and gas for refrigeration: ammonia, water, sodium chromate and hydrogen gas. The cooling unit is pressurized to approximately 350 psi. The chemicals are heated to a gaseous state, which rise to the top of the cooling unit into a condenser where it forms droplets as it cools. As the vapor condenses, it "extracts or absorbs" heat from inside the refrigerator. Using gravity, the droplets return through the absorber coils to the absorber vessel to start the process again. To ensure longevity and proper operation of the cooling unit follow the specific instructions for use and care. With proper care and maintenance, the refrigerator should provide years of trouble-free service.

Operation Specifics

- The refrigerator operates from LP-Gas or 120 Volts AC electric.
- DC Voltage must be no higher than 15.4 volts DC or lower than 10.5 volts DC.
- AC voltage must be no higher than 132 Volts AC or lower than 108 Volts AC.
- It is important to operate the refrigerator only when level. Level the refrigerator (from front view) within 3° side to side and 6° front to back. Using a torpedo or bulls eye (fence post) level. Place the level on the freezer plate. The level should be within the circle by a half of a bubble. Generally, this is within comfortable living conditions.



NOTE: Operating the refrigerator "off level" separates the chemicals that crystallize and block the circulation action of the cooling unit. Damage is cumulative and irreversible.



WARNING: Do not use the refrigerator if there is an ammonia smell inside or outside of the refrigerator, or if a yellowish substance appears inside or at the outside access compartment. This can be an indication of a refrigerant leak. Contact an authorized repair facility.



NOTE: To reduce the possibility of food spoilage, keep the interior box temperature at or below 54° F. The refrigerator will consume more energy to maintain low temperature, especially in hot, humid climates. Lower temperature may also lead to quicker frost build-up.

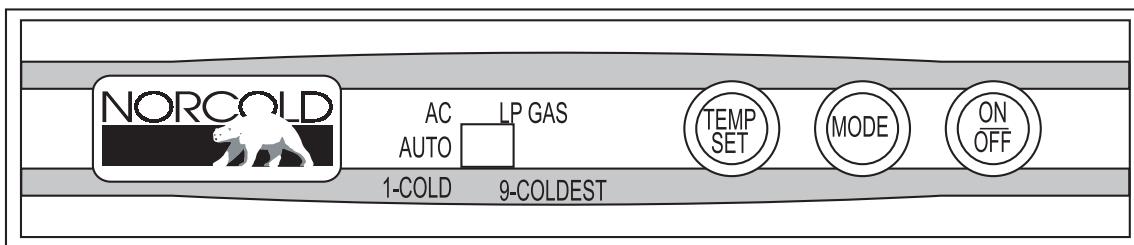
Refrigerator Controls

In order for the refrigerator to operate:

- The house batteries must be charged.
- The LP-Gas valve must be on.
- The water valve must be on (icemaker option only).
- The refrigerator AC cord plugged in (located in outside refrigerator access door).

If the controls do not light up check the house batteries charge status or see if the 12 Volt wires are plugged into the refrigerator's circuit board (outside in refrigerator access door).

Control Panel - Two Door



- **ON/OFF Button** - Turns the refrigerator on or off.
 - Push the **ON/OFF** button to start the refrigerator in Auto mode.
 - Push and hold the **ON/OFF** button for two seconds to shut it off.
- **TEMP SET Button** - Adjusts the temperature.
 - To adjust push and hold the **TEMP SET** button.
 - Number "9" is the coldest setting.
- **MODE Button** - Controls the operation mode of the refrigerator.
 - Push and hold the **MODE** button to select between Automatic AU, AC or LP operation.

Manual Mode:

When one of the two manual modes is selected:

1. **AC** = The refrigerator is operating on AC electric.
2. **LP** = The refrigerator is operating on LP-Gas.

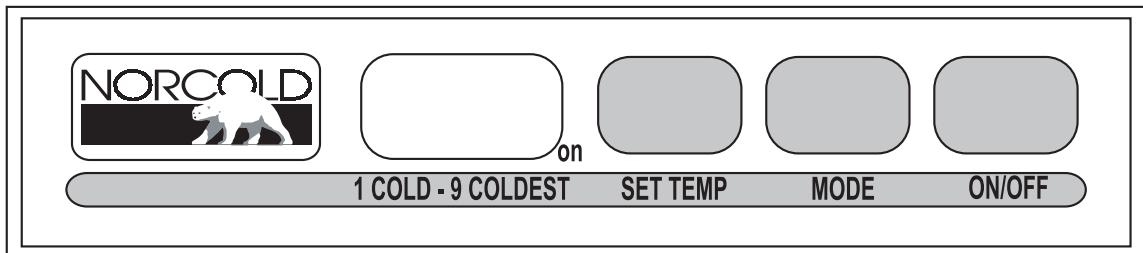
If the LP-Gas does not ignite within 30 seconds, the control changes to a different energy source or the gas safety valve closes and F displays. Turn the refrigerator off then back on. If the gas does not ignite after several attempts, consult your dealer or authorized Norcold service center.

Automatic Mode:

The refrigerator selects AC power over LP-Gas in Auto mode. The controls select the energy source in this sequence.

1. When 120 Volts AC is available "AU AC" flashes in the display. This indicates the refrigerator is operating on AC electric. After ten seconds, the "AU AC" goes off and only a power indicator remains.
2. If 120 Volts AC is not available, "AU LP" flashes in the display. This means the refrigerator is operating on LP-Gas.
3. After the refrigerator is operating, press the **TEMP SET** button and set the desired temperature.

**Control Panel -
Four Door
(Optional)**



The Refrigerator Control Panel requires 12 Volt DC to operate.

- **ON/OFF Button** - Turns the refrigerator on or off.
 - Push the **ON/OFF** button to start the refrigerator in Auto mode.
 - Push and hold the **ON/OFF** button for two seconds to shut it off.
- **LED Display** - This screen is used for mode, temperature and fault code display.
- **MODE Button** - Controls the operation mode of the refrigerator.
 - Push and hold the **MODE** button to select between Automatic AU, AC or LP operation.
- **TEMP SET Button** - Adjusts the temperature.
 - To adjust push and hold the **TEMP SET** button.
 - Number "9" is the coldest setting.

Manual Mode:

When one of the two manual modes is selected:

1. **AC** = The refrigerator is operating on AC electric.
2. **LP** = The refrigerator is operating on LP-Gas.

Automatic Mode:

This feature selects AC over LP-Gas operation. If AC discontinues the alarm sounds and the refrigerator switches to LP-Gas operation. If the refrigerator fails to light, the alarm sounds and a code displays.

- Press and hold the **MODE** button until **AUTO** displays, release the button.
- Press and hold the **TEMP SET** button until the desired temperature displays, release button.
- In **AUTO** mode, AC or LP will remain lit for 10 seconds or when a mode has changed.

If the LP-Gas does not ignite within 30 seconds, the control changes to a different energy source or the gas safety valve closes and F displays. Turn the refrigerator off then back on. If the gas does not ignite after several attempts consult your dealer or authorized Norcold service center.

Tips

- Cool items first, if possible, before putting them into the refrigerator.
- Keep the doors shut. Think about what you want before opening the doors.
- Allow the refrigerator 24 hours of operation before actual use to help it get a "head start" with the refrigeration process.
- A box of open baking soda will help absorb food odors.

The icemaker works from 120 Volts AC only. The icemaker functions only after the freezer temperature is low enough. City water or the water pump must be on and the valve for the water supply line to the icemaker must be on.

***Ice Maker
(Optional)***

- Pull the metal arm (bail) down to turn the icemaker on.
- Push the arm up to turn the icemaker off.



NOTE: If the icemaker is in operation while the motorhome is in motion, water may spill out of the ice tray. Raise the icemaker arm to stop ice production while in transit. Do not use the first one or two trays of ice if the refrigerator has been in storage. Ice cubes may have contaminates. Do not operate the icemaker without water pressure supplied to the refrigerator. This can cause damage to the ice maker assembly.

The refrigerator doors use a positive latch that secures the door with a "click" to prevent the door from opening while traveling. The doors use a heating element located in the flapper on the left door (four-door model) or in the door (two-door model). The heating element activates when operating the refrigerator in any mode to help prevent moisture accumulation in high humidity conditions.

Doors

When storing the motorhome, the refrigerator doors have a storage position that locks the doors partially open. This will help reduce odor from mold and bacteria. A completely sealed refrigerator in storage is a perfect environment for mold and bacteria to grow.

To use the storage feature, partially open doors and slide tab into the cut-out of the strike plate.

Alarm

The refrigerator uses an audible alarm that will sound for the following reasons:

1. DC or AC voltage is higher or lower than allowed.
2. Refrigerator is set to Auto and 120 Volts AC is discontinued.
3. The refrigerator fails to light on LP-Gas or fails to light after a period of operation.
4. Door is open longer than two minutes.
5. The circuit board detects a failure displaying a code.



NOTE: If the alarm sounds, note the code in the LED display and turn the refrigerator off to silence the alarm.



Refer to the manufacturer's manual for the list of codes and their meanings.



WARNING: Make sure all flames are extinguished and the LP-Gas valve is off before refueling. LP-Gas and gasoline are highly flammable which can ignite, resulting in an explosion, fire or death. Many states have passed laws regarding having the LP-Gas valve open while traveling. Know the laws for the particular state in which you are traveling.

Service

The LP-Gas function of the refrigerator and LP-Gas pressure will need servicing yearly, depending on use. Over time, the BTU rating of the flame can change, affecting the refrigerator's performance. Ambient temperature and humidity can also affect performance and function. The BTU rating lowers when operating on LP-Gas at an altitude higher than 5,500 feet. This affects the refrigerator's performance. If possible, switch mode operation to AC while at a higher altitude.

Cooling Unit Fans (Four Door Models)

The cooling unit is equipped with a pair of cooling fans to help pass air across the cooling unit. These fans start automatically and are audible when in operation.

- Turn the refrigerator off and remove all items. Leave the drip tray under the cooling fins.
- Shorten defrost time by using trays of warm water. Do not use a heating gun, hair dryer or sharp objects to remove frost as these can damage the interior or cooling unit.
- Wash the interior using mild spray cleansers or a solution of liquid dish detergent and warm water. Do not use scouring pads or abrasive cleansers as these can damage the interior finish.
- Rinse with a solution of baking soda and water. Dry with a clean cloth.
- Lock the doors open.

Storage

CAUTION: When defrosting, do not use a hot air blower. Permanent damage could result to plastic parts. Do not use a knife, ice pick or any other sharp instrument to remove ice from the freezer as they can puncture the system.

The microwave oven is operated from 120 Volt AC supplied by shore power, the generator or the inverter. Microwaves heat food using sound waves generated at a very high frequency (2,450 MHZ) to agitate the water molecules inside the item being heated. The higher the water content is to solids, the faster the response or the shorter the cooking time. Inside the microwave is a turntable that rotates when the microwave is operating to help heat food evenly. The turntable can be turned off if a baking dish or other large item is used. The microwave is designed to sit over a range or cooktop. When cooking from the cooktop, use the microwave's two speed ventilation fan. The fan draws air in from the bottom of the microwave, through a pair of grease filters, then discharges the filtered air out through a charcoal filter at the top. The ventilation fan is controlled by a thermostat and activates automatically from heat produced by the cooktop.

The microwave offers many different features. Some include varied cooking times with different power settings: automatic sensor cooking, a kitchen timer, metric to American conversion chart (which includes temperature and weight), on screen programming help, childproof lock-out and auto defrost cycles. The screen can display one of three different languages.

After placing the food in a suitable container, open the oven door and put it on the glass tray. The glass tray and roller guide must always be in place during cooking. Ensure the door is firmly closed before use.

- The oven light is only on when the microwave oven is operating.
- The oven door can be opened at any time during operation by touching the door release button on the control panel. The oven will automatically shut off.
- Each time a pad is touched a "beep" will sound to acknowledge the touch.
- The oven automatically cooks on full power unless set to a lower power level.

MICROWAVE OVEN

- The display will show “:0” when the oven is plugged in.
- The time clock returns to the present time when the cooking time ends. When the STOP/CLEAR pad is touched during the oven operation the oven stops cooking and all information is retained. To erase all information (except the present time) touch the STOP/CLEAR pad once more. If the oven door is opened during the oven operation all information is retained.
- If the START pad is touched and the oven does not operate check the area between the door and door seal for obstructions and make sure the door is closed securely. The oven will not start cooking until the door is completely closed or the program has been reset.

Microwave Tips:

- Turn the oven off before cleaning.
- Keep the inside of the oven clean. When food spatters or spilled liquids adhere to oven walls, wipe with a damp cloth. Mild detergent may be used if the oven gets dirty. The use of a harsh detergent or abrasive cleaner is not recommended.
- Clean the outside oven surface with soap and water. Wipe away any residue using a damp cloth. Dry with a soft cloth. To prevent damage to the operating parts inside the oven, do not allow water to seep into the ventilation openings.
- If the control panel becomes wet, clean with a soft, dry cloth. Do not use harsh detergents or abrasives on the control panel.
- If steam accumulates inside or around the outside of the oven door, wipe it away with a soft cloth. This may occur when the microwave oven is operated under high humidity conditions and in no way indicates a malfunction of the unit.
- It is occasionally necessary to remove the glass tray for cleaning. Wash the tray in warm sudsy water or in a dishwasher.
- The roller guide and oven cavity floor should be cleaned regularly to avoid excessive noise. Simply wipe the bottom surface of the oven with mild detergent water or window cleaner and then dry. The roller guide may be washed in mild sudsy water.



NOTE: The microwave is for food preparation only. Do not use the microwave to dry clothes, newspapers, shoes or other items.

Microwave Facts:

One of the most useful documents for the microwave is the operations manual, located in the owner's information file box. Read it carefully and keep it for reference. Another useful item is a microwave cookbook. Many will contain information about cooking principles, techniques, hints and recipes. Ensure food is in the microwave during operation to absorb the microwave energy. The magnetron, cycling on and off, may be heard for power levels less than 100%.

Condensation is a normal occurrence in microwave cooking. The moisture within foods and the room humidity will influence how much moisture condenses in the microwave. Covered foods will not usually produce as much condensation as foods that are not covered.

About Cooking:

- Food should be arranged with the thickest areas towards the outside of the dish.
- Monitor cooking times. Use the shortest amount of time required for cooking and add time as needed. For popcorn, follow product instructions and carefully monitor for the duration of popping time.
- Cover the food while cooking to prevent splatter and reduce condensation.
- Stir the food from the outside of the dish to the center, once or twice, between cooking.
- Turn food over during cooking to speed cooking times. Large food items should be turned at least once during cooking time.
- Use standing times to prevent overcooking. Covered food will continue to cook after it is removed from the microwave oven.
- Check for indications that the food is thoroughly cooked.
 - Food is steaming throughout, not just around the edges.
 - Poultry thigh joints come apart and move easily.
 - Meat or poultry is not pink in color.
 - Fish is opaque and flakes easily with a fork.
 - Center bottom of the dish is very hot to touch.

FOOD	DO	DO NOT
Eggs, Sausages, Fruits & Vegetables	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Puncture egg yolks before cooking to prevent bursting.• Pierce skins of potatoes, apples, squash, hot dogs & sausages to allow steam to escape.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Cook eggs in shells.• Reheat whole eggs.
Popcorn	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Use specially bagged popcorn for use in the microwave.• Remove popcorn when popping slows to 1 or 2 seconds in between pops. Use the POPCORN setting.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Pop popcorn in regular brown bags or glass bowls.• Exceed maximum time on popcorn package.
Baby Food	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Transfer baby food to small dish & heat carefully. Stir often. Check temperature before serving.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Heat disposable bottles• Heat rubber nipple.• Heat baby food in original jar.
General	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Cut filled baked goods after heating to release steam.• Stir liquids before and after heating to avoid boiling over.• Use deep bowls for cooking liquids or cereals to avoid boiling out of the container.	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Heat or cook in closed jars or air-tight containers.• Use for Canning. Cooking and heating may not destroy bacteria.• Deep fat fry.• Dry wood, gourds, herbs or wet paper.

A meat thermometer is the best way to ensure that the food is cooked. The meat thermometer should be inserted into the thickest part of the meat, away from bone or fat. Most food should range between 160° F to 180° F. Never leave the thermometer in during cooking as it can shatter.

Microwave Cooking Safety:

- Always use pot holder to prevent burns when handling utensils that are in contact with hot food. Enough heat can transfer from food through utensils to cause skin burns.
- Stay near microwave when cooking and check frequently during cooking to prevent overcooking.
- Never use the cavity as a storage area for cookbooks or other items.
- Avoid steam burns by directing steam away from face and hands.

Operation

The microwave oven operates from 120 Volt AC. This power is supplied by shore power, the generator or the optional inverter. The microwave oven has an output power of 950 watts with an oven capacity of 1.4 cubic feet. There are several features and options which makes for an ease of understanding and operating.



WARNING: If a fire flares up when using the cooktop turn off the ventilation fan. The fan may spread the flame. If the ventilation fan has started automatically from a heated cooktop it can not be manually turned off. Turn off the microwave AC circuit breaker to prevent the flame from getting up into the microwave and spreading the fire.



NOTE: When cooking with a microwave avoid using the inverter as the AC power source due to the high rate of battery consumption.



NOTE: The microwave is for food preparation only. Do not use the microwave to dry clothes, newspapers, shoes or other items.

Features Include:

- Interactive Cooking System
- Turntable ON/OFF Setting
- Custom Help
- Compucook
- Breakfast
- Snacks
- Reheat
- Work Light
- Nite Light

Custom Help:

This feature provides five separate options with specific instructions in the display area.

The Child Lock, Audible Signal Elimination, Auto Start, Language and Weight Selection are the features within the Custom Help.

Child Lock:

The microwave comes with a safety Child Lock feature. This feature prevents the oven from operating accidentally.

To use this feature:

- Press the **CUSTOM HELP** pad.
- Press the **1** pad.
- Press the **START/TOUCH ON**.
- **LOCK** will appear in the visual display area.

The oven is now locked. If any button is pressed the word **LOCK** appears on the screen. The fan and hood light is still operational with the Child Lock feature on.

To return the oven to normal operation:

- Press the **CUSTOM HELP** pad.
- Press the **STOP/CLEAR** pad. The oven will resume normal operation.

Audible Signal Elimination:

The microwave has the ability to eliminate the audible signal or beeps.

To use this feature:

- Press the **CUSTOM HELP** pad.
- Press the **2** pad.
- Press the **STOP/CLEAR**.

To return the oven to normal operation:

- Press the **CUSTOM HELP** pad.
- Press the **START/TOUCH ON** pad. The oven will resume normal operation.

Auto Start:

The oven can be set up to begin cooking automatically at a designated time.

To use this feature:

- Press the **CUSTOM HELP** pad.
- Press the **3** pad.
- Enter the designated start time.
- Press the **TIMER/CLOCK** pad.
- Enter the cooking time and power level.
- Press the **START/TOUCH ON** pad.



NOTE: Auto Start can be used for manual cooking, Breakfast, CompuCook, Popcorn or Snacks and Reheat only if the clock is set.



NOTE: Ensure clock is set before using the procedure. Ensure the food can be left in the oven until cook time begins.

Language and Weight Selection:

The oven has three languages and perspective weights which can be selected.

To use this feature:

- Press the **CUSTOM HELP** pad.
- Press the **4** pad until the desired language and weight is selected.
- Press the **START/TOUCH ON** pad.

Setting The Clock:

- Press the **STOP/CLEAR** pad.
- Press the **KITCHEN TIMER/CLOCK** pad.
- Press the **2** pad.
- Enter correct time in sequence using the number pads.
- Press the **KITCHEN TIMER/CLOCK** pad to begin time.



NOTE: The clock is a 12 hour clock only.

Press the STOP/CLEAR pad to:

- Erase, if you make a mistake during programming.
- Cancel the kitchen timer.
- Stop the oven temporarily during cooking.
(Press the **START/MINUTE PLUS** pad to resume.)
- Return the time of day to the display.
- Cancel a program during cooking (touch the pad twice).

Kitchen Timer:

- Press the **KITCHEN TIMER/CLOCK** pad.
- Press the **1** pad.
- Enter correct time in sequence using the number pads.
- Press the **START/TOUCH ON** pad.

Microwave - Timed Cooking:

The maximum amount of cooking time is 99 minutes and 99 seconds. Be sure to enter minutes and seconds. If seconds are not desired, enter 00.

Press the **START/TOUCH ON**. The microwave operates at 100% power unless the POWER LEVEL is selected.

One Minute Cook Times:

Press the **MINUTE PLUS** pad if one minute at full power is desired or to add one minute intervals to cooking time.

The **MINUTE PLUS** pad must be pressed within one minute of closing the door, or during selected cooking time. For safety, the **MINUTE PLUS** feature will lock out if there is no microwave activity within one minute of closing the door. Use the **START/TOUCH-ON** pad to reset the one minute safety period.

Microwave Cooking:

To use 100% power, enter cook time by pressing the number pads. Press the **START/TOUCH ON** pad to begin cook time. To use settings lower than 100% power, use the number pads to enter desired cooking time. Press the **POWER LEVEL** pad. Use the number pad to select desired power level. Press the **START/TOUCH ON** pad to begin cook time.

Turtable On/Off:

When cooking, the turntable should be left on. If a dish is used that will not rotate, turn the turntable OFF to prevent damage to the microwave.

To use the feature:

- Press **TURNTABLE ON/OFF** pad to stop or start the turntable.
- Enter the cook time; desired minutes and seconds.
- Enter power level desired.
- Press the **START/TOUCH-ON** pad.

Popcorn:

This feature is used when popping a standard 3.5 oz. bag of popcorn.

To use the feature:

- Press the **POPCORN** pad once.
- Press the **START/TOUCH ON** pad.

CompuCook:

CompuCook automatically computes the correct cooking time and power level for food item.

This feature can be used with the following procedures:

- Press the **CompuCook** pad. This will ask for the food number.
- Select the desired number for the food item.

1 for Baked Potatoes

2 for Fresh Vegetables

3 for Frozen Vegetables

4 for Rice

5 for Ground meat

- Press the number pad for the amount or weight to be cooked.

- Press the **START/TOUCH ON** pad.

Multiple Sequence Cooking:

If sequential cooking times with varied power levels are desired, press the **POWER LEVEL** pad and select the desired power level. Use the number pad to enter cook time for the first interval. Press the **POWER LEVEL** pad again, select the desired power level and enter the cook time for the next time period. Press the **START/TOUCH ON** pad to begin sequential cooking. The microwave can hold up to four sequential cook time periods. If full power is desired in any of the time periods, skip the power level step and 100% power is automatically selected.

Defrosting:

Defrosting can be done on manual time selection or using the microwave's CompuDefrost.

Manual Defrost:

Press the **POWER LEVEL** pad. Select number 3 for defrost power. Enter the desired defrost time. Be sure to stir or break food apart at regular intervals.

CompuDefrost:

The microwave has automated defrost programs for different foods and weights. Press the **CompuDefrost** pad to enter this mode. Press **CompuDefrost** again to select between ground meat, steak or chicken. Use number pads to enter weight of food being defrosted. Press **START/TOUCH ON** to begin defrost cycle.

Breakfast:

Breakfast automatically computes the correct cooking time and power level for food item.

This feature can be used with the following procedures:

- Press the **Breakfast** pad. This will ask for the food number.
- Select the desired number for the food item.

1 for Coffee/Tea

2 for Roll/Muffin Fresh

3 for Roll/Muffin Frozen

4 for Hot Cereal

5 for Scrambled Eggs

- Press the number pad for the amount or weight to be cooked.
- Press the **START/TOUCH ON** pad.

Snacks and Reheat:

The Snacks and Reheat automatically computes the correct cooking time and power level for food item.

This feature can be used with the following procedures:

- Press the **Breakfast** pad. This will ask for the food number.
- Select the desired number for the food item.

1 for Dinner Plate

2 for Pasta/Casserole

3 for Frozen Entree

4 for Frozen Snack - Microwave Pizza

5 for Pizza Slice

- Press the number pad for the amount or weight to be cooked.
- Press the **START/TOUCH ON** pad.

MICROWAVE/ CONVECTION OVEN (Optional)

The microwave/convection oven operates from 120 Volt AC supplied by shore power. The microwave oven has an power output of 850 watts and a convection heater output of 1,400 watts. The oven capacity is 1.1 cubit feet.

The microwave/convection oven has the ability to cook food with heat like an electric oven, or preheat the oven with heat and cook with microwaves. Other features include the ability to cook with microwaves and convection at the same time, sensor cooking and a built-in broiler. A brief overview of these features may aide in the operation of the microwave/convection oven.



NOTE: The microwave is for food preparation only. Do not use the microwave to dry clothes, newspaper, shoes or other items.

Safety Lock:

The microwave comes with a safety lock feature. This feature prevents the oven from operating accidentally. To use this feature:

- Press the **CUSTOM HELP** pad.
- Press the **1** pad.
- Press the **START/TOUCH-ON** pad.

The oven is now locked. If any button is pressed the word **LOCK** appears on the screen. The fan and hood light is still operational with the Safety Lock feature on. To return the oven to normal operation:

- Press the **CUSTOM HELP** pad.
- Press the **1** pad.
- Press the **START/TOUCH-ON** pad. The oven will resume normal operation.

Setting The Clock:

- Press the **STOP/CLEAR** pad.
- Press the **CLOCK** pad.
- Enter correct time in sequence using the number pads.
- Press the **CLOCK** pad to begin time.



NOTE: The clock is a 12 hour clock only.

Kitchen Timer:

- Press the **KITCHEN TIMER** pad.
- Using the number pads enter minutes and seconds, or 00 if no seconds.
- Press the **START/TOUCH-ON** pad to begin timer. Timer end will be signaled by one long beep.

Press the STOP/CLEAR pad to:

- Erase, if you make a mistake during programming.
- Cancel the kitchen timer.
- Stop the oven temporarily during cooking.
(Press the **START/TOUCH-ON** pad to resume).
- Return the time of day to the display.
- Cancel a program during cooking (touch the pad twice).

Turntable On/Off:

- Press **TURNTABLE ON/OFF** pad to stop or start the turntable.
- Enter the cook time desired minutes and seconds.
- Enter power level desired.
- Press the **START/TOUCH-ON** pad.

Hood Light:

To turn the hood light on or off touch the **LIGHT** button.

Ventilation Fan:

Press the **FAN HI/LO** button once for high, twice for low and three times for off.

Microwave - Timed Cooking:

The maximum amount of cooking time is 99 minutes and 99 seconds. Be sure to enter minutes and seconds. If seconds are not desired enter 00.



WARNING: If a fire flares up when using the cooktop turn off the ventilation fan. The fan may spread the flame. If the ventilation fan has started automatically from a heated cooktop it can not be manually turned off. Turn off the microwave AC circuit breaker to prevent the flame from getting up into the microwave and spreading the fire.



NOTE: When cooking in convection mode try to avoid using the inverter as the AC power source due to the high rate of battery consumption.

Press and hold the **START/TOUCH-ON**. The microwave pad operates at 100% power until the pad is released. This mode can be used for up to three minutes and up to three consecutive cycles.

Microwave Cooking

One Minute Cook Times:

Press the **MINUTE PLUS** pad if one minute at full power is desired or to add one minute intervals to cooking time. The **MINUTE PLUS** pad must be pressed within one minute of closing the door, or during selected cooking time. For safety the **MINUTE PLUS** feature will lockout if there is no microwave activity within one minute of closing the door. Use the **START/TOUCH-ON** pad to reset the one minute safety period.

Microwave Cooking:

To use 100% power, enter cook time by pressing the number pads. Press the **START/TOUCH-ON** pad to begin cook time. To use settings lower than 100% power, use the number pads to enter desired cooking time. Press the **POWER LEVEL** pad. Use the number pad to select desired power level. Press the **START/TOUCH-ON** pad to begin cook time.

Multiple Sequence Cooking:

If sequential cooking times with varied power levels are desired, press the **POWER LEVEL** pad and select desired power level. Use the number pad to enter cook time for the first interval. Press **POWER LEVEL** pad again, select desired power level, then enter cook time for the next time period. Press the **START/TOUCH-ON** pad to begin sequential cooking. The microwave can hold up to four sequential cook time periods. If full power is desired in any of the time periods, skip the power level step and 100% power is automatically selected.

Keep Warm:

Press the **KEEP WARM** pad during cooking time to automatically keep food warm for up to 30 minutes after cooking time has expired. To use this feature after cooking time has expired or after the food has been removed, place the food back into oven and press the **KEEP WARM** pad.

Defrosting:

Defrosting can be done on manual time selection or use the microwave's CompuDefrost.

Manual Defrost:

Press the **POWER LEVEL** pad. Select number 3 for defrost power. Enter desired defrost time. Be sure to stir or break food apart at regular intervals.

CompuDefrost:

The microwave has automated defrost programs for different foods and weights. Press the **CompuDefrost** pad to enter this mode. Press **CompuDefrost** again to select between ground meat, steak or chicken. Use number pads to enter weight of food being defrosted. Press **START/TOUCH-ON** to begin defrost cycle.

Sensor Cooking:

The microwave has electronic sensors that sense moisture or humidity given off by the food during the cooking process. Electronic sensors will be affected if room temperature exceeds 95° F. To adjust the sensor cooking mode to allow for more or less cooking time, press the **SENSOR COOK** pad. Press the **POWER LEVEL** pad once to increase cooking time or twice to decrease cook time.

To use the sensor cooking mode, press the **SENSOR COOK** pad. Select the number or food desired from the library listed adjacent to the **SENSOR COOK** pad. Press the **START/TOUCH-ON** pad to begin sensor cooking.

Convection Cooking

The interior of the microwave produces heat just as in a regular oven. The convection cooking mode has special options such as a broil mode, the ability to preheat oven by convection and use of microwaves to complete cooking or to preheat.



NOTE: When using the convection oven feature, leave the turntable in place and do not restrict the rotation. This can damage the microwave.

Cooking with Convection:

Press the **CONVEC** pad. Press the numbered pad with the desired cooking temperature. Press the numbered pads for desired cooking time. Press the **START/TOUCH-ON** pad to begin convection cooking.

Manual Broiling:

The Manual Broiling temperature is automatically preset to 450° F. Only the cooking time can be adjusted.

To use the broiler, press the **BROIL** pad. Enter amount of cooking time. Press the **START/TOUCH-ON** pad to begin preheating the oven. Four beeps will signal the end of the preheat cycle. Food can now be placed into the oven.

CompuBroil:

The CompuBroil cooking method has programs preset for common foods like hamburgers, steaks, chicken and fish. Temperature and time are preset depending on the food quantity. The amount of cooking time can be adjusted to fit particular needs. The **POWER LEVEL** pad will vary the preset cooking time. **Press once for more time and twice for less time.**

To use the **CompuBroil** feature: Press the **CompuBroil** pad and select the food number from the food library next to the CompuBroil pad. Enter the number of pieces being broiled. Press the **START/TOUCH-ON** pad to begin the preheat cycle. A series of four beeps signal the end of preheat cycle.

Automatic Mix Cooking:

This method combines both the convection oven and microwave at the same time. The microwave uses 30% power on **HIGH/MIX** and 10% power on **LO/MIX** while in this mode. The convection temperature can be changed from 100° F to 450° F. The default convection temperature is 325° F for both **HIGH/ MIX** and **LO/MIX**.

To use this feature: Select either **HIGH/MIX** or **LOW/MIX** and use the number pads to enter cooking time. Press the **START/TOUCH-ON** pad to begin the mixed cooking cycle.

CompuRoast or CompuBake:

These features can be used for food items ranging from pastries and cakes to roasts, chicken and pork. The temperature is preset for both functions. Only the cook times can be tailored for individual preference by entering into either the **CompuRoast** or the **CompuBake** mode. Press the **POWER LEVEL** pad once for more cooking time and twice for less cooking time.

To use either function: Press the desired pad, enter the food type from list next to the mode used and enter the food type being cooked by using the number pad.

To use **CompuBake**: Press the **START/TOUCH-ON** pad to begin the preheat cycle.

To use **CompuRoast**: Enter the weight of item using the number pads. Press the **START/TOUCH-ON** pad to begin the preheat cycle. Four beeps will signal the end of the preheat cycle and the oven is now ready.

- Check the type of cookware being used to see if it is microwave or oven safe depending on the type of cooking being done.
- Gold paint or glaze may contain a trace amount of gold which is electrically conductive and not compatible for microwave. Hand-painted china commonly contains traces of metal.

Tips

- To test utensil for microwave compatibility place it in the microwave with an 8 oz. plastic cup of water. Set the microwave at full power for one minute. Carefully feel the utensil. The entire utensil should be cool to the touch.
- Cover food with a paper towel or upside-down plate to help keep food spattering to a minimum. Place a paper towel on the turntable to keep clean-up at a minimum. Use paper towels with microwave use only.
- Clean all spills or spatters before they dry.
- Food odors may linger inside oven. To help eliminate odors, combine the juice and the peel from one lemon, several whole cloves and 8 oz. of water into a two cup bowl. Place in oven on high power, bring to a boil for several minutes. Let cool in the oven for several minutes.
- Some food wrappers may be foil lined. Check the wrapping carefully before cooking or heating. A small amount of foil is acceptable if it is not wrinkled or near the sides of the microwave.
- If the microwave screen is not lit, plug another electrical appliance into the same outlet the microwave was plugged in to verify AC power is present. If the test item works, contact an appliance repair facility to have the microwave checked.

Care & Cleaning

The exterior of the microwave is plastic and metal. The interior is metal. Do not use scouring pads, harsh or abrasive cleanser, chemical cleaners or petroleum based thinners as these can damage the finish. Use mild soap and water with a damp cloth or paper towel to remove most stains or spills. When cleaning the touch pad open the door to prevent accidental operation. Use mild soap and water with a soft cloth. Avoid using excess amounts of water on the touch pad. The turntable plate and oven racks are dishwasher safe.

Grease Filters:

Do not operate the oven without the grease filters in place. This can damage the microwave. Grease filters should be cleaned at least once a month. To remove the filters, use the pull tab to slide the filter to the end of the opening and tip down. Soak the filters in the sink or in a dishpan filled with hot water and detergent.

- Do not use ammonia or other alkali based products. They may darken the filter material.
- Agitate the filter. Use a scrub brush to remove caked on grease.
- Rinse the filter thoroughly and shake it dry. Place the filter back into the opening, tip it upward and slide it to the end of the opening. Lock it in place. Be careful not to kink or warp the filter upon installation.

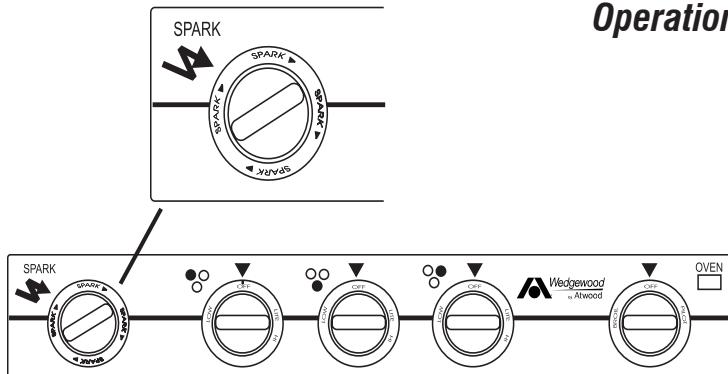
The cooktop uses LP-Gas only as a fuel source. The burners use a piezo type igniter. The cooktop should be used for cooking purposes only and not as a heating source. When the burner valve is opened the fuel source flows through the valve into the mixture tube. The fuel passes by a hole or venturi in the mixture tube, which draws air in with the fuel for a proper fuel/air ratio. The flame should have a blue appearance with a lighter blue defined flame at the burner head. A yellow flame or yellow tips indicate a rich fuel mixture, which can leave a black color or carbon on the bottom of a pot or pan.

COOKTOP RANGE/OVEN

The cooktop will operate when the following conditions have been met:

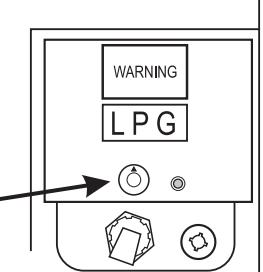
1. The LP-Gas valve on the LP tank is open.
2. Turn on the outside LP-Gas switch.
3. The house battery cut-off switch is ON.

To use the cooktop open the desired burner valve and rotate the igniter knob, clockwise, at the left hand side of the stove.



Before cooking on the range top the cover must be in full upright and folded position. Push the cover toward the outside wall to prevent it from falling onto the range top during cooking.

- Never close the cover while the burners are in use.
- Do not use the cover as a griddle.
- The oven may be used with the cover down.
- The bi-fold cover must always be closed when the motorhome is in transit.



WARNING: Do not heat motorhome interior with the range or oven. Gas combustion consumes oxygen inside the motorhome. Carbon Monoxide is an odorless, colorless and highly poisonous gas.

- Turn the appropriate burner knob counterclockwise to ON or **LITE**. Do not attempt to light more than one burner at a time.
- Turn the **SPARK** knob clockwise one click. If the burner fails to light, continue turning the **SPARK** knob clockwise until the burner lights.
- Turn the burner knob clockwise to OFF.

Lighting Top Burners

WARNING: Top cover must be open when the cooking surface is in operation. Do not cover the oven vent openings while the oven is in operation.

Burner Grate

The burner grate is attached to the cooktop cover by two spring clips located on the underside of the cooktop cover. The burner grate can be separated from the cooktop cover for cleaning purposes. Place a towel down onto the countertop next to the cooktop. Lift the cooktop cover up by the front corners, just high enough to clear the top of the burners. Pull the cooktop cover toward the front of the cooktop and lift it away. Place the cooktop cover upside down onto the towel. Squeeze both of the grate spring clips to remove the grate from cooktop cover.



WARNING: If you smell gas, extinguish all open flames and turn off the main gas supply. Liquid propane is highly volatile, highly explosive and extremely dangerous. Explosion, fire, property damage, injury or death can result. Propane is a "heavy" gas and will lay on the floor and "hide" in corners. Open all windows and doors. Do not touch any electrical switches. They may cause a spark which can ignite. Contact a qualified service center to have the problem correctly diagnosed and repaired before resuming operation.

Lighting Oven Pilot

- Push in the oven control knob and rotate counterclockwise to **PILOT ON**.
- Light the oven pilot located near the back of the oven, under the broiler shelf and to the left of the oven burner.
- Set the oven control knob to **Pilot ON** to maintain pilot flame. The oven and broiler are now ready for operation. The oven pilot has been factory set and requires no further adjustment.
- To extinguish the oven pilot push in the oven control knob and rotate clockwise to **OFF**.



WARNING: Extinguish all pilots when refueling or traveling. Do not block vents in oven with cookware or other objects.

Tips

1. A yellow flame is an indication of incorrect fuel/air ratio. Lowered BTU output and carbon build up can occur.
2. When cooking at an altitude above 5,000 feet the flame may change appearance and the flame BTU output will be lowered. Allow extra cooking time.
3. Do not allow the tips of the flame to extend beyond pan or pot edge. When this occurs heat is wasted and possibility of injury increases.
4. Remove the cooktop cover to help keep the underside of the cooktop clean. Place strips of aluminum foil on the cooktop floor pan and under burners. Do not restrict air flow of mixture tubes.
5. Pre-heat the oven for 10 minutes prior to use.

- Clean all surfaces as soon as possible after boil overs or spillovers.
- Use warm soapy water to clean the burner grates, cooktops, painted surfaces, porcelain surfaces, stainless steel surfaces and plastic items on your range or cooktop. Grit or acid-type cleaners may ruin the surface.
- Use only non-abrasive plastic scrubbing pads.
- Do not allow foods containing acids (such as lemon or tomato juice, or vinegar) to remain on porcelain or painted surfaces. Acids may remove the glossy finish. Wipe up egg spills when cooktop is cool.
- Allow porcelain surfaces to cool before cleaning. Burns from the heated surface may occur or the cooktop porcelain can crack.

Cleaning & Maintenance

Regular cleaning with a soft cloth and a warm detergent solution is generally enough to keep the cooktop clean. Wash, rinse and dry with a soft cloth. Thoroughly clean the cooktop when it is cool. Use a dry cloth or paper towel while the surface is warm to the touch to clean splatters or spills.

Cleaning will be more difficult if spills bake on to the surface. Glass cleaner sprayed on a paper towel should be used for the cooktop surface. Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the surface. DO NOT use abrasive cleaners or steel wool. Harsh cleansers like bleach, ammonia and oven cleaner should NEVER be used. The surface burner grate and caps should be cleaned using the same guidelines as the cooktop surface.

Porcelain Enamel:

Porcelain enamel is a type of glass fused on steel at a very high temperature. It is not extremely delicate but must be treated as glass. Sharp blows, radical surface temperature changes, etc., will cause enamel to chip or crack. Some foods such as vinegar, lemon juice, tomatoes and milk contain acids which can dull the finish of the enamel. To avoid dulling the finish, wipe up the spill before it is baked on. The surface is glass and must be given consideration when cleaning. Steel wool and coarse, gritty cleanser will scratch or mar the surface. Any gentle kitchen cleanser powder or grease cleaner will be suitable. For further information on care and maintenance of the porcelain, call *"Hopes Cultured Marble Polish"* at 800-325-4026.

The optional cooktop range is operated and maintained the same as the range oven without the oven. This option allows for a wider variety in floor plans and provides more storage space.

COOKTOP RANGE (Optional)

WALL THERMOSTAT

The wall thermostat operates the HVAC (heating, ventilating and air conditioning) system. The thermostat, located in the living room, operates the front roof air conditioner functions as well as the LP-Gas furnace. The thermostat located in the bedroom controls the rear air conditioner functions and (if equipped) the bedroom furnace.

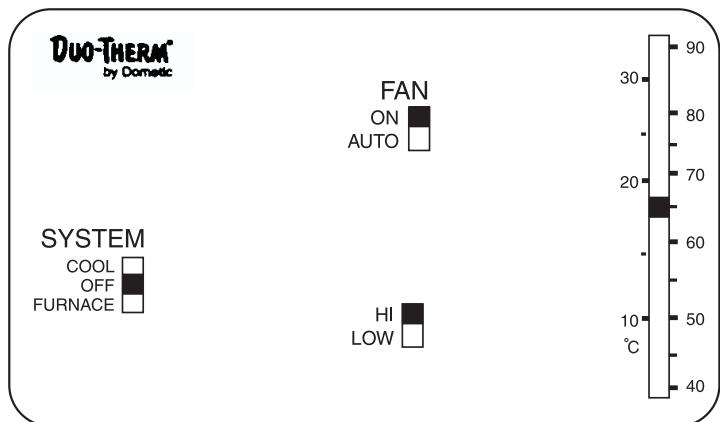
AIR CONDITIONER - ROOF

The roof air conditioners operate from 120 Volts AC only. Operation is controlled by a 12 Volt DC wall thermostat. The electronics in the wall thermostat send a signal to the roof air conditioner's circuit board. The circuit board controls the desired roof air conditioner functions. The refrigeration process in the roof air conditioner is primarily the same as the dash air conditioning or a household type refrigerator. It functions as an enclosed system. The refrigeration process repeats in a cycle. The refrigerant is drawn into the compressor where it is heated from compression. The high pressure vapor is sent to a condenser where the heat is expelled into the atmosphere. The vapor leaves the condenser as a high pressure liquid. This liquid is forced into a metered capillary tube and then into the evaporator or low side pressure. The refrigerant changes from liquid form to a vapor as the heat is extracted. The vapor is drawn back into the compressor to start the cycle again.



NOTE: Air conditioning systems will freeze the moisture in the air depending on the humidity content. Under high humidity conditions it is recommended to leave the HIGH/LOW switch to the HIGH position.

Operation



The roof air conditioner will operate only when the following needs have been met:

- 120 Volts AC from either shore power or the generator is supplied.
- The battery cut-off switch is in the ON position and house batteries are charged.

Thermostat Operation:

The thermostat operates the roof air conditioner and the furnace.

Roof Air Operations:

- **FAN ONLY** - Move the **FAN** switch to the **ON** position. Use the **HIGH** or **LOW** switch to set desired fan speed. Set the thermostat to desired temperature.
- **COOL** - Move the **SYSTEM** switch to **COOL**. Move the **FAN** switch to **ON**. Set the thermostat to the desired temperature. Use the **HIGH** or **LOW** switch to set desired fan speed.



NOTE: If the motorhome is equipped with the optional second roof air conditioner for the bedroom the thermostat operation is the same. The SYSTEM FURNACE position operates a bedroom furnace (if equipped).

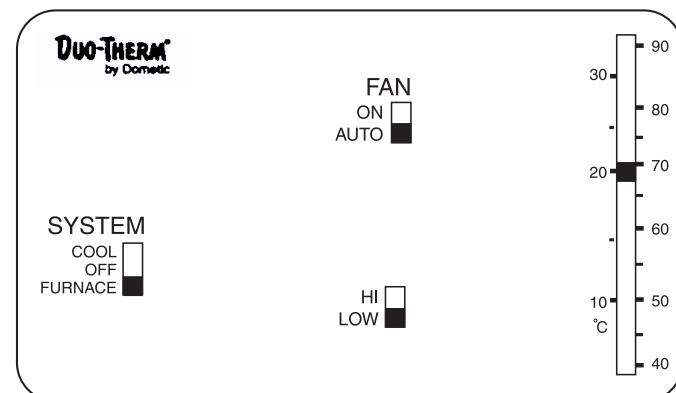
The furnace and its related components are 12 Volt DC operated, using LP-Gas as the fuel source. Electronic circuitry (automatic ignition) is used to ignite the burner. The furnace uses outside air for the burner combustion and exhaust is expelled through the outside vent. Inside air is drawn into the furnace and blown across the internal heat exchanger. Heated air is then discharged through ducted hoses which can be run throughout the motorhome.

FURNACE

The furnace operates in the following manner: The wall thermostat sends a signal to the front roof air conditioner circuit board, which closes a relay. Closing a relay sends an electrical signal to the furnace to begin the ignition cycle. There is a small time delay before the blower motor begins. When the blower motor attains a predetermined speed it will close the air prover or sail switch. The sail switch sends the electrical signal through a high temperature protection switch, then to the automatic ignition circuit board. After the thermostat is satisfied, the gas valve closes and extinguishes the burner. The blower motor stops about two or three minutes after cool down.

Operation**The furnace will operate when the following conditions have been met:**

1. The LP-Gas valve on the LP tank is open and the LP-Gas valve at the furnace is on.
2. The house batteries in the motorhome are charged.
3. The battery cut-off switch at the entry door is in the **ON** position.



Using the Furnace:

1. Set the **SYSTEM** switch to **FURNACE**.
2. Set the **FAN** switch to **AUTO**.
3. Set desired temperature.



WARNING: IF YOU SMELL GAS extinguish all open flames and turn off the main gas supply. Liquid propane is a highly volatile, extremely dangerous gas. It can explode or ignite, which may result in property damage, injury or death. Propane is "heavy" and can "float" on the floor or "hide" in corners. Open all windows and doors. Do not touch electrical switches. They may spark, which can ignite. Keep all open flames, spark producing devices and smoking material out of the area. Contact a qualified service center to have the problem correctly diagnosed and repaired before resuming operation.



CAUTION: Do not store any items or materials in the furnace area. Restricted air flow may hamper furnace operation leading to failure and/or fire hazard.



NOTE: The automatic ignition circuit board will attempt to light the burner three times before the ignition board will go into "lock-out." If the burner does not light the furnace blower motor will continue to run and the wall thermostat will have to be cycled off.



NOTE: When washing the exterior of the motorhome, avoid a direct stream of water into the outside furnace vents. This can damage the furnace.

Tips

- After the motorhome has been removed from storage, operation of the furnace may produce a musty smell during the first couple of cycles.
- Operating the furnace at an altitude above 5,000 feet reduces the BTU output due to air/fuel ratio.
- The furnace will periodically need to be serviced by a qualified technician. If the furnace exhibits unusual symptoms or noises, or has an unusual odor when operating, have the furnace checked or serviced.

If the Furnace Fails to Light

- Make sure the LP-Gas supply valve is open.
- Make sure the battery cut-off switch at the entry door is ON.
- The furnace will not light if the blower motor is not spinning to its specified speed. This may be due to a low house battery charge condition. Hook-up to shore power and start the generator or main engine to charge the batteries.

- If the blower motor does not spin and the necessary power requirements have been met, use a screwdriver or coin to open the furnace access panel outside of the motorhome. Make sure the **ON/OFF** switch is **ON** and the circuit breaker is pushed **IN**.



WARNING: If you smell gas and the blower motor is spinning, do not attempt additional furnace operation. This may result in an explosion, fire or personal injury. Contact a qualified technician.

The water heater will heat water using two different methods: (1) 120 Volt AC, supplied either by shore power or the on board generator, or (2) LP-Gas. The 120 Volt AC uses a heating element similar to that of a water heater typically found in a house. The 120 Volt AC method is efficient if shore power is available. The LP-Gas incorporates the use of an automatic ignition circuit board operated by 12 Volt DC. Two thermostats control water temperature: One for the 120 Volt and the other for the LP-Gas. The manufacturer presets the water temperature. Water is pumped into the bottom of the water heater tank where it is heated and discharged out of the top upon use. For easy winterizing, the water heater is equipped with a temperature and pressure safety relief valve, a by-pass valve and drain plug. The water heater uses an aluminum clad tank. An anode is not necessary



NOTE: Do not operate the water heater by either function without water in the water heater tank. Damage to the thermostats and electric heating element can occur.

Before using the water heater, purge all trapped air from the water system. To purge the air and pressurize the system:

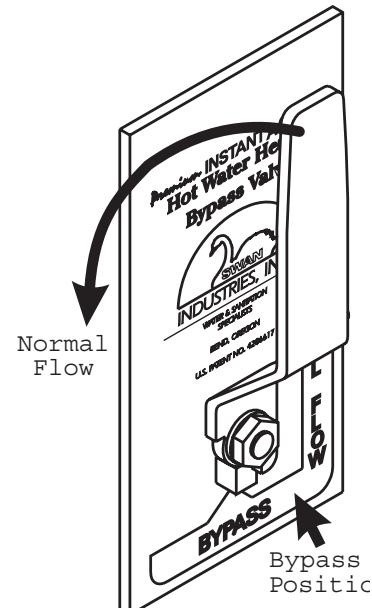
- Turn the water heater **Bypass Valve** to **Normal Flow**.
- Turn on the water pump or hook up to city water.
- After the system pressurizes, inspect the water heater for water leaks.
- Turn on the hot and cold valves for each water faucet, one at a time. Operate each faucet inside and outside of the motorhome. Run each faucet until a steady stream of water with no air bubbles or air pockets is present. Do not operate the water heater until the water system is purged of air.



WARNING: IF YOU SMELL GAS extinguish all open flames and turn off the main gas supply. Liquid propane is highly volatile, highly explosive and extremely dangerous. Explosion, fire, property damage, injury or death can result. Propane is a "heavy" gas and will lay on the floor and "hide" in corners. Open all windows and doors. Do not touch any electrical switches. They may cause a spark that can ignite. Evacuate the motorhome and shut off the LP valve. Contact a qualified service center to have the problem correctly diagnosed and repaired before resuming operation.

WATER HEATER

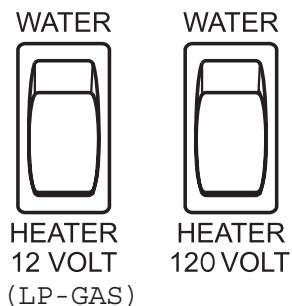
Before Using the Water Heater



Bypass valve is shown in bypass position.

Operation

DSI  FAULT



Water Heater Operation:

- Turn on the battery cut-off switch at the entry door.
- 120 Volt AC is supplied from shore power or the generator.
- The house batteries are charged.
- The LP-Gas valve on the LP tank is open.
- The outside LP-Gas switch is on.

Heating Water with 120 Volt AC:

- Have either shore power or the generator supplying AC voltage.
- Turn on the water heater switch located at the system monitor panel.
- Both gas and electric functions may be on at the same time. This will speed up the process of heating water for large volume use.

Heating Water with LP-Gas:

- Make sure the LP-Gas is turned on.
- Turn on the LP-Gas water heater switch on the system monitor panel. The water heater will make an audible "roar" from the burner when ignited.
- The indicator light will illuminate briefly then go out when the water heater is lit. The indicator light will glow steady when the ignition cycle has gone into "lock-out."



CAUTION: It is recommended not to operate the water heater on LP-Gas while the motorhome is in transit. Be sure the water heater is off before refueling.



NOTE: The automatic ignition circuit board will make one attempt to light the burner. If the burner does not light the ignition circuit board will go into "lock-out." Cycling the on/off switch will reset the ignition board.

Ignition Module:

The LP-Gas on/off switch controls the ignition circuit to the water heater.

The indicator lamp illuminates:

- Upon initial start up the lamp illuminates briefly, ignition occurs, the lamp goes out.
- If the burner does not light within 6-9 seconds the ignition board will lockout and the indicator lamp glows steady.

The next portion of the operation is controlled by the direct spark ignition (DSI) system, as power is applied to the DSI board. The system will do the following:

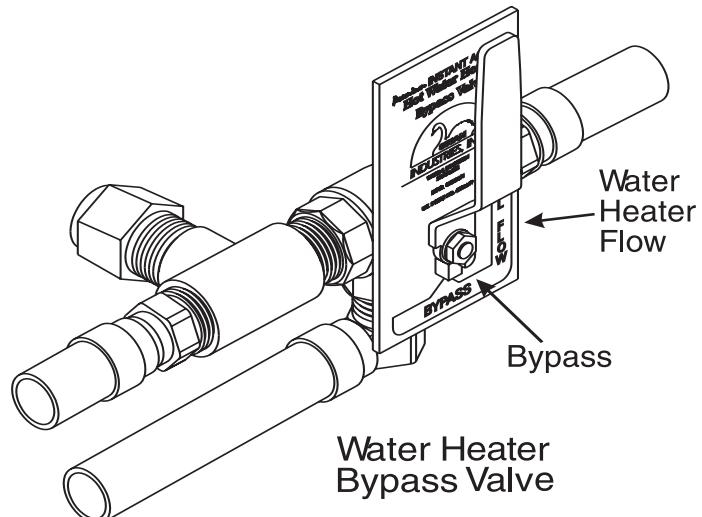
1. The board has a timing circuit, which allows 6-9 seconds for ignition to occur.
2. Initially the board supplies current to the gas valve. At the same time, it produces a high-voltage current supply to the electrode to produce a spark at the burner.
3. The board will also confirm the presence of a flame.

If the flame is not sensed within six to nine seconds, the module board will go into lockout. Flame sensing is through the spark wire.

The Thermostat-Limit controls the power to the module board. At 130° F, the thermostat will open shutting off the burner. If the thermostat fails, the safety High Temperature limit switch will open, and requires manually resetting.

The bypass valve is located on the back of the water heater. Turning the valve to BYPASS diverts water away from the water heater. Place the valve in the BYPASS when winterizing. Bypassing the water heater prevents water or antifreeze from entering the water heater. For normal operation, turn valve so that handle points to NORMAL FLOW.

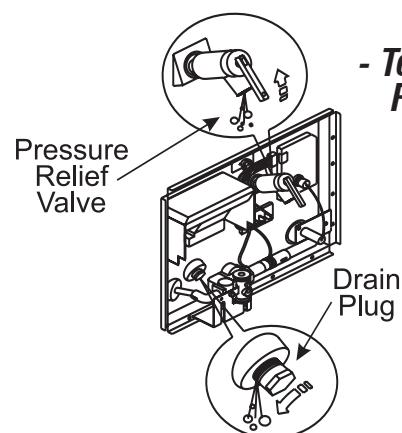
Water Heater Bypass System



Shown in the bypass position.

The water heater is equipped with a Pressure-Temperature relief valve. The water heater may discharge at the Pressure-Temperature relief valve during the heating cycle, due to thermal expansion of water. The Pressure-Temperature relief valve is designed to open if the water temperature in the tank reaches 210° F (98.8° C), or if internal pressure reaches 150 psi. A small discharge is normal and is not necessarily a faulty valve. The water heater has an internal air pocket to reduce the possibility of dripping or weeping.

Pressure - Temperature Relief Valve



Eventually, the expansion of the water will absorb the air pocket. When this occurs, the air pocket will have to be replaced utilizing the following procedure.



CAUTION: Ensure the water heater tank is cool prior to making any check of the valve.

Re-establishing the Air Pocket:

- Step 1:** Turn OFF the water heater.
- Step 2:** Shut OFF the incoming water supply.
- Step 3:** Open the hot water line closest to the water heater.
- Step 4:** Pull the handle of the relief valve until the flow of water stops.
- Step 5:** Close the relief valve allowing it to snap shut. Close the hot faucet and turn ON the water supply.
- Step 6:** Turn ON the water heater.

The air pocket is re-established and the process does not need to be repeated until the next discharge of water from the T & P valve. If the discharge does not stop, contact a qualified service center to evaluate the valve and make any required repairs.

Burner Compartment

Periodically check the outside service compartment and screen (in the door) for foreign material the can accumulate preventing the flow of combustion and ventilating air.

Tips

- To conserve LP-Gas, turn off the water heater when not in use.
- When using the shower, conserve energy and hot water by shutting the shower water off when not in use.
- Use caution when adapted to 30 Amp shore service, or anything less than 50 Amps. When the water heater element is in operation it will use approximately 12 Amps. Appliances may need to be operated in sequence to avoid tripping a breaker.

The temperature and pressure (T & P) safety relief valve on the outside of the water heater is set to open at 210° F or 150 psi. When water temperature and pressure reach these settings the valve may drip until the pressure has dropped. Avoid opening the T & P valve manually as it may continue to leak. The valves can be purchased from most hardware stores.



WARNING: Before beginning any service or work on the water heater make sure the LP-Gas is turned off, the 120 Volt AC source has been disconnected and the 12 Volt DC source has been disconnected. Failure to do so can result in explosion, fire or injury.

If the motorhome is to be stored for a long period, or during the winter months, drain the water heater to prevent freeze damage.

Draining & Storage

1. Turn off the electrical power to the water heater.
2. Shut off the LP Gas supply to the water heater.
3. Open low point drains.
4. Open both Hot and Cold on all faucets.
5. Turn the Bypass lever to **BYPASS**.



NOTE: Be sure to refill the water heater with water before resuming operation.

- If water heater fails to light check the outside burner tube for obstructions. Spiders may make nests in the burner tube.
- If the indicator light on the monitor panel does not light and the water heater does not light, ensure the battery cut-off switch at the entry door is on or check for a blown fuse in the house distribution panel.

Troubleshooting

If the motorhome was not ordered with an optional washer/dryer, it may have a washer/dryer preparation package installed from the factory. The washer/dryer “prep” package includes the following items:

1. Color coded water supply lines. A red line for hot; a blue line for cold.
2. An 1½ in. waste water drain line with threaded cap, p-trap, and an automatic vent cap. This will drain the waste water into the grey water holding tank.
3. A 120 Volt receptacle located in the compartment.

WASHER/DRYER PREPARED*

**Not Available on the 30 and 32 foot model units.*



NOTE: Sidewall dryer vents are not part of the prep package. If a sidewall vent is to be installed be sure to properly seal vent to sidewall.

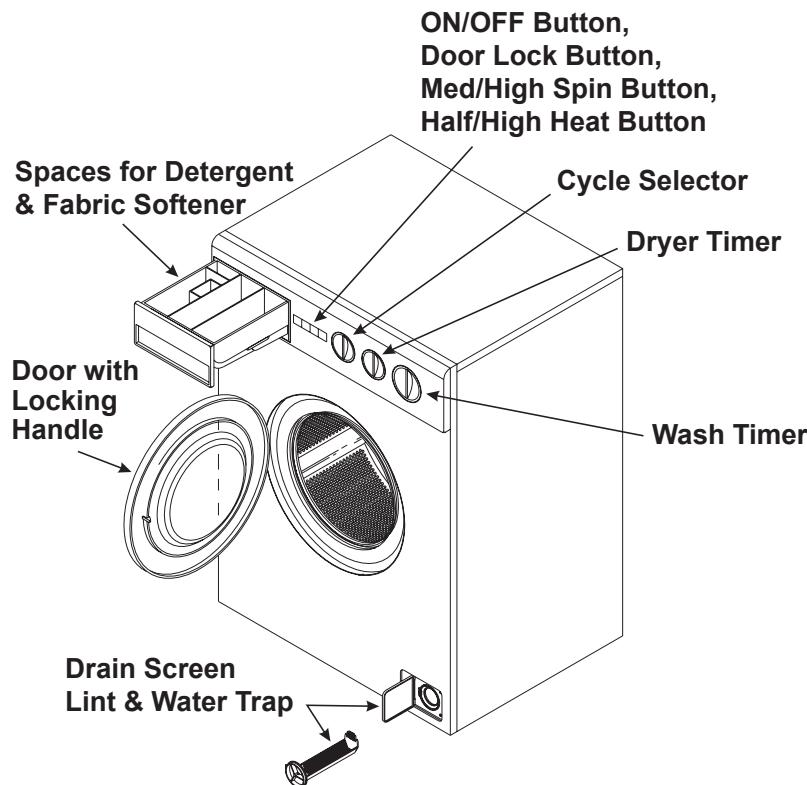


Refer to the manufacturer installation instructions if a washer/dryer is to be installed at a later date.

Listed here are further instructions which should be adhered to for safe and reliable operation:

- Do not connect the clothes dryer exhaust duct to any other duct, vent or chimney.
- Do not terminate the exhaust duct beneath the motorhome.
- Be sure to use proper length fastener when attaching exhaust vent to exterior sidewall. Stainless steel fasteners are best suited for this as they will not rust.
- If the cabinet or closet in which a washer/dryer is installed does not have vented louvered doors, the manufacturer's installation instructions may require installation of vented doors or vents to be installed in the doors. This is for sufficient circulation of drying.

WASHER/DRYER (Optional)



The automatic washer/dryer has a capacity of up to 10 lbs. (4.5 Kg.) of dry clothing. It is front loading with an extra large door opening for easier access. It has five wash cycles, in addition to extra rinse and spin cycles.

- The washer/dryer operates on 120 Volt AC.
- To operate the washer/dryer you will need to be plugged into shore power.
- The washer/dryer water use will be approximately 16 gallons of water.

Before using the washer for the first time wipe the inside and outside with a damp cloth to remove any travel dust that has accumulated. We recommend operating a rinse cycle to rinse out the washer.

To begin a wash load:

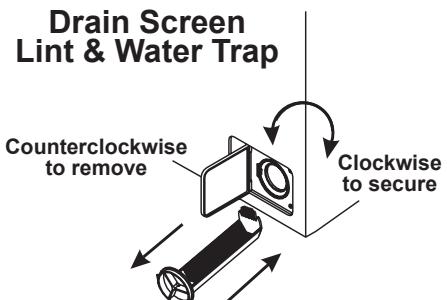
- Sort and pre-treat clothes (specific directions under sorting).
- Add the measured amount of detergent suggested by the package directions (maximum two tablespoons).
- Load the clothes loosely into the washer. Close the washer door.
- Turn the cycle selector knob to the desired temperature setting.
- Decide which washing cycle you wish to use. Turn the timer knob clockwise to the desired wash setting.
- Select High or Medium spin (only for regular washing).
- Press the push button ON.
- After the cycle is complete, wait two minutes for the door lock to release before attempting to open the door.



WARNING: Do not wash or dry articles that have previously been cleaned, washed, soaked or spotted with gasoline, dry cleaning solvents or other flammable or explosive substances. They give off vapors that could ignite or explode. Do not add gasoline, dry cleaning solvents or other flammable or explosive substances to the wash water. Do not use heat to dry articles containing foam rubber or similar textured, rubber-like materials. Clean the lint screen if applicable (located on the back of the washer in the top left corner) after each use and keep the area around the exhaust opening and adjacent areas free from the accumulation of lint, dust and dirt.

The removable drain screen, which protects the pump from lint and foreign matter, needs to be cleaned periodically. The frequency in which it is cleaned depends upon the type of clothes that are washed. Cotton articles produce more lint than nylon articles. Under no circumstance should the drain screen be removed while the machine is full of water. To clean the drain screen (on an empty machine) open the service door by pressing on the left hand side. Place a cloth or shallow tray under the drain screen housing to catch any remaining water that may drip out. It may be helpful to first set the machine to spin then remove the drain screen. This procedure reduces the amount of water released. Turn the drain screen counter-clockwise and pull the drain screen out. Clean the screen to remove any dirt and lint. To replace the screen, slide it back into the housing and turn it clockwise to secure. Close the service door.

Cleaning the Drain Screen



NOTE: Check for water leaks before using the washer after removing and replacing the drain screen.

Cleaning the Washer/Dryer

Occasionally wipe the exterior cabinet of the washer/dryer with a damp cloth or sponge. Wipe dry with a soft cloth. Do not use polish on plastic trim. Clean the interior with one cup of chlorine bleach mixed with two cups of granular detergent. Run the washer through a complete cycle using the hot water. Repeat the process if necessary. Remove hard water deposits using only cleaners labeled as washer safe. Wipe the inside of the washer/dryer door with a soft cloth to remove any moisture. Periodically apply a thin coat of paste wax to the inner door, especially to the area which is immediately next to the door window. This will protect the door finish from laundry spills and discoloration.



NOTE: Should the washer/dryer need removal for service, care should be taken as the washer/dryer weighs approximately 185 lbs. Proper accommodations should be made to avoid risk of injury.

Winterizing the Washer/Dryer

To winterize the washer/dryer follow the instructions below to avoid damage to the unit due to freezing:

1. With the unit off, remove the wash filter to allow the water remaining (in the pump and drain hose) to be evacuated. Replace the filter.
2. Close the inlet shut-off valve located at the manabloc water system.
3. Open the low point drains to drain all the water.
4. In cold climates air should be used to blow out the system.
5. Install the water pressure regulator on a short water hose. Connect it to the water system. Use an air hose connector on the female end as this reduces pressure. Make sure one or more faucets are open.

If antifreeze is being used in the system follow these instructions:

1. When putting antifreeze into the water system of the motorhome, set the washer to a warm/warm fill setting and allow water to flow into the unit until the antifreeze is detected.
2. Slowly advance the timer to a rinse cycle and allow the water to flow for 10 seconds. Advance the unit to a spin cycle to remove the majority of the water from the unit.
3. With the unit off, remove the wash filter from the unit. This will allow the water remaining in the pump and drain hose to be evacuated. Replace the filter.
4. Any water remaining in the unit should contain antifreeze and be protected from freezing.



NOTE: When placing the unit back into service, allow the unit to operate for one complete cycle before doing laundry to ensure all antifreeze has been purged from the unit.

KNIGHT

SECTION 5
EQUIPMENT

INTRODUCTION • 137	FANS • 157
ENTRY STEP • 137	<i>Exhaust Fan</i> • 157
<i>Operation</i> • 137	<i>Tips</i> • 157
<i>Tips</i> • 138	<i>Bathroom Fan</i> • 158
<i>Maintenance & Lubrication</i> • 138	DOOR - SLIDING • 158
STEPWELL COVER • 139	SOFA BED CONVERSION • 159
<i>Adjustments</i> • 139	<i>Sofa to Sleeper</i> • 159
ENTRY DOOR • 139	<i>Sleeper to Sofa</i> • 159
<i>Latch Adjustments</i> • 140	DINETTE BED CONVERSION (Optional) • 159
<i>Screen Door - Changing the Glass</i> • 140	STORAGE - UNDER BED • 159
<i>Screen Door - Adjusting</i> • 140	COMPARTMENT SLIDE (Optional) • 160
<i>Screen Door - Removing the Screen</i> • 141	ENTERTAINMENT SYSTEMS • 160
SLIDE-OUT OPERATION • 141	<i>Video Cassette Recorder (VCR) (Optional)</i> • 160
<i>Extending Main Room Slide-out</i> • 142	<i>Television (Front) w/Lock-out Feature</i> • 160
<i>Retracting Main Room Slide-out</i> • 143	<i>Television Antenna</i> • 161
SLIDE-OUT - BEDROOM • 144	<i>Hook-ups - TV Cable, Computer & Telephone</i> • 163
<i>Extending Bedroom Slide-out</i> • 145	<i>DSS Conduit Prewire (Optional)</i> • 163
<i>Retracting Bedroom Slide-out</i> • 146	<i>Video Selector Box (Optional)</i> • 163
<i>Manual Override - Bedroom Slide-out</i> • 147	<i>Tips</i> • 164
SLIDE LOCK • 149	RADIO - DASH • 165
AWNINGS • 150	
<i>Front Door (Optional)</i> • 150	
<i>Awnings - Patio</i> • 151	
<i>Awning Care & Maintenance</i> • 152	
<i>Awning - Automatic Carefree (Optional)</i> • 154	
<i>Slide-out Awning</i> • 156	



This section covers the basic operation and care of various types of equipment found in the motorhome, most of which are provided for entertainment and comfort. More detailed information about specific equipment may be found in that particular manufacturer's manual. Optional equipment will also be discussed in this section which may not apply to all motorhomes.

INTRODUCTION

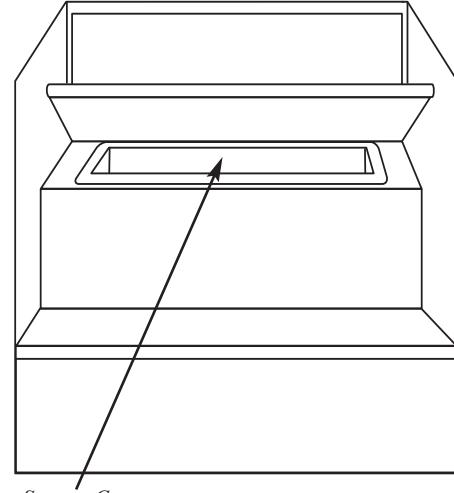
 **Detailed information with CAUTION or WARNING instructions for the various electronics, other than what is provided in this section, can be found in the manufacturer's manual.**

The entry step features amber lighting under the step, automatic retraction with the ignition key in the RUN position and a last out feature. Located to the left, just inside the entry door, is the step switch. The uppermost step has a **storage compartment** w/removable tray. The compartment can be utilized to store frequently used items such as gloves (for refueling), tire pressure gauge, flashlight or outside slippers.

ENTRY STEP - Operation

Operating the Entry Step:

1. With the entrance door open, turn the step switch on.
2. Close the door. The step should retract and lock in the **UP** position. The step light will remain on.
3. Open the door. The step should extend and lock in the "down" position with the under step light on. The step will retract when the door is closed.
4. The step is equipped with a power switch. When the switch is turned off, the step should remain in the extended position with the door closed and the under step light off. Close the door and turn on the ignition switch. The step will retract for travel. To hold the entry step in the retracted position proceed with the following:
 - Turn the engine ignition switch off.
 - Wait 15 seconds and then turn the power step switch from off to on, then back off again. The step will stay retracted until the step switch is turned ON, or the ignition switch is turned on. The retracted position is useful for high curbs or on boat ferries.
5. With the power switch off, the step extended, the entrance door closed and the ignition turned on the ignition override system will go into effect and the step will automatically retract.
6. Turn the ignition off and open the door. The step will extend and lock in the "down" position. This is the "last out" feature. When the ignition is on the step will always activate with the door movement, regardless of the power switch position.



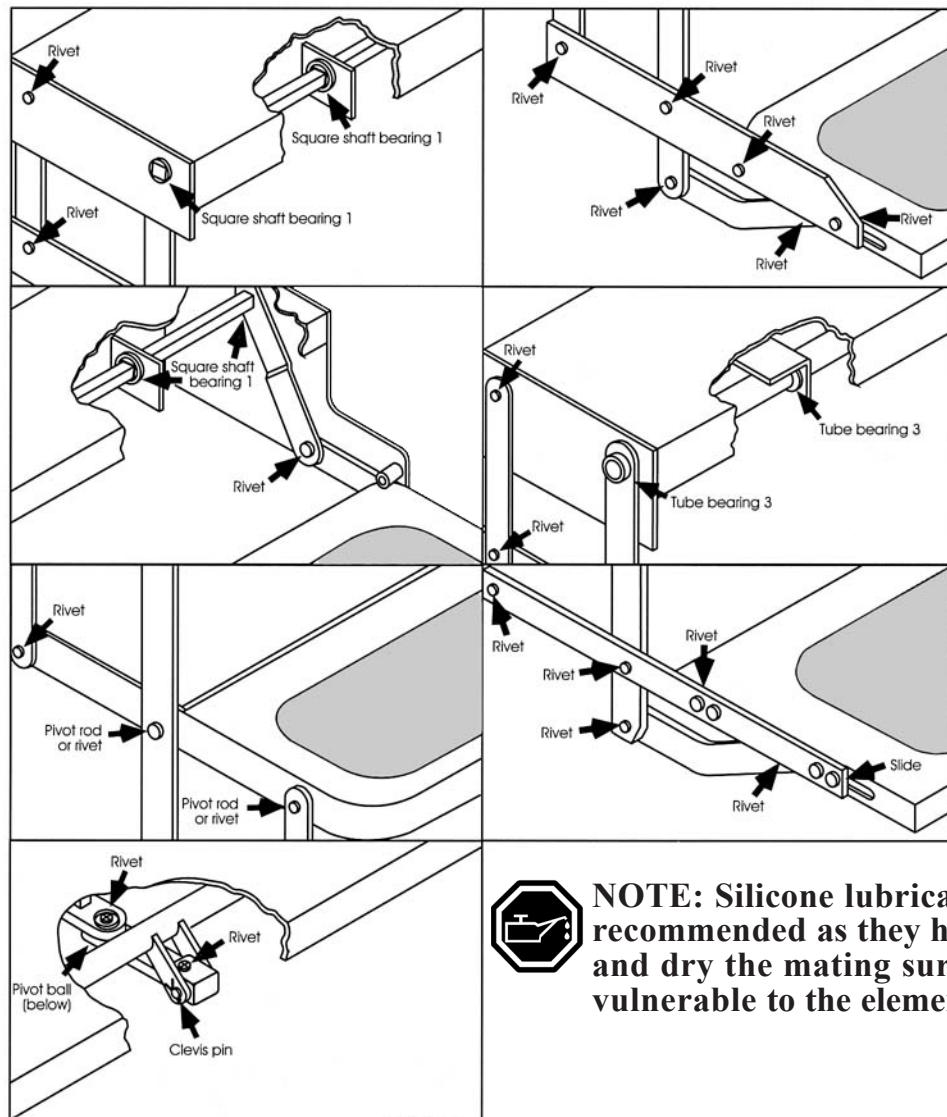
Storage Compartment.

Tips**If the step fails to operate:**

- Verify that the step switch is **ON**.
- Check the main power supply for the step. A 25 Amp 12 Volt DC fuse is located in the front distribution panel.
- A magnetic door jam switch is used to control step operation. Use a separate magnet to apply a “trigger” to the door jam switch. Rotate test magnet to align polarity field.
- A 7 ½ Amp ATO blade fuse is used to illuminate the **STEP OUT** dash warning light. The fuse is located on the front run box.



WARNING: If the motorhome is driven with the step in the extended position there is the possibility of causing major damage to both the step and the motorhome.

Maintenance & Lubrication

Clean all mud, salt and road grime from the step before lubricating. Lubricate all moving parts (bearings, pivot points, slides, clevis pin and the drive linkage ball) every 30 days with a good quality heat and moisture resistant penetrating grease. **Kwik Lube Spray Grease** is specially formulated to lubricate **Kwikee Electric Steps** and it is also recommended for lubricating all moving parts. (Refer to the illustration.)



NOTE: Silicone lubricants and WD-40 are not recommended as they have a tendency to evaporate and dry the mating surfaces which leaves them vulnerable to the elements.

The motorhome is equipped with a sliding stepwell cover that is extended and retracted by the use of a dual action air cylinder. The air cylinder is controlled by an electrically operated air valve. The air solenoid, known as a "MAC" valve, receives air pressure from the front air tank. The "MAC" valve will direct the air pressure to either side of the dual action air cylinder, moving the stepwell cover in or out. The stepwell cover will not operate without sufficient air pressure (approximately 60 psi).

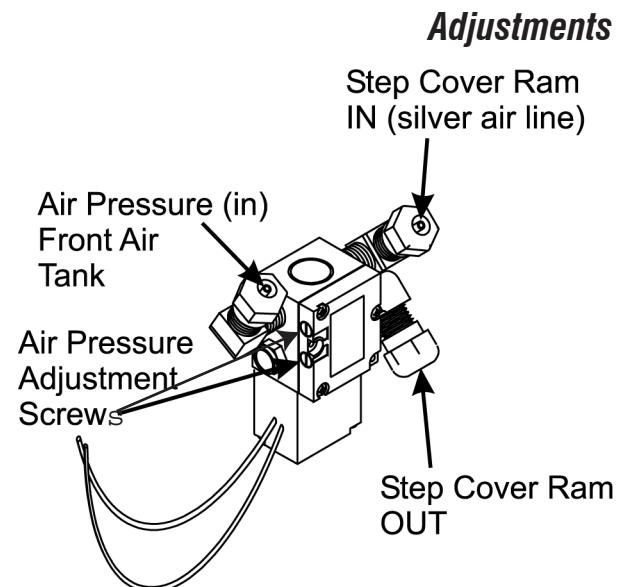
STEPWELL COVER



CAUTION: The stepwell cover is under air pressure. When operating the stepwell cover be sure there are no pets, shoes or other obstructions in the stepwell area. Do not operate the stepwell cover while standing in the stepwell area.

The "MAC" air valve is located in the front of the motorhome, behind the generator door mounted to the frame. The easiest way to identify the location is have someone operate the stepwell cover with the generator door open and listen for the release of air.

The "MAC" air valve has two adjustment screws. The adjustment screws regulate the air flow to either side of the air cylinder. Adjusting the screws will affect the speed in which the air cylinder moves in or out. Clockwise adjustment on the screw will decrease air flow. Counterclockwise adjustment on the screw will increase the air flow. For proper stepwell cover adjustment it is recommended that adjustments be performed by a qualified service person.



WARNING: When adjusting the stepwell cover clear the stepwell area of obstructions, pets or persons. Do not adjust the stepwell cover while stepwell area is occupied.

The entry door is adjusted at the factory and tested for all operations. The door incorporates three separate seals to eliminate wind noise during travel. The door uses two separate locks for safety and security. One locking system is the door handle and the other is a dead bolt. The door handle incorporates a primary and secondary latching system. This is used to ensure secure and safe latching. There are adjustments which can be made to help maintain entry door performance.

ENTRY DOOR

Latch Adjustments

Adjusting the Entry Door Latch:

- Determine which bolt needs adjustment.
- Slowly close the entry door observing the latch and strike bolt alignment. Do not attempt to latch if the alignment is off. If the alignment is correct, allow the latch to catch in the first (primary) position only.
- The latch should move to the second position with just slight pressure applied to the entry door. Upper and lower latches should be evenly timed. Press on the entry door to see if there is any further movement of the door.
- The entry handle should operate with little effort to open the entry door. An excessive amount of pressure indicates the bolts are set too far back.
- With a 5/8" inch box wrench or socket, loosen the movable strike bolt. Make all adjustments in small increments. Tighten the bolt firmly after making adjustments. The bolts should have slight up and down movement for vibration control in travel.
- Test the operation of the dead bolt lock to ensure proper functions.
- Silicone should be applied weekly to the entry door rubber gaskets to prevent squeaking while the motorhome is traveling. Use a one inch sponge paint brush, sprayed with silicone for easy application.



CAUTION: When operating the entry door ensure the dead bolt latch is fully in the unlock position prior to closing the entry door. Failure to do so can result in damage to the dead bolt and/or entry door.

Screen Door - Changing the Glass

Changing the Glass in the Screen Door:

- The screen slider is Plexiglas, the slider can be bowed for removal and replacement.
- Replace with new Plexiglas and reverse the procedure.

Screen Door - Adjusting

Adjusting the Screen Door For Up and Down Location:

- Loosen the chrome bolts on the hinge side of the screen door. Four on the top and four on the bottom.
- The steel hinge has slots to allow up and down movement.
- Four Allen type screws are on the top hinge, and four on the bottom hinge, to adjust the screen door to properly fit to the entry door. The hinge should fit tightly to the trim of the door when the screen door is latched to the door and the door is open.
- Check to see that the pad on the inside of the door is not sitting on top of the aluminum trim of the door. If it is, it will hold the screen door away from the door and you will not have a proper seal. If the pad is too large, re-size the pad.

Removable Screen:

- The top half of the screen door is removable. This allows clear viewing through the entry door glass while traveling.
- To remove the top half of the screen door for travel, rotate clips and remove the screen.
- To store the screen for travel, use the clips provided on the bottom half of the screen door.

**Screen Door
- Removing the Screen**

The slide-out room operation uses many safety features preventing mechanical damage or physical harm. The slide-out room(s) will not operate until all safety requirements are met.

The design of the slide-out system requires very little maintenance. To ensure long life of the slide-out system, follow these simple guidelines:

- The roof of the slide-out should be checked for debris such as pine needles, dirt, leaves, sticks, etc. Any debris left on the top may cause damage to the seals when being retracted. If debris is present wash with soap and water, then rinse.
- When the room is out visually inspect the wipe seal. The seal should be clean and free of dirt or other foreign material. Inspect the seal for tears.
- In the event, the slide-out room leaks fully retract it. If necessary, tape the exterior opening closed with duct tape until repairs to the motorhome can be completed.

**SLIDE-OUT
OPERATION**

NOTE: Do not use any petroleum-based products on the slide-out seal. Petroleum based products can damage the paint and will cause premature aging of the rubber seal.



WARNING: Move the driver's seat forward before activating the slide-out room. Damage to the upholstery can occur. The outside area must be clear of any obstructions restricting slide-out room operation. Ensure there is five or more feet of clear space outside the slide-out room prior to extending or damage can occur. When retracting the slide-out room, ensure there is sufficient clearance inside the motorhome. Never move the motorhome with any slide-out room extended.

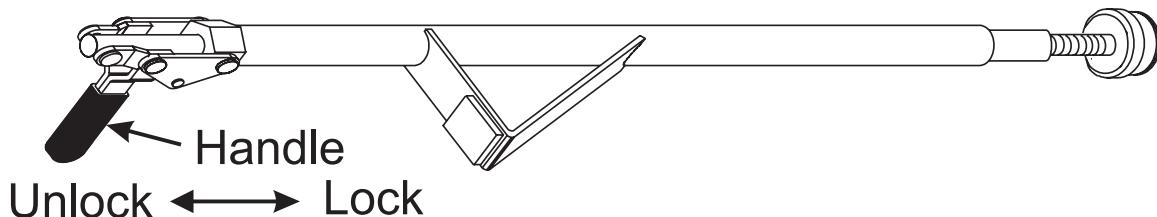


CAUTION: Continuous operation of the slide-out room can drain the batteries and damage the motor from overheating.

Extending Main Room Slide-out

To Extend the Main Slide-out Room - Power Gear:

- Move the driver seat forward.
- Confirm that there is at least five feet of clearance outside the motorhome for the slide-out room to extend.
- Ensure the ignition key is in the OFF position.
- The park brake must be applied.
- The storage bay doors under the slide-out must be closed.
- The house batteries are fully charged.
- Be sure all people, pets and objects are clear of slide-out room path.
- Locate the two locking bar mechanisms on the top of the slide-out room inside the motorhome.
- Move the handles to the unlock position.



- Release the bar mechanisms and remove the bars from between the wall and the top of the slide-out room. Store the bars for reuse before the motorhome is in motion.
- The control switch for the slide-out room is on the System monitor panel located on the hallway wall.
- Press and hold the dinette slide-out room switch in the OUT position. The slide-out room will slowly move to the OUT position. Release the switch to stop room movement. To continue the room movement, push and hold the switch in.
- Release the slide-out switch when the room is fully extended (a change in motor sound indicates extension). The slide-out drive motor will not stop automatically; the switch must be released.
- If equipped, extend additional slide-out rooms.
- Level the motorhome with the leveling system.



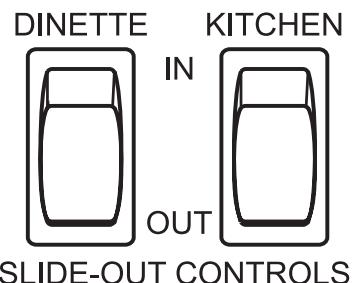
NOTE: Perform the slide-out room operation with the air suspension system full. Extensive damage could occur to the slide-out room and awning when extending the slide-out room in snow, sleet, ice or freezing rain. In such conditions, if the slide-out room is extended, clear the awning and ensure free movement prior to operating the slide-out room.



CAUTION: Dirt and grit trapped under the slide-out room could result in damage to the floor. Continuous operation of the slide-out could cause a drain on the house batteries and damage to the slide-out motor from overheating.

To Retract the Main Slide-Out Room - Power Gear:

- Check for sufficient clearance inside the motorhome before retracting the slide-out room.
- Clean the floor, if applicable, to ensure there is no dirt or grit that could result in floor damage during operation.
- Move the driver's seat forward.
- Inspect the exterior to ensure all bay doors are closed and there are no sags in the awning material.
- Remove any debris from the top of the slide-out room.
- Prior to retracting the slide-out room, start the motorhome. Allow the air bags to fully inflate to normal travel height.
- Retract the leveling system or prepare the air leveling system for travel prior to operating the slide-out.
- Turn the ignition switch OFF. The slide-out room will not operate with the engine running.
- The house batteries are fully charged.
- The park brake must be applied.
- Ensure all people, pets and objects are clear of the slide-out room path.
- Press and hold the switch in the IN position. The slide-out room will move slowly in. To stop the slide-out room, release the switch. To continue the room movement, push and hold the switch in. The motor will change tone when the slide-out room is fully retracted.
- Release the switch.

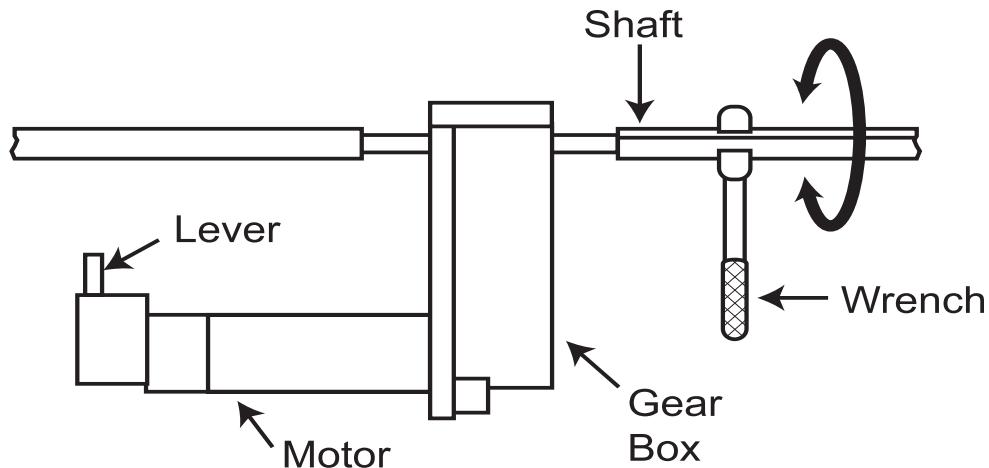
Retracting Main Room Slide-out

NOTE: Be sure you have sufficient clearance on the inside of the motorhome (driver's seat, etc.) before you retract the slide-out room. If your motorhome has ceramic tile floor ensure the floor is clean before you retract the slide-out room. Trapped dirt or grit under the slide-out room can scratch the floor surface. Never move the motorhome with the slide-out room extended.

Manual Override Electric-Emergency Procedures - Power Gear:

To move the slide-out room manually, retract the motorhome leveling jacks (see "Leveling Jacks").

1. Open the outside storage compartment doors underneath slide-out room.
2. Remove plastic covers, if applicable, from top of compartments to gain access to drive shafts and motor assembly.
3. To move the slide-out room, move the brake lever on the drive motor counterclockwise to the Release position. Turn the shaft next to the gearbox using a 7/8" open-end wrench.
4. When the room is in apply pressure to the wrench so the room is sealed. Move the brake lever to the Engage position locking the room in place.
5. Take the motorhome to an authorized dealer for service.



NOTE: The brake lever remains in the "engage" position during normal operation.

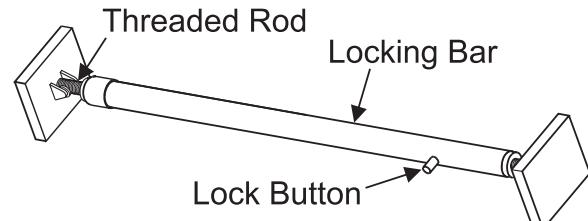
**SLIDE-OUT -
BEDROOM**

The bedroom slide-out operates electrically. The bedroom slide-out room operates using many safety features preventing mechanical damage or physical harm. Firmly latch any cabinet doors located adjacent to the bedroom slide-out. Damage to the door or fascia can occur.

Extending Bedroom Slide-out

To Extend the Bedroom Slide-out:

- Confirm that there is at least five feet of clearance outside the motorhome for the slide-out room to extend.
- Ensure the ignition key is in the OFF position.
- The house batteries are fully charged.
- The house battery cut-off switch must be on.
- Locate the two lock bars at the top of the slide-out room. Press the lock button or rotate the locking bar in the appropriate direction to remove.
- Locate the control switch for the slide-out, usually on the vanity cabinet.
- Ensure all people, pets and objects are clear of the slide-out room path.
- Press and hold the slide-out room switch in the OUT position. The slide-out room will slowly move to the OUT position. Release the switch to stop room movement. To continue the room movement, push and hold the switch in.
- Release the slide-out switch when the room is fully extended (a change in motor sound indicates extension). The slide-out drive motor will not stop automatically; the switch must be released.
- Level the motorhome with the leveling system.



WARNING: Firmly latch all cabinet doors adjacent to the bedroom slide-out before extending or retracting the room. Damage to doors or fascia can occur.



CAUTION: Dirt and grit trapped under the slide could result in damage to the floor. Continuous operation of the slide-out could cause a drain on the house batteries and damage to the motor from overheating.



NOTE: Do not leave the slide-out in the extended position during severe weather. Conditions such as high winds or heavy rain may cause damage.



NOTE: Perform the slide-out room operation with the air suspension system full. Extensive damage could occur to the slide-out room and awning when extending the slide-out room in snow, sleet, ice or freezing rain conditions. In such conditions, if the slide-out room is extended, clear the awning and ensure free movement prior to operating the slide-out room.

Retracting Bedroom Slide-out

To Retract the Bedroom Slide-out:

- Check for sufficient clearance inside the motorhome before retracting the slide-out room.
- Clean the floor, if applicable, to ensure there is no dirt or grit that could result in floor damage during slide-out retraction.
- Remove any debris from the top of the slide-out room.
- Prior to retracting the slide-out room, start the motorhome. Allow the air bags to fully inflate to normal travel height.
- Retract the leveling system or prepare the air leveling system for travel prior to operating the slide-out.
- Turn the ignition switch OFF. The slide-out room will not operate with the engine running.
- The house batteries are fully charged.
- The house battery cut-off switch must be on.
- Locate the control switch for the slide-out, usually located on the monitor panel or the bedroom wall.
- Clear all people, pets and objects from the slide-out room path.
- Press and hold the switch in the IN position. The slide-out room will move slowly in. To stop the slide-out room before the room reaches the IN position, release the switch. To continue the room movement, push and hold the switch in. The motor will change tone when the slide-out room is fully retracted.
- Release the switch.



CAUTION: Continuous operation of the slide-out room can drain the battery and damage the slide-out motor from overheating. Never move the motorhome without having the slide-out room retracted.

If the slide-out room does not respond from the switch, check that all the safety features are in place. The bedroom slide-out system can be retracted in the event of a power loss.

If the room does not move when the switch is pressed:

- Check if the battery is fully charged and connected.
- Make sure the transit bars are removed.



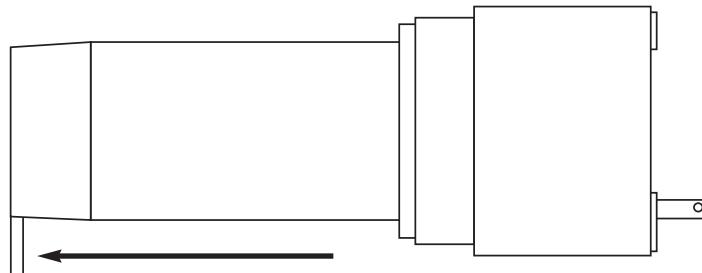
WARNING: Do not work on the slide-out system unless the battery is disconnected. Make sure the floor is clean before retracting the slide-out room. Dirt or grit that is trapped under the slide-out can cause damage to the floor.

After the previous items have been checked and the room still does not move when the slide-out switch is pressed, follow these simple steps to manually override the slide-out room:

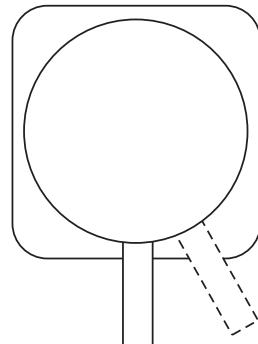
Manual Override - Bedroom Slide-out

Manual Override for Bedroom Slide-out - Wardrobe:

1. Disconnect the battery cables from the battery.
2. Lift up the mattress and baseboard to gain access to the slide-out mechanism.
3. If the bedroom slide-out motor has a lever on the backside, rotate the lever counterclockwise about 1/8th of a turn (looking from the rear of the motor) to release the brake that locks the room in place. If the motor does not have a lever, use a $\frac{1}{2}$ " wrench to remove the four motor mounting bolts. Remove the motor.
4. Use an appropriate wrench (a $\frac{3}{4}$ " wrench/ratchet or an adjustable wrench) on the override to move the room in or out. The override is located on the opposite side of the slide-out rail from the motor.
5. Once the room is in apply pressure to the wrench so that the room is sealed. Return the brake lever to its normal downward position to lock the room in place. Install the transit bar (if so equipped). If the motor does not have a brake lever, apply pressure to the wrench so that the room seals and install the transit bar (if so equipped). If there is no motor lever and no transit bar, the motor must be mounted back onto the slide-out system to hold the room for transport. Because of this, the room may not be sealed from the environment.
6. Take the motorhome to an authorized dealer for service.



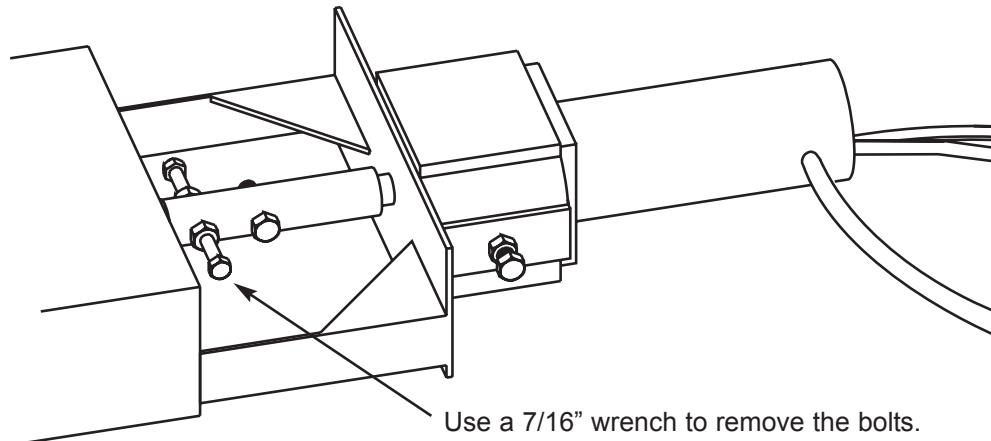
Brake Lever.



Rotate approximately 30° counter-clockwise to release the motor brake.

Manual Override for Bedroom Slide-out - Bed Slide:

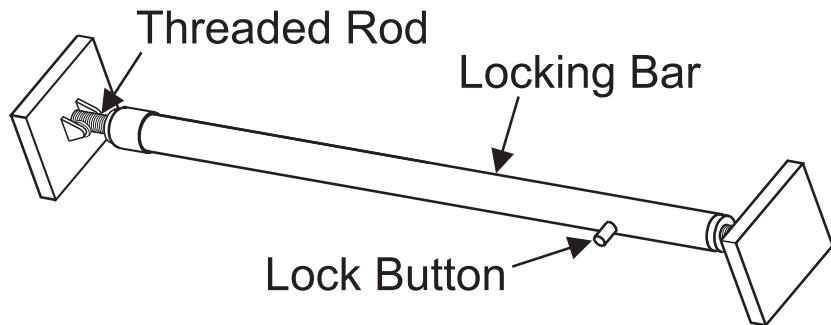
1. Lift up the mattress and baseboard to gain access to the slide-out mechanism.
2. Disconnect the battery power from the slide-out motor.
3. The slide-out motor has a shaft with two bolts. Use an appropriate wrench (a 7/16" wrench/ratchet or an adjustable wrench) to remove the bolts. The bolts will need to be stored in a safe place to be installed after repairs have been completed.
4. The slide-out then can be pushed back in by a single person.
5. Once the slide room has been manually retracted, install the locking bars to prevent the room from creeping.
6. Take the motorhome to an authorized dealer for service.



Slide-out Motor.

The slide lock can be useful for other functions in the unit. It does not have to be stored when the slide room is extended. Some useful functions include a towel bar in the shower to dry wet clothing or an extra closet rod.

SLIDE LOCK



If the slide bar is used for other functions follow a few simple guidelines:

- Ensure the slide lock is straight as possible.
- Adjust the dimension nearest to the opening size. DO NOT GO LARGER.
- The feet can be adjusted until they are $\frac{1}{4}$ inch shorter than the opening.
- The foot on the brass bolt has $4 \frac{1}{2}$ inches of adjustment. Foot on the silver bolt has $1 \frac{1}{2}$ inches of adjustment.
- Ensure slide lock is in place tightly before use. Use caution when tightening if used on areas not reinforced.

Tip:

The silver bolt should face the outside wall, and then a clockwise rotation will increase tension.



CAUTION: Do not work on the slide-out system unless the battery is disconnected.

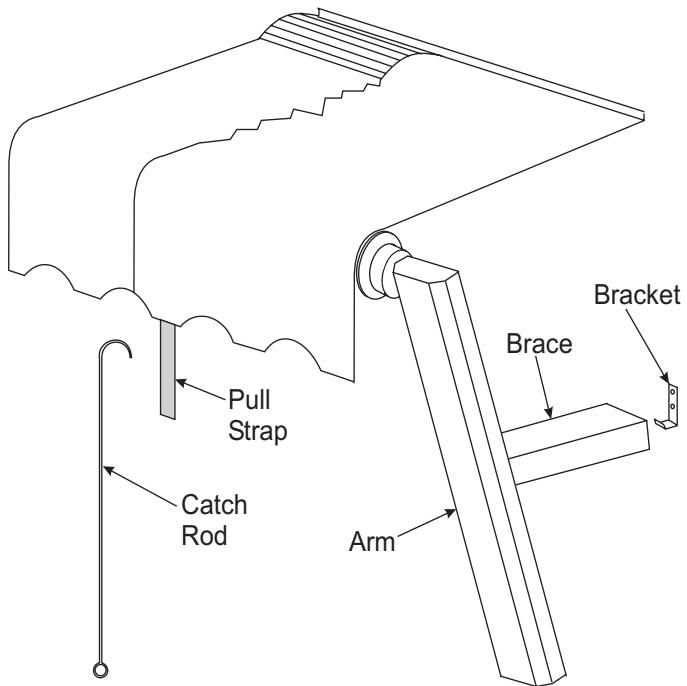


NOTE: Do not leave the slide-out in the extended position during severe weather. Conditions such as high winds or heavy rain may cause damage to an extended slide-out.



NOTE: It is not recommended to extend the slide room in snow, sleet, ice or freezing rain. There may be extensive damage resulting from the awning freezing. In the event the slide-out room is extended in snow, sleet, ice or freezing rain conditions, it is recommended you clear the awning and ensure free movement prior to retracting the slide room.

AWNINGS - Front Door (Optional)



To Extend the Awning:

- Hook the pull strap loop with awning pull rod.
- Pull strap until awning is at full extension. With free hand, lever out inner arms.
- Mate the slot of inner arm with hook on side of the motorhome. Repeat procedure for other arm.
- Release strap slowly ensuring inner arms are secure. Slide the strap to rear of awning roll tube and tie to rear arm.
- Loosen locking knobs for both arms and extend arms so the canvas will clear door in the open position.

To Retract the Awning:

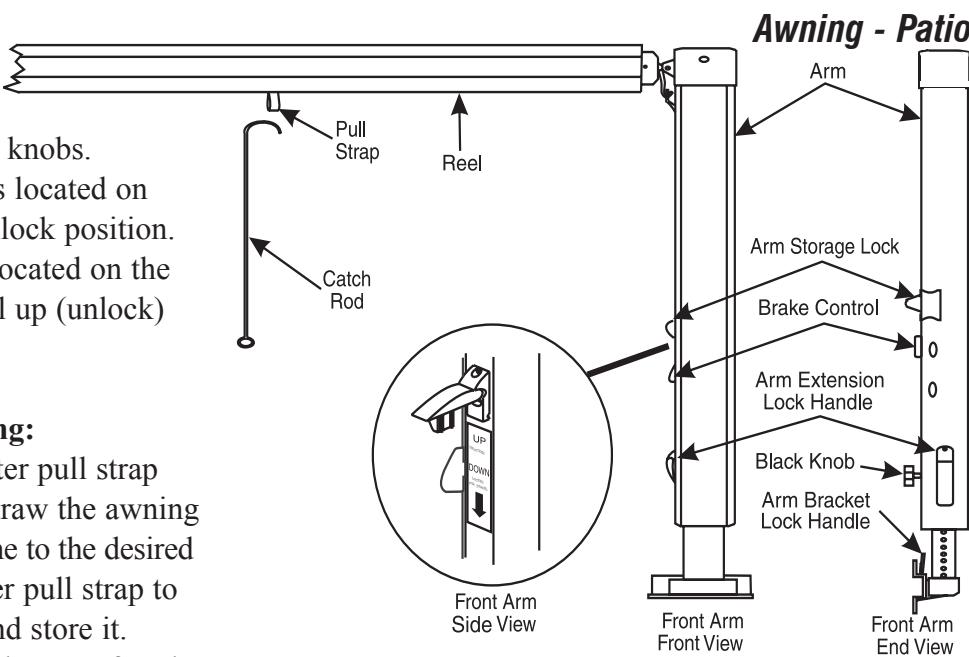
- Loosen locking knobs for both arms. Lower arms to stop bolts. Tighten knobs.
- Untie the pull strap and slide strap to center of awning roll tube.
- Pull down on pull strap with a firm grip until tension is off the inner arms. Fold inner arms and attach them to the velcro.
- Carefully allow material to wind onto awning roll tube while holding strap in a neutral position. This will allow material to roll up evenly.
- Awning end caps should be against the rubber bumpers. If one end cap is off, pull down on awning pull strap while holding strap slightly to opposite side, allowing awning to roll back up into position.



CAUTION: When the awning is at full extension do not allow the awning to snap back into the retracted position. Personal injury or damage to the awning or motorhome may occur.

To Unlock the Awning:

1. Loosen the black locking knobs.
2. Lift the arm storage locks located on each upper arm to the unlock position. Slide the brake control, located on the front arm only, to the full up (unlock) position.

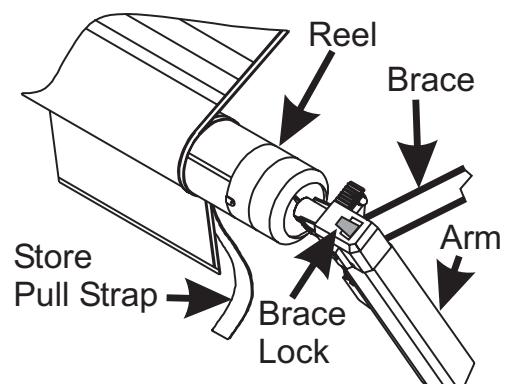
**To Extend the Patio Awning:**

1. Hook the loop of the center pull strap with the pull wand and draw the awning away from the motorhome to the desired extension. Slide the center pull strap to one end of the awning and store it.
2. Slide the inner rafters to the top of each arm and push outward to the tension canopy. Tighten the black locking knobs.
3. Raise the arm extension lock handles and slide the awning upward. Lower the lock handles and move the awning arm upward or downward to lock the detent into the hole. First, raise the lock handles on the main side. Next, raise the lock handles to the entry door. Go to the other awning arm and do the same. Make sure the awning is straight.

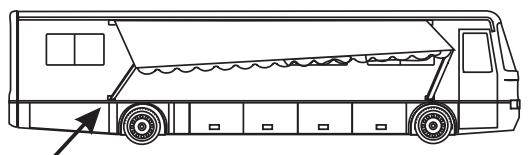
To Retract the Patio Awning:

Retract the arms and lower the awning until the arms rest on the lower stop bolts and lock into position. Loosen the two black locking knobs. Release the locking tab on the end of the awning leg. Slide the pull strap to the center of the awning while holding on to the strap. Allow the awning to roll up to the stored position.

- Snap the arm storage locks into the down position and tighten the black locking knobs.
- Verify that the brake control is in the locked or closed position.



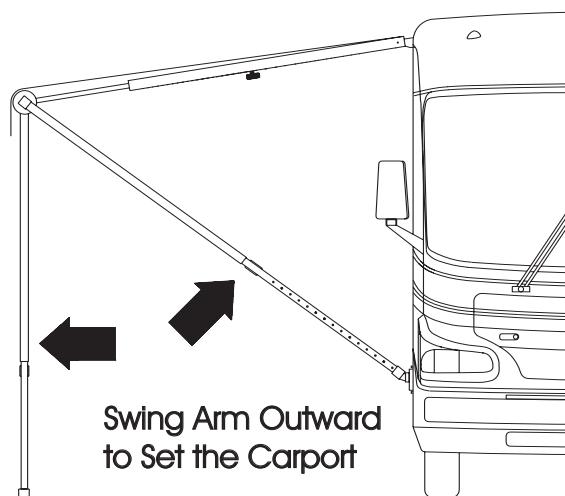
Rain Release Setting



One arm should be set lower than the other for proper water run-off.

Rain Release Setting:

After the awning has been extended, choose the rain release position to prevent water build up on the awning. To position the awning in the rain release setting, lower one arm of the awning and leave the other arm in the normal position. This will create enough of a slope for adequate water run off.



Using The Carport Feature:

(Not available with Carefree One Touch Awnings.)

1. Extend the braces and lock them into the end of the side arms. Tighten the black knobs.
2. Extend the awning as described under "To Extend Awning."
3. Unlatch the bottom of the rear arm by pushing in on the lock handle on the arm bracket. Swing the arm away from the motorhome to an upright position.
4. Raise the rear arm extension lock handle all the way up to the unlocked position. Extend the arm to position the awning at the desired height and lower the lock handle to lock the arms in place.
5. Drive the stakes through the bottom holes in the arm.
6. Repeat instructions 1 through 5 for the front arm extension lock handle.



NOTE: To move the awning out of the carport position reverse the above steps.

Securing the Awning for Travel:

Before traveling, check the following:

1. The awning is fully retracted against the sides of the motorhome.
2. The black locking knobs are tightened.
3. The storage locks are down and in the locked position.
4. The brake control is in the full down (locked) position, and no red warning is showing.
5. The bottom of the front and rear arms are latched properly into the bottom brackets.
6. The catch rod is stored away.

Awning Care & Maintenance

Mildew will not form on the awning material itself, but it may form on the dust accumulated on the canopy. A quality vinyl cleaner, such as Carefree Awning Magic, will help keep your awning looking new. Be sure to follow the instructions on the container.



NOTE: Allow the awning material to thoroughly dry before rolling the awning up. Metal surfaces should be cleaned with soapy water and thoroughly rinsed.

Care of Awning Acrylic Fabric:

The acrylic fabric should be cleaned regularly before substances such as dirt, leaves, etc., are allowed to accumulate on, and become embedded in, the fabric. The fabric can be cleaned without being removed from the awning. Simply brush off any loose dirt, leaves, etc. Hose down and clean with a cloth and mild soap. **Do not use detergents.** Allow to air dry, preferably on a warm sunny day. Should you have to retract the awning when the fabric is wet, it should be extended at the first opportunity to finish air drying.

Avoid leaving the awning partially extended during rainy conditions. The awning is at the strongest setting when the awning is fully extended.

Cleaning and Maintenance:

- **Washing:** On a monthly basis, loosen hardened dirt and remove dust from the awning with a dry, medium bristle brush. Thoroughly rinse both the top and bottom with a hose. This process can be made easier with awning maintenance products. Saturate the fabric with the solution and leave it on for 15-20 minutes. Wash both sides of the awning using an awning brush. If necessary, reapply the solution to keep fabric saturated. Rinse the awning thoroughly. Repeat, if necessary, until most of the stains disappear.
- **Water Leaks:** If leaking occurs after washing, it generally results from insufficient rinsing. If water drips through the needle holes in the stitching use a commercial seam sealer which is available in canvas and trailer supply stores. Paraffin wax may also be applied to the top of the seams. As the awning “weathers” these holes will normally seal themselves.

It is normal for slight leakage to occur through the fabric where water is allowed to accumulate or pocket on the fabric. See “Storm Precautions” for information on the awning settings for proper water drainage. Sometimes soap or chemical residue, such as from active agents in insect fog or sprays, can “wet” the fabric so that it appears unable to repel water. Rinse the fabric thoroughly and test to see if it is water repellent after it dries. If leakage continues after repeating the washing and thoroughly rinsing, please contact Carefree Awning Magic concerning further maintenance.

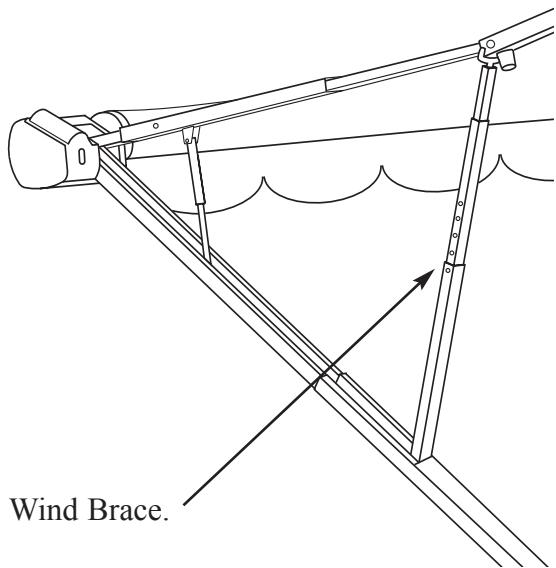
- **Storm Precautions:** The warranty does not cover damage caused by acts of nature; therefore, steps should be taken to prevent damage from occurring due to wind, rain or storms. If you are leaving or retiring for the night, close the awning. This takes only a few seconds and it gives the best protection for the awning. If unable to close the awning, lower both ends of it as far as you can. This will create a sufficient slope for water run-off. One end may be lowered to sufficiently divert the water, if the awning is being monitored.

Water weighs 8.33 pounds per gallon. The awning was not made to withstand the 500 to 700 pounds that could accumulate. It is best not to subject the awning and the motorhome to the needless strain.

Awning - Automatic Carefree (Optional)



The Carefree One Touch automatic awning requires only “finger tip” operation. A key lock on the One Touch switch pad is provided to prevent accidental deployment of the awning while the motorhome is in motion. The key is removable in the lock or unlock position. Gas filled struts keep the awning fabric tight at any extended position. The 12 Volt DC motor for the One Touch awning uses approximately 15 Amps while in operation.



To Extend the Awning:

- Verify all persons and objects are clear from the extend path of the awning and related hardware.
- Turn the One Touch key to the **ON** position.
- Depress and hold the momentary switch to **EXTEND**. Motor will automatically stop at full extension.
- Allow 14 seconds for awning to reach full extension.
- Extension distance or fabric tension is adjusted by toggling between **RETRACT** and **EXTEND**.
- Turn the One Touch key to the **OFF** position.
- Install the wind braces (2) between the upper rafter and the main arm. Adjust wind brace so the inner spring is under tension.



CAUTION: The patio awning requires nine feet of lateral clearance from the side of the motorhome. This distance will allow the awning to reach full extension. The One Touch patio awning was not designed with a carport feature or a rain release setting. The awning should be retracted if the motorhome is left unattended or high wind conditions exist. Otherwise, wind damage to the awning may occur.



NOTE: It is not required to have the awning at full extension. Awning may be stopped at any time of extension or retraction by releasing the momentary switch.

To Retract the Awning:

- Remove the wind braces.
- Verify all persons and objects are clear from the retract path of the awning and related hardware.
- Turn the One Touch key to the **ON** position.
- Press and hold the momentary switch to **RETRACT**. The motor will automatically stop at full retraction.
- It takes approximately 14 seconds for the awning to travel from the fully extended position to the fully retracted position.
- Turn the One Touch key to the **OFF** position to avoid accidental deployment of the awning while the vehicle is in motion.

Tips - If the awning fails to retract or extend:

- Verify the One Touch key is in the **ON** position.
- The house battery cut off switch is in the **ON** position.
- The house battery voltage is at 12 Volts or above.
- Verify proper electrical connection from the awning motor to the side of the motorhome.

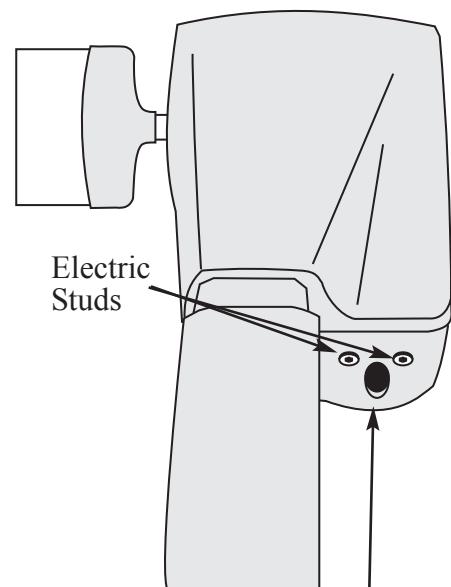
Emergency Retract Procedure:

If the One Touch awning fails to retract and proper DC voltages have been verified, the One Touch awning has two emergency methods of alternately retracting the awning.

1. Two exposed electrical studs are mounted externally at the forward end of the awning at the motor assembly. An alternate 12 Volt DC positive and negative supply may be applied to these connections. If awning fails to move, reverse the polarity of the alternate supply leads.
2. On the motor assembly, mounted externally at the forward end of the awning, is an opening. Insert a 9/64" Allen hex wrench. Using an electric drill, wind the awning to the retract position.



CAUTION: When using an alternate method to operate the awning, use extreme care to keep appendages, hair or loose clothing away from exposed rotating hardware.



12 Volt Motor.

Slide-out Awning

The motorhome is equipped with a slide-out awning that will automatically roll out when the slide-out room extends. With the slide-out room extended, the awning can be rolled out completely as a window awning.

To Extend the Awning:

The slide-out awning arms are equipped with locks.

- Open the locks with the awning wand.
- Use the wand to pull down on the strap. Grasp the strap firmly hooking the loop on the end of the strap to the catch.

To Retract the Awning:

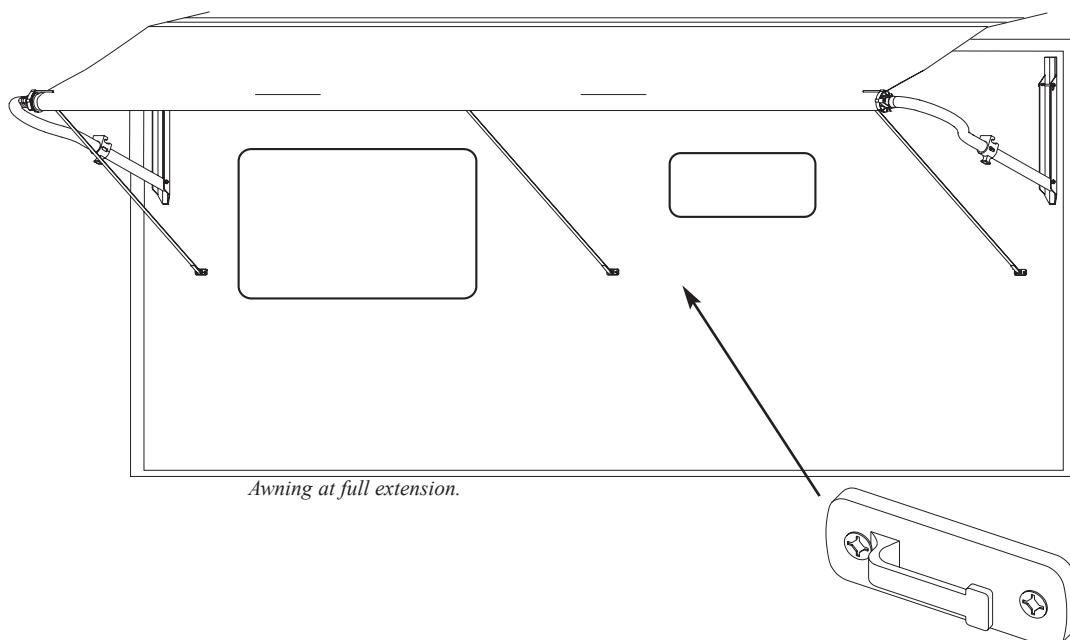
- With a strong grasp unhook the awning strap and insert the awning wand into the loop of the strap.
- Carefully allow the spring tension to wind the awning fabric onto the awning roll tube. Do not allow the awning to snap back into place. Damage to the awning or the motorhome may result.
- Secure the awning arm locks with the awning wand.



CAUTION: The slide-out room and slide-out awning should be retracted during heavy winds or rain. Rain can be driven up under the slide-out awning and into the motorhome. The slide-out awning should be retracted in high wind conditions as damage can occur to the awning or motorhome.



NOTE: At least five feet of clearance is needed between the side of the motorhome and any objects, such as trees or fences, to allow the slide-out room and slide-out awning to be fully extended.



FANS

Exhaust Fan

The exhaust fan is a three-speed fan with a “0” or OFF position on the fan. The exhaust fan requires the presence of 12 Volt DC to operate. The fan will either pull in air or extract air from the motorhome depending on how the IN/OUT switch was set. The IN/OUT switch controls the direction of the fan rotation. There are three basic controls located on the ceiling vent fan. The knurled knob manually opens and closes the dome cover. The rotary knob selects the operating speed of the fan. When the dome cover opens approximately two inches, the fan motor begins to operate. During normal operations the knurled knob offers manual control of the dome cover for opening and closing.

To Operate the Fan:

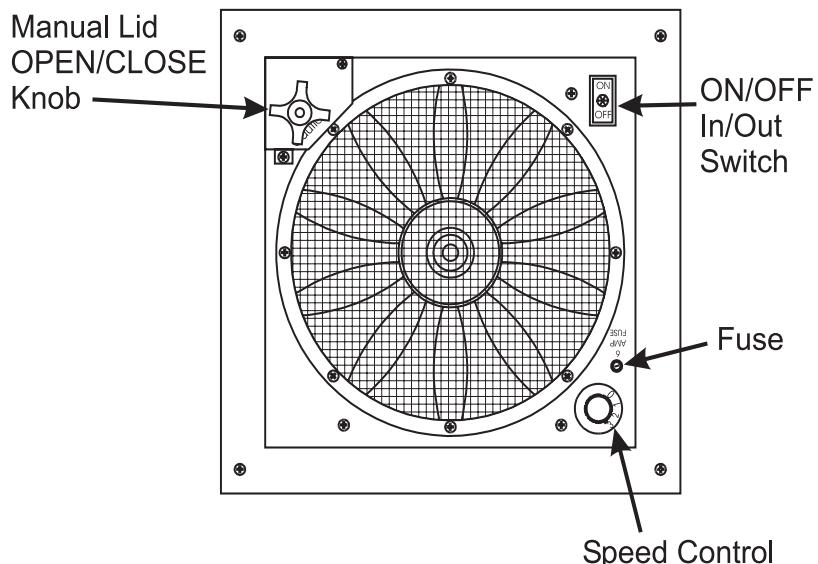
- The Battery cut-off switch needs to be set ON.
- The dome manually opens and closes using the knurled knob.
- Select the desired fan direction to IN/OUT.
- Select the desired fan speed on the Speed Control dial:

Zero = OFF.

One = LOW.

Two = MEDIUM.

Three = HIGH.



NOTE: Let fan come to a complete stop before changing fan direction.



NOTE: If the speed switch is in the "0" position the fan operates only as a vent.

- To keep condensation from accumulating open the vent fan lids slightly to help the air circulate. Condensation occurs naturally from fluctuations in interior and exterior temperatures, humidity and dew point changes, steam from cooking, or boiling large amounts of water on the cooktop. Shower usage also produces condensation.
- If the fan fails to operate, check for either a blown fuse in the domestic fuse panel or the 6-amp fuse on the fan.
- To clean the screen, remove the eight screws holding it in place. Wash the screen using a non-abrasive soap and water. Re-install the screen and tighten the screws.

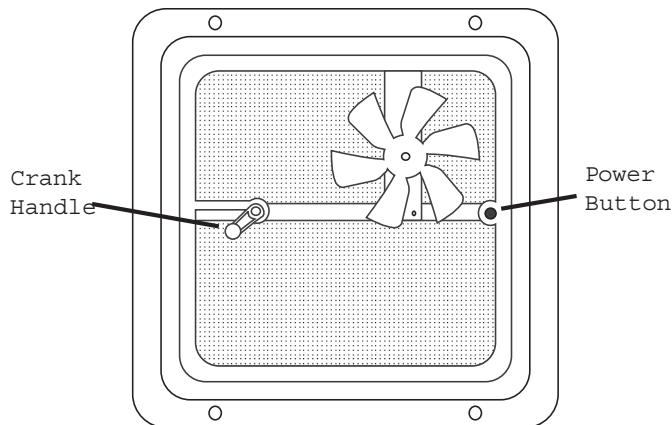
Tips

- Keep all the vents closed when using the Fantastic Fan Vent. Direct the airflow by slightly opening the window(s) on the shaded side of the motorhome to obtain the maximum airflow, especially on hot, sunny days. Close all the roof vents. The area between the open window(s) and the Fantastic Vent supplies the maximum airflow and providing the most comfort.



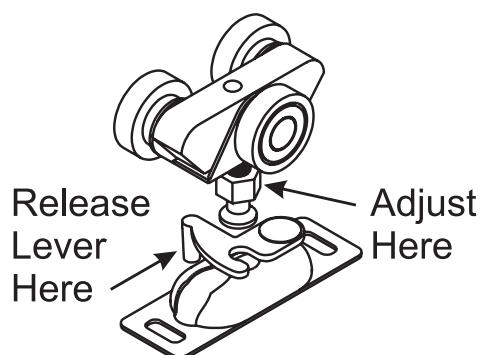
NOTE: Do not leave the vent cover open while the motorhome is stored or unattended for extended periods. High winds other unusual conditions or obstructions may prevent closing. The resulting leakage could cause serious damage.

Bathroom Fan



The motorhome is equipped with roof air vents which are manually operated. The vent is opened or closed by simply turning the crank handle in the desired direction. The fan, which is for ventilation only as it will not help cool the motorhome, can be operated by pushing the small power button. The vent must be opened before using the power fan. To close the power air vent, push in the power button to stop the fan and close the vent.

DOOR - SLIDING



The sliding pocket door uses two rollers at the top of each door. During the life of the motorhome the sliding door may need adjusting. The sliding pocket door can be adjusted to close tight against the wall. Locate the small wrench and turn the adjusting screw upward or downward.

If, for any reason, the pocket door needs to be removed, locate the portion that is secured to the top of the pocket door and rotate the small lever outward to release the latches.



The pocket door rollers should be lubed with just a small drop of oil once a year to help increase the life of the rollers and improve the sliding of the door.

The sofa will convert easily into a bed. The sofa comes equipped with safety belts and these should be used if occupied during travel.

SOFA BED CONVERSION

- Raise the sofa seat base until seat base and backrest form a “V” shape by lifting up from the center of sofa just below the seat cushions.
- Push down on seat base until the seat base and backrest are flat.
- Fold seat belts out of the way.

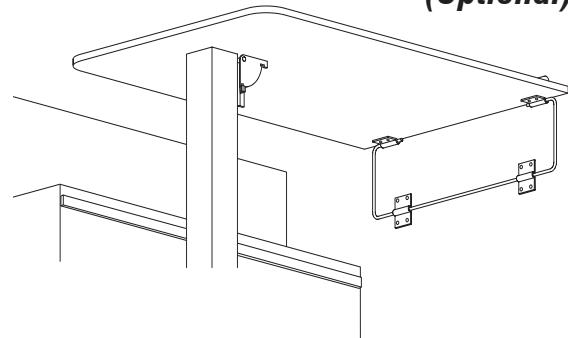
Sofa to Sleeper

- Lift the seat base up until seat and back rest are in a “V” shape.
- Push down on seat base.

Sleeper to Sofa

- The booth dinette easily converts into a bed.
- Lift or remove the seat cushions to permit the table to swing down into position.
- With a firm grip, lift front edge of the table approximately six inches and push table leg lock to release the support leg.
- Swing the table leg up locking the leg into the horizontal position.
- Continue lifting table until table stays are clear of retainers. Pull outward and lower table down.
- Use both seat cushions and one back cushion for a mattress. Leave one back cushion in a vertical position.

DINETTE BED CONVERSION (Optional)



WARNING: Do not occupy the booth dinette, if not equipped with safety belts or the dining chairs while the motorhome is in motion. To avoid personal injury to occupants in case of a crash or sudden stop, chairs must be stored in an enclosed area or secured with tie down straps while the motorhome is in motion.

To use the storage compartment located under the bed, locate and unlock the bed deck latches. Lift up the bed by the front edge of the mattress platform. Gas struts hold the mattress and platform open.

STORAGE - UNDER BED



NOTE: Do not over stress gas struts by rapidly opening or closing the bed access cover, as this action can damage the struts or mounts. In extreme cold gas struts may not hold the mattress platform in the open position.

COMPARTMENT SLIDE (Optional)

The compartment slide is an option that is available for use in the storage compartment bays of the motorhome. This allows for the pay-load to slide outward for easier access.

- The motorhome must be level before opening.
- There are two latch releases: lift and hold up to release one, pull outward while pulling on the slide to release the other.
- Maximum weight capacity is 400 lbs. Never exceed this amount.



WARNING: The motorhome must be level when sliding the drawer out of the bay compartment. The drawer can slide out abruptly, if the motorhome is not level, and cause bodily harm.

ENTERTAINMENT SYSTEMS

The components used to make up the entertainment center are carefully selected to provide the highest quality in audio and visual enjoyment. There are several pieces of equipment, which encompass the entertainment center. The following paragraphs will discuss the operations and various components. Use the instructions given in the Video Selector Box section to use these components.

Video Cassette Recorder (VCR) - (Optional)

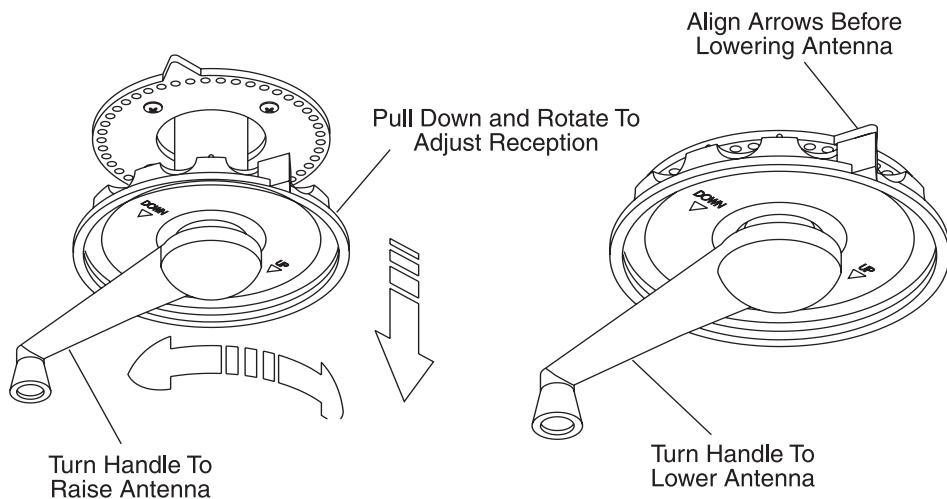
The videocassette recorder is the same one found in most homes. The VHS Compatibility allows recording and playing back programs on standard VHS tapes. The Audio/Video Input Jacks in the front allows for quick, easy connections of additional video equipment. Easy Setup procedures provide the flexibility to quickly adapt the configuration for RV usage.

Television (Front) w/Lockout Feature

The remote control color television located above the pilot seat has lockout circuitry. Simply stated, the ignition switch controls the front TV power outlet. Only with the ignition OFF will the front TV operate. No other television set will be effected by the lockout circuitry. The TV operates on 120 Volt AC power only. This power can be provided by shore power, the generator or the inverter. Viewing time of the front TV from the inverter depends on the state of charge of the house batteries and any additional 12 Volt DC circuitry which is being operated.

Television Antenna

The television antenna is a manual crank up style antenna with built in electronics that use 12 Volts DC to "boost" signal strength. Signals that are weak or fuzzy can be amplified by turning on the boost switch in the passenger front overhead cabinet. The antenna and booster work together to provide the best possible picture for most situations. Certain conditions occur when no amplification is needed, and in fact may make the picture worse. The television station will send a signal that resembles the waves or rings of water from a rock thrown into a still pond. The radiating television signal can hit an object such as a mountain and come back. The result one sees in the television picture is a double image. The antenna will receive a signal from the initial pass, then receive an additional signal from the rebound resulting in a split or double image. In this case, the picture may be improved by no amplification or even lowering the antenna.



NOTE: Do not move the motorhome with antenna in the raised position, it can be damaged by tree limbs or wires.



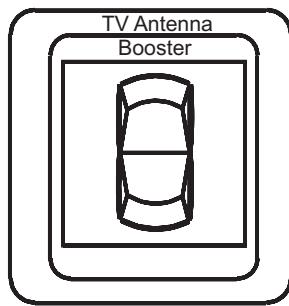
WARNING: Before raising antenna make an outside, visual inspection for any obstructions or overhead electrical wires. Damage to the antenna, severe shock, personal injury or death can occur from inadequate clearance.

To Raise the Antenna:

- Rotate the crank handle clockwise to raise the antenna (it is approximately 14 ½ turns).
- Pull down on the outside directional wheel and rotate the antenna until the best picture is obtained. The directional wheel is spring loaded.



WARNING: Do not raise a TV antenna near overhead electrical wires as contact may cause serious injury or death. The motorhome must not be driven with the antenna in a raised or partially raised position. Worm gear or worm breakage may result.



To Lower The Antenna:

- Pull down on the directional wheel and align arrows together.
- Rotate the crank handle counterclockwise to lower the antenna fully into the cradle. Make an outside visual inspection to ensure the antenna is properly stowed.

Boost Operation:

To boost the antenna signal to the TV or VCR, use the boost switch. Turn this switch to the ON position. Turn the boost switch off when not in use.

- The switch is located on the left side of the VCR.

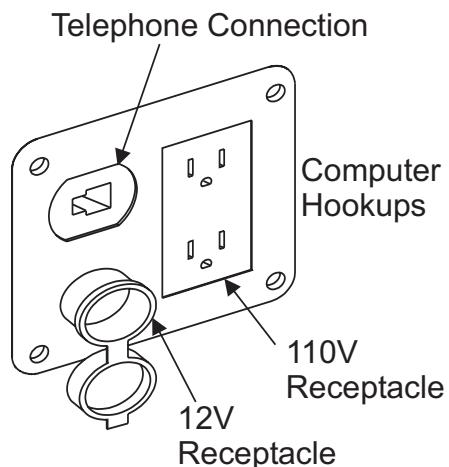
Troubleshooting TV Reception with Amplifier Installed:

- Check the domestic battery for correct voltage. The antenna booster receives power from the domestic fuse block inside the coach.
- Check the fuse from the grey wire.
- If there is no picture or the picture is weak, be sure the antenna is working. If it is working and the picture is weak, an amplifier may not improve the signal.
- Check for 12 Volt DC and correct polarity on the input lines. Make sure the coax fitting and center wire are making contact at the antenna and the amplifier.

Troubleshooting the Coax Wire:

Weak or no picture can indicate a possible shorted or open coax. The coax cable is made of two conductors. A center conductor which is usually copper and the ground which is woven or braided aluminum. The "die-electric" insulating material separates the two conductors. The ground and center conductors are to remain electrically separate from one another. When installing a metal end onto a coax cable, use care so none of the woven ground strands comes in contact with the center conductor. A continuity tester is required to test a suspected fault in a coax wire. Unscrew both ends of the suspected bad coax run, with the continuity tester check between the center conductor and the outside threaded ring. If continuity is present, the coax is shorted. To test for an open connection of a particular coax run use one test lead and touch the threaded end of the coax. With the other test lead, touch the threaded ring at the opposite end. Continuity should be present. Perform the same test procedure on the center conductor. Proper electrical coax operation should indicate continuity from the center conductor at one end to center conductor at other end. Continuity should be present between each coax terminal end. There should be no continuity between the terminal end and center conductor. Though damage does not usually occur from a shorted or open coax cable, picture quality is compromised.

The motorhome is equipped with cable TV and telephone hook-ups, located in the electrical service center. For convenience, there are auxiliary outlets located at the co-pilot seat and on the optional computer desk. This connection is set up for a telephone or laptop computer.



Hook-ups - TV Cable, Computer & Telephone

The motorhome has a length of $\frac{3}{4}$ inch conduit added to allow for the installation of an after-market satellite dish.

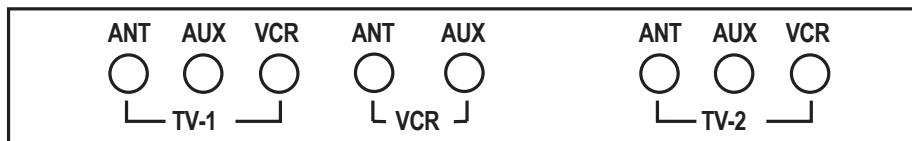
One end of the conduit is in the front overhead on the curbside. The prewire will consist of a $\frac{3}{4}$ inch flexible conduit also, a telephone hook-up will also be provided for Pay-Per-View accessibility.

When securing a satellite system the length of the fasteners should not extend further than 1" into the roof surface of the motorhome. Damage to other wiring may occur. Seal all holes in the roof surface with a suitable sealant.

DSS Conduit Prewire (Optional)

The motorhome may be equipped with a video selector box located in the overhead cabinet. The selector box receives video and audio signals from three different sources: the roof mounted antenna, shore cable (auxiliary) or the optional VCR. The video selector box directs the signals to either the front or the optional bedroom TV, and directs the signal from shore cable or the roof-mounted antenna to the VCR. The selector box switches are divided into three groups: TV1 (front TV), TV2 (rear TV) and the VCR. Both the TV1 and TV2 button groups perform the same functions. For example: To watch the front TV (TV1) from the antenna, press the ANT button in the TV1 group. This will direct the signal from the antenna to the front TV.

Video Selector Box (Optional)



To Watch the Front TV:

- Using the antenna, press the **ANT** button in the **TV1** group.
- Using the shore cable, press the **AUXILIARY** button in the **TV1** group.
- Using the VCR, turn the TV to channel **3** and press the **VCR** button in the **TV1** group.

To Watch the REAR TV - (Optional):

- Using the antenna, press the **ANT** button in the **TV2** group.
- Using the shore cable, press the **AUXILIARY** button in the **TV2** group.
- Using the VCR, turn the TV to channel **3** and press the **VCR** button in the **TV2** group.



NOTE: When watching TV by using the VCR (such as playing a tape) make sure the TV is tuned to channel 3.

Using the VCR - (Optional):

- With the antenna, press the **ANT** button in the **VCR** group.
- With the shore cable, press the **AUXILIARY** button in the **VCR** group.

Tips

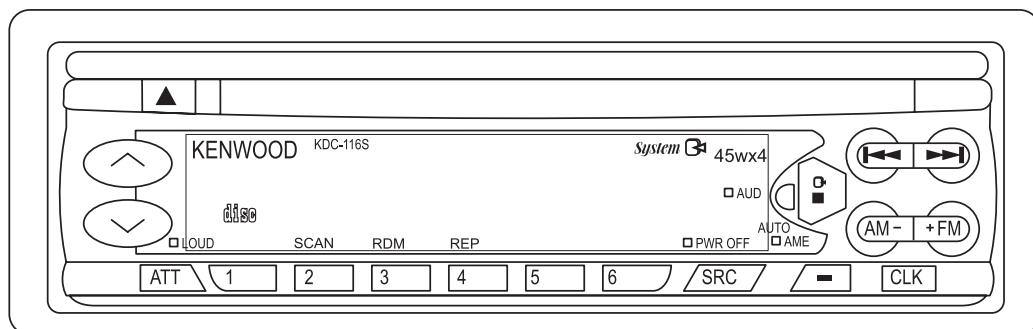
1. If the picture is weak and the antenna boost is working, try moving the motorhome a few feet forward or backwards.
2. If it is weak or has no picture, check the video selector box to make sure the proper mode button has been selected.
3. If the signal is still weak it may be a shorted or open coax. The coax cable is made up of two conductors: A center conductor, (usually copper) and the ground (woven or braided aluminum). There is insulating material that separates the two conductors known as the die-electric. The ground and center conductor are to remain separate from one another. When installing a metal end onto the coax cable, use care so that none of the woven ground strands come in contact with the center conductor. A continuity tester is used to test for a suspected bad coax wire run. Unscrew both ends of the suspected bad coax run, and use the continuity

tester to check between the center conductor and outside threaded ring. If continuity is present, the coax is shorted. To test for an open connection of a particular coax run, touch each end of the coax's ground or center conductor using the tester leads.

Continuity should be present. For proper operation there should be continuity from one end to the other of both the ground and center conductor. No continuity should be between the ground and center conductor. Though damage does not usually occur from a shorted or open coax cable, picture quality is compromised.

The dash radio is a tuner and a compact disc player. It holds up to eighteen preset FM stations and six AM stations. Other features are an attenuate mode; loudness control, a clock and auto seek tuning. The compact disc player features are fast forward and reverse, random track play, repeat and pause. The radio power can be turned off from two different locations.

RADIO - DASH



Operation:

Prior to utilizing the dash radio, comply with all of the following required conditions.

- Turn **ON** the house battery disconnect switch.
- Turn **ON** the house, battery cut-off switch, located at entry door.
- Turn **ON** the radio power switch at the dash panel.

Function of Features:

- **Volume** - Use the **Volume Control** arrows to increase or decrease volume.
- **Clock Set/Adjust** - Press and hold the **CLK** button for three seconds. The clock display will flash. The **AM/FM** buttons are pressed for the hour indication. Pressing either the **AM/FM** button selects the desired hour. The **LEFT** and **RIGHT arrow** buttons selects the desired minutes. Pressing the **CLK** button again starts the clock.

Tips:

1. If the radio does not function, check the house battery cut-off switch to make sure it is on. Check either of the radio power switches at the dash panel.
2. The LCD display may become difficult to read at temperatures at or below 41° F.

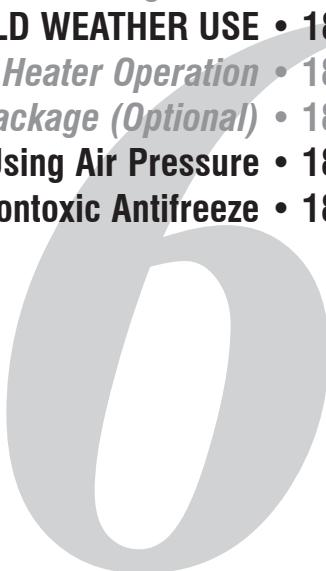


For detailed information and operating instructions on the stereo and CD player system, refer to the manufacturer's manual. Additional and detailed information for the dash radio functions and operations can be found in the Owner's Information File Box.

KNIGHT

SECTION 6
WATER SYSTEMS

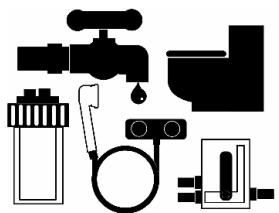
WATER SYSTEMS - General Information	• 169
MONITOR PANEL - Measurement & Calibration	• 169
WATER TANK - FRESH FILL	• 170
WATER TANK - (FRESH) GRAVITY FILL	• 170
WATER - CITY HOOK-UP	• 171
WATER PUMP	• 172
<i>Troubleshooting</i>	• 173
WATER SYSTEM - Troubleshooting	• 174
WATER SYSTEM - Disinfecting Fresh Water	• 174
TANK CAPACITIES - CHART	• 175
WASTE WATER SYSTEMS - <i>Drain & Sewage Tanks</i>	• 176
<i>Black Tank Flush</i>	• 176
<i>Sewer Hose</i>	• 176
<i>Proper Waste Disposal</i>	• 177
<i>What Not to Put in Waste Holding Tanks</i>	• 178
<i>TOILET</i>	• 178
<i>Operating Instructions</i>	• 178
<i>Cleaning</i>	• 179
<i>Maintenance</i>	• 179
<i>What to Put into the Holding Tanks - Black Water Tank</i>	• 180
<i>What to Put into the Holding Tanks - Grey Water Tank</i>	• 180
<i>Drain Traps & Auto Vents</i>	• 180
<i>Draining the Waste Holding Tanks</i>	• 181
<i>COLD WEATHER USE</i>	• 182
<i>Bay Heater Operation</i>	• 182
<i>Cold Weather Package (Optional)</i>	• 183
<i>WINTERIZING - Using Air Pressure</i>	• 183
<i>WINTERIZING - Using Nontoxic Antifreeze</i>	• 185



This section contains information and knowledge for the operation and care of the various water system equipment found in the motorhome. The motorhome is equipped with two separate water systems. Optional water equipment will also be discussed, so not all information may be applicable to the motorhome. More detailed information with **CAUTION** or **WARNING** instructions for the various equipment, other than what is found in this section, can be found in the manufacturer's manual in the owner information box.

It is hard to imagine how much water is used by the average person everyday. Newcomers to a self-contained motorhome soon discover water does not last very long unless consumption is drastically reduced. For example, less water can be used for showering if the shower is turned off while soaping down, then turned back on to rinse. This way a good shower uses a couple gallons of water or less. There is plenty of water to meet personal needs once habits are adjusted.

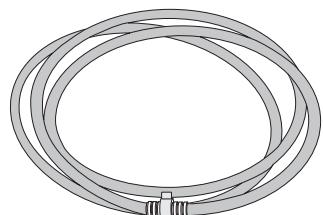
WATER SYSTEMS General Information



Fresh Water System:

The fresh water system consists of: fresh water tank, water pump, pressure accumulator tank, Manabloc Plumbing Manifold, gravity fill connection, water filters and a city/fresh water connection.

Use the water hose that is marked for potable water use only. Care of the hose is a must. After each use, drain the water hose and coil the hose neatly. Attach the ends together to keep dirt, debris and insects out of the hose.

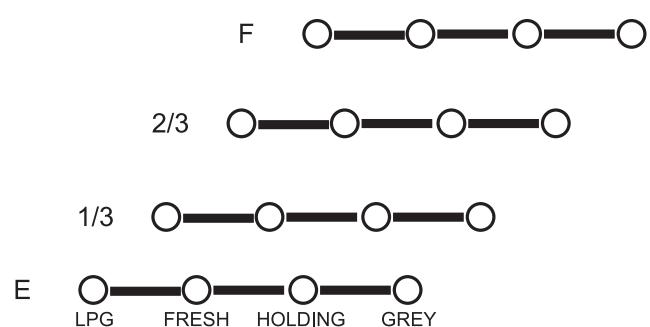


Waste Water System:

The waste water system consists of: a waste holding tank (grey water), a sewage holding tank (black water), flush system, toilet and drains.

The motorhome is equipped with a monitor panel to aide in managing the storage tanks. The monitor panel will be located in a main Status Monitor Panel in the hallway area. The switch marked **TEST** is a momentary switch which requires being held down while testing the level of the storage tanks. Read the scale for the desired storage tank that is to be monitored. Each scale uses colored lights along with a corresponding scale reading. The lights and scale indications are as follows:

- Green lamps indicate good or normal ranges.
- Amber lamps indicate fair or partial ranges.
- Red lamps indicate full or empty ranges (depending on the scale), which are in the critical range.



MONITOR PANEL Measurement & Calibration

Lamp indication voltages are as follows:

- 6.0-VDC E lamp illuminates under 6.0-VDC lamp off.
- Over 11.2-VDC the 1/3 lamp extinguishes.
- Over 11.9-VDC the 2/3 lamp extinguishes.
- Under 12.7-VDC the F lamp extinguishes.
- All voltages have a +/- 5% tolerance.

WATER TANK - FRESH WATER FILL

- Connect a potable water hose to city/fresh water hook-up located in the service center on the roadside of the motorhome.
- Turn the city water/tank fill valve to the fresh water tank/open position.
- Turn on the water supply.
- The water pump should be in the OFF position.
- When the water tank is full water will flow out the vent opening of the gravity fill compartment. Shut the water supply off as soon as possible.



NOTE: When connecting the motorhome to fresh water be sure to use a hose manufactured and labeled for potable water to ensure that the hose will not flavor the water. Monitor the tank filling process at all times. Use the inside monitor panel as a tank fill guide.

WATER TANK - (FRESH) GRAVITY FILL



The gravity fill inlet allows fluids to be introduced directly into the fresh water tank. When dry camping water can be poured directly from a container into the fresh water tank. The gravity fill inlet can be used to pour disinfecting solution into the fresh water tank or when using potable RV antifreeze to winterize the fresh water system. Use only potable water sources, solutions and delivery systems when using the gravity fill inlet.

Filling the Tank:

1. Unscrew fill cap taking care to keep cap and inlet clean.
2. Insert potable water hose into inlet.
3. Fill tank until water overflows from inlet.



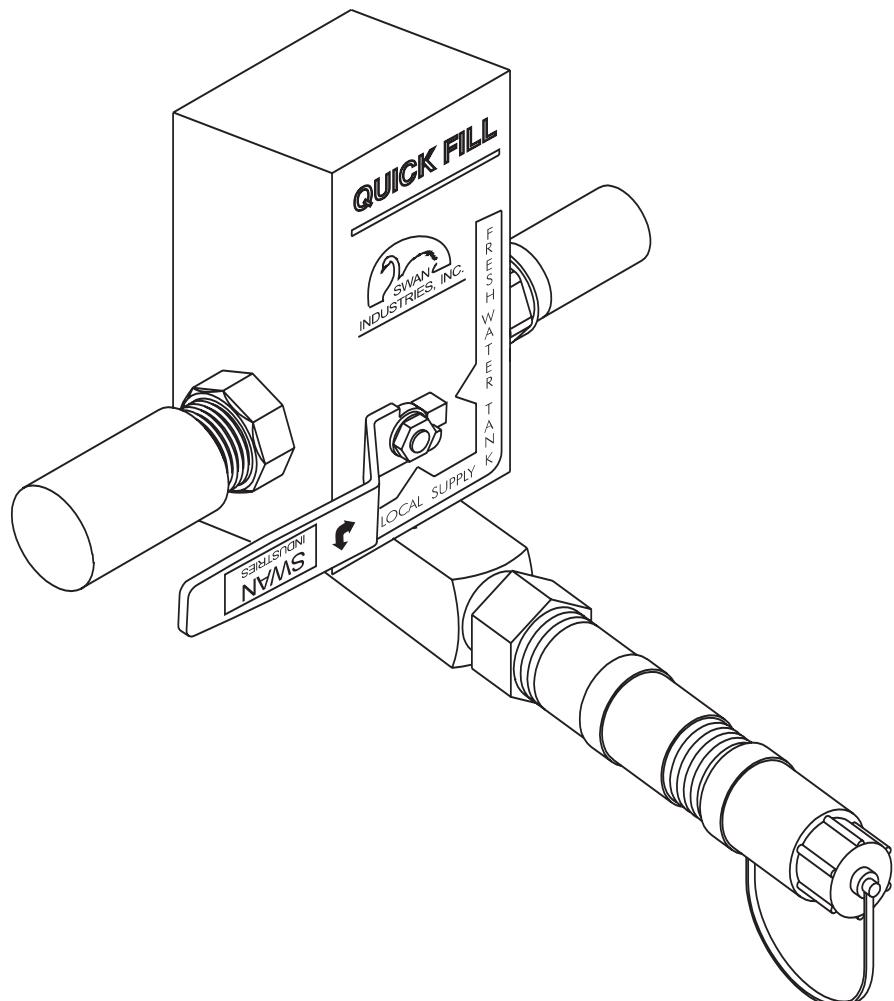
NOTE: When filling tank do not leave hose unattended.

WATER - CITY HOOK-UP

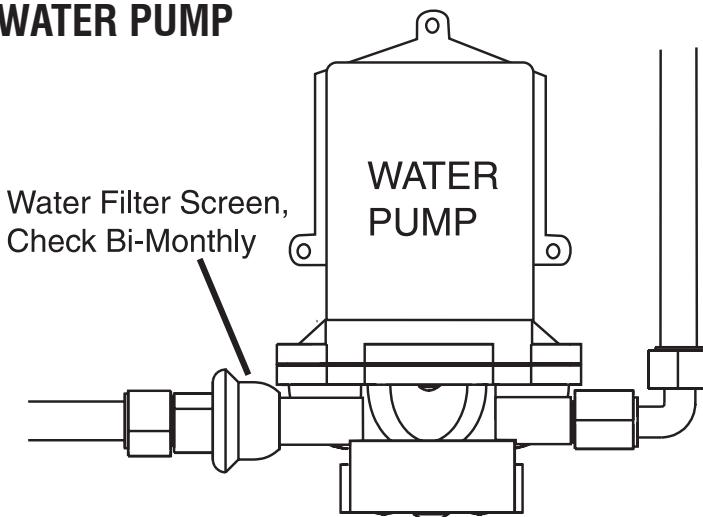
- Connect a potable water hose to the city water hook-up located in service center on the roadside of motorhome.
- Turn the city water/tank fill valve to the city water/closed position.
- Turn on the water supply.
- The water pump can either be off or on. It will not affect the water pump to leave it on.
- The city water hook-up in the service center has a built in pressure regulator and one way check valve. The pressure regulator limits the water pressure to approximately 45 lbs.



CAUTION: Some outside water sources develop high water pressure, particularly in mountainous regions. High water pressure is anything over 55 psi (pounds per square inch). Excessive water pressure may cause leaks in water lines and/or damage the water heater. An additional pressure regulator should be connected to the city water faucet to regulate the pressure to the potable water hose. Excess pressure on a hot day can cause the water hose to swell and burst.



WATER PUMP



The water pump pressurizes the fresh water system when the motorhome is not connected to city water. The water pump is totally automatic and self-priming, operating on demand as water is used. The pressure equalizer tank relieves the water pump from cycling when a small amount of water is used. The water pump is located in a storage compartment of the motorhome.

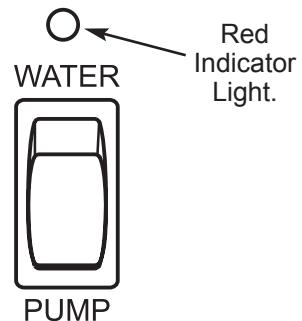


WARNING: Before leaving your coach for extended periods of time (i.e. overnight or longer) be sure that the city water and all water pumps have been turned off. Damage from neglect will be the responsibility of the owner, not the manufacturer.

The water pump may be operated from this location:

- The monitor panel.

To turn the water pump **ON** or **OFF**, momentarily press the water pump switch. The indicator lamp will illuminate when the water pump is turned **ON**.



CAUTION: Do not continue water pump operation when the fresh water holding tank is empty. Damage to the water pump or electrical supply system may result.

To start pump after unhooking city water supply, or first time use, proceed as follows:

- Fill the fresh water tank.
- Open all valves and faucets except the drain valves. This includes hot and cold water valves, all faucets and shower.
- Turn the water pump on and wait for the water lines and the hot water tank to fill.
- Close each faucet when it delivers a steady stream of water (cold water faucets first).

Vibration induced by road conditions can cause the plumbing or pump hardware to loosen. Check for system components that are loose. Many symptoms can be resolved by tightening the hardware. Check the following items:

Troubleshooting

The water pump will not start/blows the fuse:

- Check the electrical connections, fuse or breaker, main switch and ground connection.
- Check the electrical connections at the latching controller.
- Is voltage present at the pressure switch? Bypass the pressure switch.
- Is the latching controller grounding the water pump?
- Check the charging system for correct voltage and good ground.
- Check for an open or grounded circuit or motor.
- Check for seized or locked diaphragm assembly (water frozen).

The water pump will not prime/sputters: (No discharge/motor runs):

- Is the strainer clogged with debris?
- Is there water in the tank or has air collected in the hot water heater?
- Is the inlet tubing/plumbing sucking in air at plumbing connections (vacuum leak)?
- Check for proper voltage with the pump operating.
- Look for debris in the pump inlet/outlet valves or dry/swollen valves.
- Check the pump housing for cracks or loose drive assembly screws.

The water pump will not shut-off/runs when the faucet is closed:

- Check to see if the fresh water tank fill valve is completely closed.
- Check output side (pressure) plumbing for leaks and inspect for a leaky toilet or valves.
- Look for loose drive assembly or pump head screws.
- Are the valves or the internal check valve held open by debris or is the rubber swollen?

The water pump is noisy or rough in operation:

- Check for plumbing which may have vibrated loose.
- Does the mounting surface multiply noise (flexible)?
- Check for mounting feet that are loose or compressed too tight.
- Look for loose pump head to motor screws.

The water pump is rapid cycling:

- Look for restrictive plumbing/flow restrictors in the faucets or shower heads.

WATER SYSTEM - **Troubleshooting**

Water system problems and leaks usually fall into two categories: system problems and problems caused by improper use or lack of attention. These problems stem from improper winterizing, poor maintenance, road vibration and campsite water pressure variations. Check all plumbing connections for leaks at least once a year. If the water pump runs when a faucet is not open, check for a water leak. If a water line or fitting is leaking, tighten the fitting. Have the leak repaired before returning the supply line to service.



NOTE: A small water leak can cause severe water damage. Shut off the water supply and have the leak repaired.

If the hot water appears not to be heating to factory set temperature, check the faucet sprayer knobs located at the service center. Both faucets must be in the **OFF** position when not in use.

In addition, opening the city water/tank fill valve with the water pump off will remove all water line pressure within the motorhome.

WATER SYSTEM - **Disinfecting** **Fresh Water**

Disinfecting the water system with chlorine bleach (superchlorination) protects the drinking water from bacterial or viral contamination that may come from any common water source.

Disinfect the Water System:

- If the motorhome is new.
- If the motorhome has not been used in a long time.
- Every **three** months.



NOTE: An independently operated water pump with garden hose connections and a container to hold prepared solution may be desired to perform this task. The gravity fill may also be used to perform the task. Remove cap off the gravity fill. Add the solution to the fresh water tank. When finished, secure the gravity fill cap.

Use the following procedures to disinfect water system:

- Prepare a chlorine bleach solution using 1 gallon water and 1/4 cup of chlorine bleach. Use 1 gallon of solution for every 15 gallons of tank capacity. Example: Add 2-2/3 gallons solution to a 40 gallon tank. Add 4-2/3 gallons solution to a 70 gallon tank. Add 6-2/3 gallons to 100 gallon tank. This mixture puts a 50 ppm (parts per million) disinfecting solution in the water system. This concentration will act as a quick-kill dosage for harmful bacteria, viruses and slime-forming organisms. Concentrations higher than 50 ppm may damage the water lines and/or tanks.
- Drain the fresh water tank. Close the drain and pump the solution (if desired) into the fresh water tank using an independently operated pump and a garden hose connected to City Water Hook-Up on the water control panel. It can be poured into the fresh tank using the gravity fill and a funnel. Run the water until you smell a distinct chlorine bleach odor.
- Allow the system to stand for four hours.
- Drain the system and flush with fresh water. The drain is located in the outside water service compartment. Install new water filters. Thoroughly flush with fresh water until no chlorine bleach taste or smell is detected in the water system.

TANK CAPACITIES - CHART

Water Tank Capacities	30PBD	32PBD	34PBD	36PBS	36PBD	38PBD	38PBT
Water Heater	6 gal.	10 gal.	10 gal.	10 gal.	10 gal.	10 gal.	10 gal.
Grey Tank	52 gal.						
Black Tank	52 gal.						
Fresh Tank	80 gal.						



NOTE: This chart reflects product specifications available at the time of printing. Therefore any floor plans introduced thereafter may not be reflected in the chart. All other information contained throughout the manual will still apply.

WASTE WATER SYSTEMS

Drain & Sewage Tanks

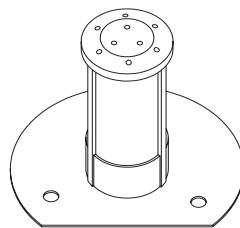
The waste drain system provides adequate and safe storage and/or discharge of waste materials. The drain system uses ABS plastic piping and fittings connected to sinks, shower, toilet and holding tanks draining to an outside termination. The motorhome should be reasonably level for optimum operation of the systems. The wastewater holding system consists of a wastewater holding tank (grey tank). The grey water tank stores the sink, shower and clothes washer drain water. A sewage holding tank (black tank) stores waste from the toilet only.

Drain valves and a tank flush system dispose waste through a common termination. Each holding tank has a separate drain valve dumping the waste water (grey water) and sewage (black water) through a common single discharge outlet. The tank drain valves are located service center on the roadside. Use the water monitor panel to observe tank levels. When ready to drain the tanks, drain the sewage tank first. Next, flush the black tank with the flush system. Drain the grey water tank. Using this sequence helps flush solids from the sewer hose. When traveling, it is recommended both holding tanks be empty or less than half full.

Black Tank Flush



Tank Flush Valve.



The motorhome comes equipped with a power flush system to aid in cleaning the holding tank. The power flush nozzle, located in the black tank (curbside), helps reduce solid build-up. Use the tank flush each drain cycle. Failure to thoroughly rinse the tank each drain cycle may result in solids accumulating and a clogged spray nozzle.

The flush system water hook-up is located in the service center. When using the flush system the sewer hose must be connected and the black tank dump valve open.



WARNING: When using the black tank flush, do not leave the motorhome unattended. Flooding may occur. The sewage tank flush system should be used each time the black water holding tank is dumped. Failure to routinely use the sewage flush system will result in a clogged spray nozzle. Turn off the water supply to the black tank flush when finished.

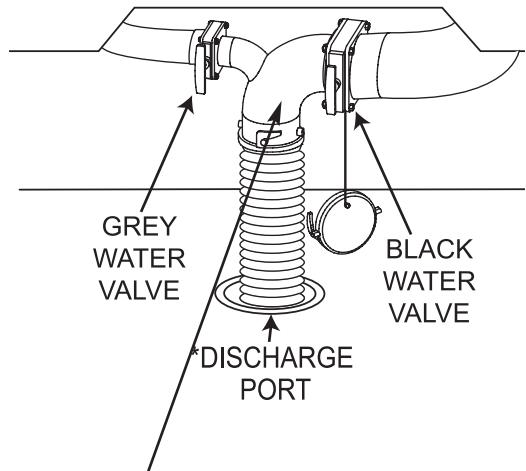
Sewer Hose

A flexible three inch sewer hose attaches between the termination drain and the shore facility. Sewer hoses usually come in 10 or 20 foot lengths. The sewer hose is stored in a tube accessed through a compartment door on the roadside next to the drain valves. The shore fitting for the sewer hose may be three or four inch pipe, which could be male or female thread. Another possibility may be a four inch pipe, with no threads, covered by a metal plate. There are many configurations. Different style adapters are available to fit most configurations. Hose ladders may also be purchased to support the hose.

It is important that the hose remains secure. Always tighten clamps and restraining devices before use. Lay the hose inline between the termination outlet and the shore fitting. Restrain the hose to prevent movement during use. Wear protective and/or disposable gloves when handling the sewer hose.

To attach the Sewer Hose:

1. Remove sewer hose from carrier.
2. Remove termination cap. Align coupler tangs with termination tabs. Twist the coupler clockwise 90° locking coupler to termination outlet.
3. Attach the other end of the hose to the drain service. Restrain hose to prevent movement during use.
4. Grasp with both hands and rotate downward to align hose with ***discharge port**.
5. Open the (small) grey water valve.



The (large) black water valve remains closed until the tank is full or until time of departure. This will help prevent accumulation of solids. Use the outside faucet or shower attachment for washing or rinsing.



NOTE: Lubricate the O-ring on the sewer hose adapter periodically with silicone spray. Use care when connecting the sewer hose adapter to the termination outlet in cold weather.

Most State Parks have strict regulations about discharging wastes except into authorized disposal systems. Dumping raw sewage from toilet holding tanks, except at authorized dumping stations, is universally prohibited.

Most National, State and private parks have either a central dump facility or campsite hook-up for sewage. Many of the modern rest areas along the interstate now have dump stations available. You will find a list of dumping stations from coast to coast in Woodall's Campground Directory, Trailer Life's RV Campgrounds and Services Directory, Rand McNally's Campground and Trailer Park Guide, Good Sam Park Director (Good Sam Club), and other similar publications. Some major oil companies offer dump facilities at selected stations. With a little planning you will find few inconveniences in proper and legal disposal of holding tank waste.

Proper Waste Disposal

What Not to Put in Waste Holding Tanks

- Do not use strong or full strength detergents to deodorize and disinfect. Use odor control chemicals made especially for holding tanks.
- Do not put automotive antifreeze, ammonia, alcohol or acetone in holding tanks. Some chemicals will dissolve plastic.
- Do not put large table scraps in the tanks. They could be stuck in or damage the valve seals.
- Do not flush facial tissues. They are treated chemically to strengthen them and will not dissolve like toilet paper. Special holding tank tissues are available at most RV supply stores.
- Household tissues are thicker, softer and stronger than a rapidly dissolving tissue. White toilet paper dissolves faster than colored papers.



NOTE: Never dispose of sanitary napkins or other non-dissolving items into the system. Facial tissue, wet strength tissue, paper towels or an excessive amount of toilet tissue can create clogging in the holding tank system.

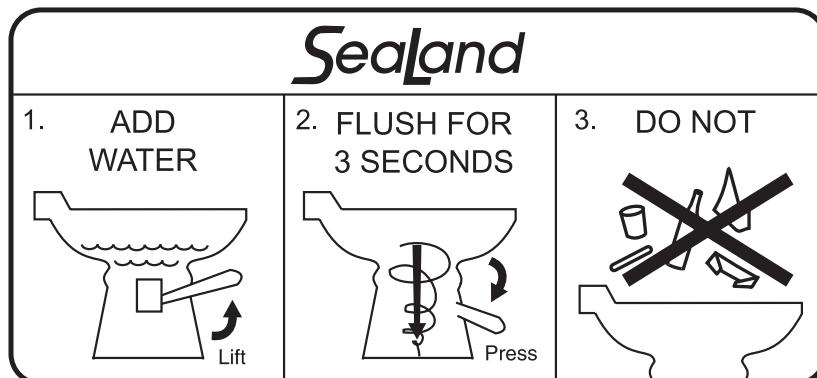
A simple test to determine a tissue's dissolving ability is to immerse one square into a jar of water. Shake five times to determine if the tissue disintegrates into pieces or remains in one piece. Any type of tissue remaining in one piece should not be used.



CAUTION: Do not use any products that contain petroleum distillate or ammonia in place of RV odor controlling chemicals. Petroleum distillate or ammonia will damage the ABS plastic holding tanks and seals.

TOILET - Operating Instructions

The toilet operates from either fresh water tank or city water supply. The water pump must be turned on or the city water connected. The toilet flushes directly into a sewage holding tank (black water).

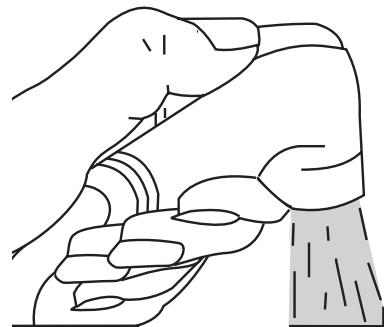


- To add water to the toilet before using, lift the flush lever until the desired water level is reached. Generally, more water is required only when flushing solids.
- To flush the toilet, push the lever all the way down until the sewage leaves the toilet. The water flow pressures vary at different locations; therefore, holding the flush lever down for five to eight seconds may be required. We recommend 2-gpm flow for proper rim and bowl wash.

- To operate the remote mounted hose sprayer, push down the foot pedal lever and hold it. Release the flush lever by allowing it to snap back, which permits positive sealing around the flush ball. A small amount of water should remain in bowl.



NOTE: Holding flush lever down longer than necessary results in excessive water usage.



The toilet should be cleaned regularly for maximum sanitation and operational efficiency. Clean the toilet bowl with a mild bathroom cleaner. Do not use chlorine or caustic chemicals, such as drain opening types, as they will damage the seals.

Clean out the system by flushing several gallons of fresh water through with one cup of dry laundry detergent. Add odor control deodorant, in the amount specified for the holding tank capacity, after cleaning and every few days during use.

Cleaning

To find leaks, check behind or under toilet. Take four or five sheets of toilet tissue and wipe all the seams and water line connections. Start at the top of the unit and work downward. When the tissue comes in contact with leaking water it will immediately change texture.

Maintenance

NOTE: If the motorhome is in storage for six months it is a good idea to spray silicone on the toilet valve and work it back and forth. Perform this maintenance monthly (silicone will evaporate in about 30 days).

Leaks:

- Back of toilet: Check water supply line connection.
- Between closet flange and toilet: Check screws for tightness. If leak continues, remove toilet and check flange height. Adjust, if necessary, to 7/16" above floor. Replace flange seal if damaged.
- Poor flush: A good flush should be obtained within two to three seconds. If problem persists remove the water supply line and check flow rate. The flow rate should be at least ten quarts (9.5 liters) per minute.
- Bowl will not hold water: Check for foreign material in valve blade groove in the flush drain.



NOTE: Most chemical mixtures for holding tank odor control are poisonous. Follow the product manufacturer's directions and warnings when using any holding tank additive.

What to Put into the Holding Tanks - Black Water Tank

Holding Tank Chemicals:

Before using the toilet, treat the sewage holding tank with water mixed with an odor-controlling chemical. These chemicals are readily available at any RV supply store. Pour the chemicals into the holding tank through the toilet. Add approximately three gallons of water to the holding tank first. Next, mix the chemicals, in accordance with the manufacturers instructions, with approximately one gallon of water. Pour mixture through toilet to the holding tank. Be careful not to spill the chemical on your hands, clothing, toilet bowl or carpet as it can cause a permanent stain. Extremely hot weather areas may require adjusted amounts of chemical to help with odor control. Repeat the chemical pre-charge to the holding tank each time the tank is cycled.



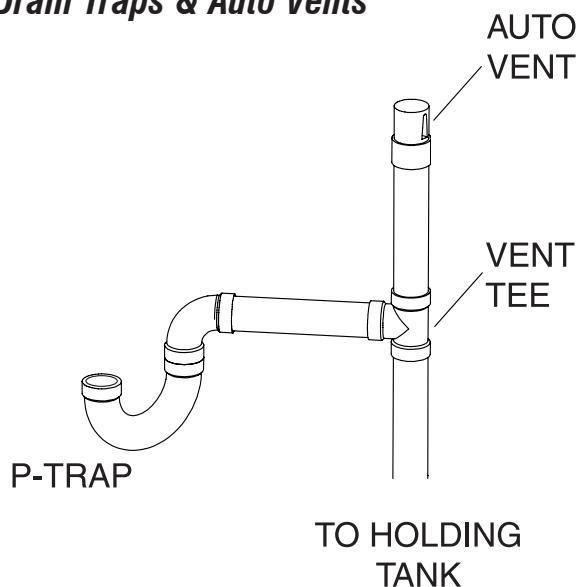
CAUTION: Do not use any products that contain petroleum distillate or ammonia in place of RV odor controlling chemical. Petroleum distillate or ammonia will damage the ABS plastic holding tanks and seals.

What to Put into the Holding Tanks - Grey Water Tank

The grey water waste tank stores the sink, shower and clothes washer drain water. No chemical is required in this holding tank; however, a waste holding tank can produce odors. A reduced mixture of chemicals can help with odor control.

Be sure there is enough liquid in the holding tanks prior to dumping the waste holding tanks. This provides a smooth flow through the valve, drain pipe and drain hose. When cycling the tank with sufficient liquid, a swirling action should remove accumulated solid wastes along with the waste liquid. Empty the sewage tank weekly to prevent stagnation and overfilling.

Drain Traps & Auto Vents



Sinks, shower and clothes washer drains incorporate a water trap or "P-trap" and auto vents to prevent waste water holding tank odor from entering the motorhome. These P-traps are usually within 54" of a vent tee. These traps must have water in them to block odors.

During storage water can evaporate and allow odor into motorhome. If odor is detected run water into sinks, shower and clothes washer to fill drain traps. The auto vent by design is to assist in the flow of water in the drain lines. They enable a smooth flow of water in the drain without creating a vacuum.

If the auto vent is stuck in the open position, grey odors may enter the motorhome. Auto vents double as "clean outs" in case the line has to be "snaked" out.



NOTE: Most chemical mixtures for holding tank odor control are poisonous. Follow the product manufacturer's directions and warnings when using any holding tank additive.



NOTE: During cold weather antifreeze must be added to the drain traps.

1. Before dumping the black tank, first close the grey water valve.
2. Fill grey tank to at least 50% by running water in the shower or sinks.
3. Use the monitor panel to observe tank fluid levels. When the grey tank is 50% full stop filling the tank.
4. Open the black water valve. Allow the black tank to drain.
5. Use the tank flush system.
6. Connect a non-potable water hose, with pressure regulator, to the flush system fitting.
7. Turn on the faucet allowing water to rinse the black tank at least three minutes. Never operate the system unattended. The water should flow freely though the drain hose.
8. When complete, turn off the faucet and close the black water valve.
9. Open the grey water valve. The water in the grey tank flushes any remaining solids from the hose. With the grey water valve open, run two gallons of water down any drain to flush the grey tank. The grey valve remains open until the next drain cycle or departure.



WARNING: Never operate the flush system unattended. Flooding may occur. Use the tank flush system each time the holding tanks are cycled. Failure to routinely use the flush system will result in a clogged spray nozzle. Turn off the water supply when finished flushing the tank.

10. If preparing for travel, close both the valves. Undo any restraining devices from the hose. Disconnect the hose from the termination outlet by rotating the fitting counterclockwise 90°.
11. Raise hose and drain using hand over hand method working hose towards shore fitting. Rinse the hose with outside facility and repeat the hose drain process.
12. Remove the hose from shore fitting. Install hose in carrier and lock door. Secure the termination cap (required by law in some states).
13. If desired, add chemicals to the tanks to control odor. Follow the chemical manufacturer's directions.



NOTE: Dump the black tank before driving the motorhome.

Draining the Waste Holding Tanks

COLD WEATHER USE

A motorhome is not designed for extended use in below freezing (32° F/0° C) weather; however, problems may not occur as long as the temperature does not drop too low. Interior water lines, fixtures, water storage tanks and pumps are normally protected from moderate freezing temperatures as long as the furnace is operating. Exposed drains may freeze quickly. If in doubt about what temperatures the motorhome will tolerate, winterize with a potable antifreeze. The exterior water control bay has a 12 Volt electric heater to warm the bay during cold weather. The heater should be turned on when the ambient temperature approaches 44° F.

Storage:

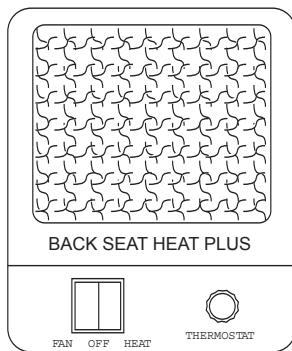
If the motorhome is stored where freezing temperatures may occur, drain the domestic fresh water loop completely of water. When draining the domestic fresh water system start off by draining the fresh water tank by opening the point drain lever for the fresh tank and allowing the water to drain.



NOTE: Ice makers, water filters, water purifiers and water heaters all use domestic water and should be drained and stored in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendation for winterization.

The method chosen to winterize the motorhome and water lines is up to the motorhome owner. The lines can be air blown to remove standing water or the lines can be filled with an approved FDA RV antifreeze. Either way, all interior and exterior faucets need to be opened and closed, one at a time, to be checked. All low point drains should be opened and the holding tanks emptied.

Bay Heater Operation



The heater is controlled using two switches. One switch is located on the heater itself and one, a remote "SYSTEMS HEAT" switch, is located at the system panel. Both switches must be in **ON** position for the heater to operate. Either switch, turned in the **OFF** position, will turn the heater off.

Heater Controls:

1. Function Select Switch:
 - Left Position - Fan only ON.
 - Middle Position - Heater OFF.
 - Right Position - Both fan and heater ON.
2. Thermostat:
 - Rotate right or clockwise to increase temperature setting.
 - Rotate left or counterclockwise to reduce temperature setting.

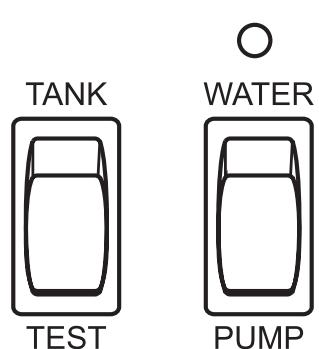


NOTE: When the bay heat remote switch is activated, the bay heater will begin operation at approximately 40°F. The remote switch will illuminate only while the heater is operating. Current draw is approximately 25 Amps. Be sure the motorhome is plugged into shore power to prevent house battery discharge.

The cold weather package consists of one 12 Volt electric heating pad attached to each holding tank. Heating pads are turned on and off using the same "SYSTEMS HEAT" switch, located in an inside overhead compartment next to entrance door, that turns on the bay heater.

The tank heater is a total contact heater. A large surface area on the holding tanks is heated so it will be protected from freezing. The heater will replace the heat that is lost from the tanks when the outside temperature decreases. As the outside temperature decreases, the liquid and solid waste in the holding tanks will lose heat and start to freeze. When the waste and liquid freeze, the drainage system will be blocked and the holding tanks can not be dumped. The problem is eliminated with the tank heater. Holding tank heaters by design will prevent the contents from freezing in below freezing temperatures. The tank heater is thermostatically controlled, automatically turning "ON" at 44° F and turning "OFF" at 64° F. Power to pads should be turned ON when ambient temperature approach 44° F. There must be liquid in the holding tanks when the pads are turned on.

Cold Weather Package (Optional)



Specification of the Tank Heater:

The tank heater requires 13.6 Volts DC with 5.9 Amps input power. The output will be 80.7 watts with 275.8 BTU's. The area of the tank that is heated is 156 sq. in.



CAUTION: Turn OFF power to pads when dumping the holding tanks, plugging motorhome into shore power and when starting the electric generator to prevent damage to the pad thermostat.

To winterize the motorhome using air pressure, an air compressor and adapter will need to be accessed to connect the airline to the water system. Adapters can be found at RV supply stores. System pressure should not exceed 50 psi. when hooked to the water lines. Higher pressure will damage the lines.

WINTERIZING - Using Air Pressure

1. If equipped, remove the water filter elements from the filters and reassemble the filters without the elements or install diverter cap.
2. Disconnect any city water fill hose that may be connected to the city water tank fill connection.
3. Dump the waste holding tanks (grey and black).
4. Turn off both LP-Gas and electricity to the water heater tank.
5. Open all interior faucets.
6. If the motorhome has a water heater, when cool, remove the anode or drain plug to drain the internal tank and open the pressure release valve located in the water heater outside compartment.

7. With the water heater bypass valve in the normal position, hook an air hose to the city water connection located on the water control panel in the outside service compartment. Blow out the water lines until no further water can be seen coming out of the drain lines. Do not exceed 50 psi in the water lines and faucets.
8. When the water heater has drained, move the water heater bypass valve to bypass.
9. Open all faucets (including the outside spigot) one at a time, while the air is on, to clear water from the faucet supply lines. Do not forget to drain the shower.
10. While the air is on, hold the spray nozzle (located right next to the toilet) open until the water has quit running. Hold the toilet flush pedal/handle down until the water has stopped running.
11. Drain the fresh water tank by opening the valve located in the outside water control service compartment of the motorhome.
12. Open the low-point drains. Turn knobs to open the drains. Opening the low point drains clears water out of the hot and cold water lines.
13. Momentarily turn the water pump on and allow it to run for 30 seconds so that all water is cleared out of the pump and lines. Turn the pump off.
14. The black tank must be dumped prior to continuing further. Once the black tank has been dumped, unhook the air hose from the city water connection and move to the black flush connection (if equipped). The black dump valve will need to be opened. This clears the water line and flush nozzle.
15. Shut off the air and close all low point drains and dump valves.

For the Drain Traps:

1. Pour 1 pint in both kitchen drains and bath shower drains.
2. Two pints go in bath sink drain with some of antifreeze going into grey tank to protect drain valve.
3. While holding down toilet flush pedal pour another 3 ½ pints into toilet letting antifreeze run into black tank to protect valve located there. Pour last ½ pint of antifreeze into toilet after you have released flush pedal.
4. Use a soft cloth to wipe out the sinks and shower to protect surfaces from antifreeze stains.
5. If the motorhome is equipped with an icemaker, remove the ¾" fitting and flush antifreeze through the water line.
6. Disconnect the power supply line affecting water pump operation.



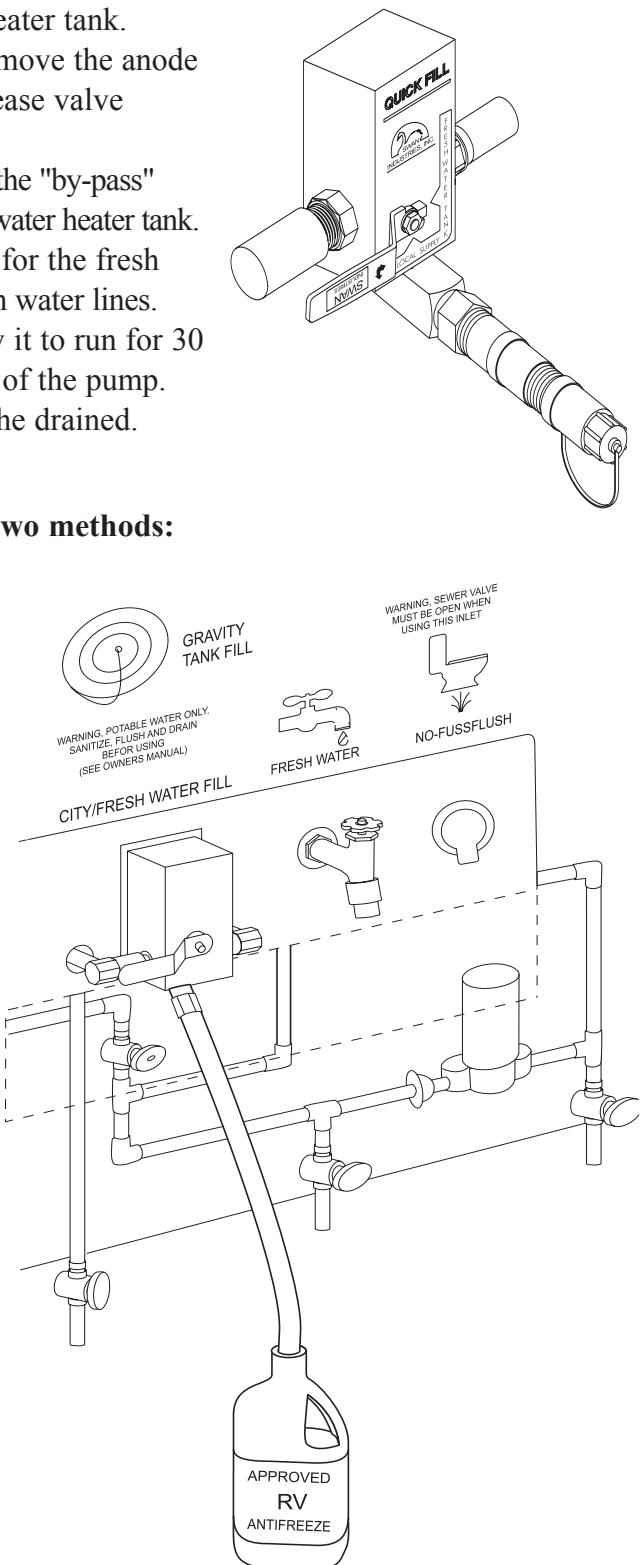
WARNING: When draining the low point hot water drain lines, and the water heater, be sure the water is cool. Hot water from the lines can burn or scald skin.

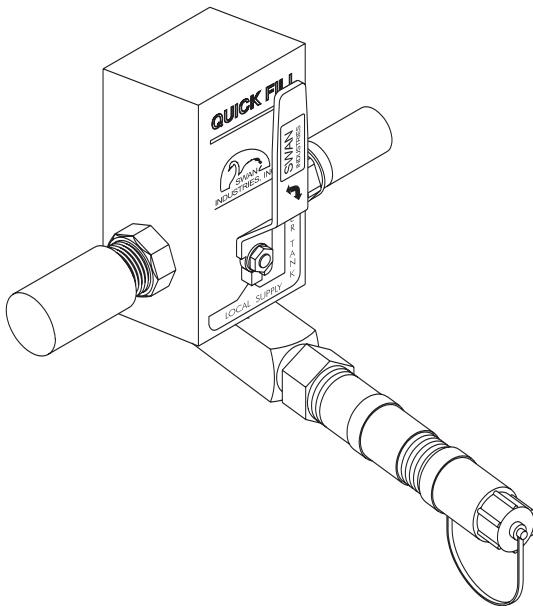
Using nontoxic RV Antifreeze:

1. Disconnect any city water fill hose that may be connected to the city water tank fill connection.
2. If equipped, remove the water filter elements from the filters and reassemble the filters without the elements or install diverter cap.
3. Turn off both LP-Gas and electricity to the water heater tank.
4. If the motorhome has a water heater, when cool, remove the anode to drain the internal tank and open the pressure release valve located in the water heater outside compartment.
5. At the back of the water heater, turn the water valve to the "by-pass" mode to prevent FDA RV antifreeze from entering the water heater tank.
6. Open all faucets, low point drains and drain valves for the fresh water tank, water heater tank, holding tanks and fresh water lines.
7. Let all the water drain. Turn on the pump and allow it to run for 30 seconds to 1 minute so that all water is cleared out of the pump. Ensure all holding tanks and fresh water lines are the drained.
8. Close all faucets drain valves and low point drains.

RV Antifreeze may be added using either of these two methods:

1. Pour the antifreeze into the fresh water tank using the fresh water gravity fill (this will require approximately 10 gallons). Turn ON the system water pump and operate each faucet (hot and cold valves) individually until a small amount of antifreeze is present. Close each valve after antifreeze has reached the valve.
2. Attach a separate hose, not the same as used for potable water, to the connection for city water "tank-fill" (this requires two to three gallons).
 - a. Place the other end of hose in RV antifreeze container.
 - b. Turn handle to "tank-fill" side for water pump to pull water "from" and out through the water line assemblies. Turn off shut-off valve on inlet side of water pump, located behind systems compartment between pump and water tank, to prevent antifreeze from entering the water tank.
 - c. Open inside faucet connections, then turn water pump switch on to begin filling water-line assembly.
 - d. Have another person inside to observe faucets and to turn them off when antifreeze solution has reached faucet.

**WINTERIZING
- Using Nontoxic
Antifreeze**



- e. Open the shower faucets and toilet valve to allow a small amount of antifreeze to run into the holding tanks.
- f. Open the exterior faucet using the same procedure as the interior faucets.
- g. Approximately two gallons of RV antifreeze is required to protect various water drain lines in the motorhome.
- h. After all lines have been filled, insure that all faucets and water pump have been turned off.
- i. Move handle on city water connection to city water "closed" position.

For the Drain Traps:

1. Pour 1 pint in both kitchen drains and bath shower drains
2. Two pints go in bath sink drain with some of antifreeze going into grey tank to protect drain valve.
3. While holding down toilet flush pedal pour another 3 ½ pints into toilet letting antifreeze run into black tank to protect valve located there. Pour last ½ pint of antifreeze into toilet after you have released flush pedal.
4. Use a soft cloth to wipe out the sinks and shower to protect surfaces from antifreeze stains.
5. If the motorhome is equipped with an icemaker, remove the ¾" fitting and flush antifreeze through the water line.
6. Disconnect the power supply line effecting water pump operation.

For de-winterization, repeat procedure except using pressurized city water to "city-water" connection, to flush all lines through the inside faucets. Then use the "tank-fill" side to flush water pump. Fill the fresh tank with water. Reconnect the power supply line for the water pump. Operate all faucets, one at a time, until clear water is present.



WARNING: You should use only non-toxic RV antifreeze that is specifically made for potable water systems. Automotive antifreeze, if ingested, can cause blindness, deafness or death.



WARNING: It is recommended that this procedure be done by a qualified RV service technician familiar with motorhomes, such as an authorized selling dealer.

KNIGHT

SECTION 7
LP-GAS SYSTEMS

LP-GAS SYSTEM	• 189
LP-GAS DETECTOR	• 190
<i>Operation</i>	• 190
<i>Testing</i>	• 190
<i>Alarm</i>	• 191
<i>Care of the Detector</i>	• 191
MONITOR PANEL MEASUREMENT	• 192
CHECKLIST - LP-GAS EMERGENCY PROCEDURES	• 192
LP-GAS TANK CAPACITY	• 193
LP-GAS TANK	• 193
<i>Operation</i>	• 193
<i>LP-Gas Tank Filling</i>	• 194
LP-GAS FUNDAMENTALS	• 195
LP-GAS REGULATOR	• 196
LP-GAS CONSUMPTION	• 197
LP-GAS DISTRIBUTION LINES	• 198
LP-GAS SAFETY TIPS	• 198



LP-GAS SYSTEM

This section contains information and knowledge for the operation and care of the various Liquefied Petroleum (LP-Gas) system equipment found in the motorhome. The motorhome is equipped with several appliances and various equipment which are capable to operate on LP-Gas. Some items discussed may not be applicable to all motorhomes. More detailed information with **CAUTION** or **WARNING** instructions for the various equipment, other than what is found in this section, can be found in the manufacturer's manual in the owner's information box.

All components for the motorhome LP-Gas systems are approved for use in recreational vehicles by a nationally recognized testing laboratory. When properly handled, LP-Gas is a clean-burning dependable fuel for heat producing components. The LP-Gas tank mounted in the motorhome contains liquid petroleum gas which is under high pressure. As the fuel is used, liquid gas vaporizes and passes through the tank valve to a regulator that automatically reduces pressure. Low-pressure gas is then distributed to components through a pipe manifold system.

Component lighting problems are commonly caused by an improperly adjusted gas regulator. Do not attempt to reset the regulator. Adjustments need to be made by a dealer or an authorized service person.

In higher elevations or extreme cold weather (10° F/-21° C or lower) a shortage of LP-Gas may be experienced. Usage can be modified by running only one component at a time. For example, turn off the furnace while using the range. If LP-Gas is going to be used in higher elevations or cold climates for a long period of time, have an authorized service person adjust the LP-Gas regulator for these conditions.

Have the LP-Gas system checked by an authorized dealer at least once a year, and thereafter before every extended trip. Although the manufacturer and the dealer test the system carefully for leakage, travel vibrations can loosen fittings.

Leaks can be easily found by applying a leak detector solution on all connections. Leaks can usually be repaired by tightening the fittings. If not, shut off the main gas valve at the tank. Immediately see a authorized dealer for repairs. Hand tighten the tank valves only. Do not use a wrench or pliers as over tightening may damage valve seats and cause leaks. If a leak is suspected (which can be easily identified by the odor of rotten eggs or sulfur) never light a match, have an open flame or use any spark producing equipment or appliance.



WARNING: LP-Gas is highly volatile and extremely explosive. Do not use matches or a flame to test for leaks. Use only approved LP-Gas leak testing solution for leak detection. Unapproved solutions can damage copper tubing and brass fittings. Never attempt to adjust LP-Gas regulators. Only qualified personnel should perform any maintenance or repair to the LP-Gas system.



LP-GAS DETECTOR



The LP-Gas detector is provided for safety. The gas detector detects both LP-Gas and Methane Gas. Liquefied Petroleum Gas (LP-Gas) is heavier than air and Methane Gas is lighter than air. LP-Gas will settle to the lowest point (generally the floor) of the motorhome. Methane Gas will rise. The LP-Gas detector is also sensitive to fumes such as hairspray, most of which contain butane as a propellant. Butane, like propane, is heavier than air and will settle to the floor level where it will be detected. When this occurs, press the reset button to stop alert sound for 60 seconds and allow the air to clear.

The other detectable vapors include alcohol, liquor, deodorants, colognes, perfumes, wine, adhesives, lacquer, kerosene, gasoline, glues, most of all cleaning agents and propellant of aerosol cans. Most are lighter than air in their vapor state and will only be detected when the motorhome is closed up.

Operation

Upon first application of power the LED will flash **yellow** for three minutes while the detector is stabilizing. At the end of the start cycle the LED will turn **green** indicating full operation. If detector senses unsafe levels of gas it will immediately sound an alarm. The gas detector operates on 12 Volts, with a current draw less than 1/10th of one amp.



CAUTION: The detector will not alarm during the three minute warm up cycle.

Testing

Press the **TEST** switch any time during the warm up cycle or while in normal operation. The LED should flash **red** and the alarm should sound. Release the switch. This is the only way you should test the detector. The test feature checks full operation of the detector.



WARNING: Test the operation of this detector after the motorhome has been in storage, before each trip and at least once per week during use.

The **red** LED will flash and the alarm will sound whenever a dangerous level of propane or methane gas is detected. The detector will continue to alarm until the gas clears or the **MUTE** switch is pressed.

Procedures to Take During an Alarm:

1. Turn off all gas appliances (stove, heaters, furnace). Extinguish all flames and smoking material. Evacuate the motorhome, leaving all doors and windows open.
2. Turn off the propane tank valve.
3. Determine and repair the source of the leak. Contact a qualified service professional if additional repairs are necessary or if the source of the leak cannot be determined.



WARNING: If the alarm sounds and there is no immediate danger open all doors and windows to air out the motorhome. Exit the motorhome and turn off the gas at the LP tank. Do Not re-enter the motorhome until the alarm stops sounding. If the alarm sounds again after the gas is turned back on, turn the gas off. Leave the gas off and contact a qualified service technician to find and repair the leak. Do not re-enter the motorhome until the problem is corrected.

Alarm Mute:

Press the **TEST-MUTE** button when the detector is in alarm.

1. The **red** LED will continue flash and the alarm will beep every 30 seconds until the concentration of LP-Gas has dispersed to a safe level.
2. The LED will flash **green** until the end of the MUTE cycle.
3. If dangerous gas levels return before the end of the MUTE cycle the alarm will beep four times and return to phase 1.
4. After two minutes the detector will return to normal operation (**solid green**) or resound the alarm if dangerous levels of gas remain.

Fault Alarm:

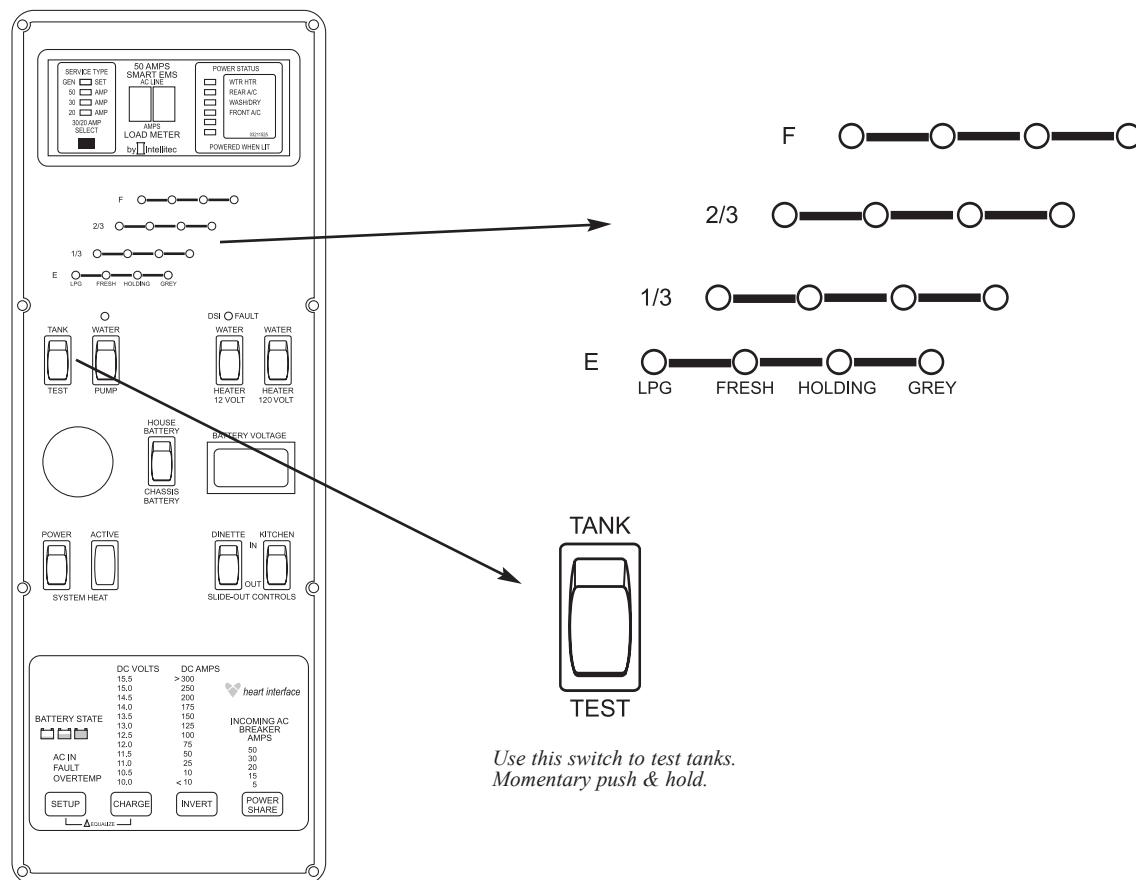
Should the microprocessor sense a fault in the gas detector, a fault alarm will sound twice every 15 seconds. The LED will alternately flash **red** to **green** and the **MUTE** switch will not respond to any command. The gas detector must be repaired or replaced.

1. Vacuum the dust off the detector cover weekly (more frequently in dusty locations) using the soft brush attachment of the vacuum.
2. Do not spray cleaning agents or waxes directly onto the front panel. This action may damage the sensor, cause an alarm or cause a detector malfunction.

Care of the Detector

MONITOR PANEL MEASUREMENT

Tank Measurement - To measure level of a tank simply push button on display panel corresponding to tank you wish to measure. Lights on panel will turn on in sequence indicating level of tank.



CHECKLIST- LP-GAS EMERGENCY PROCEDURES

If you smell gas (a rotten egg or sulfur smell) at any time, perform the following steps immediately:

- Shut off gas appliances.
- Manually turn off the main gas supply at the tank.
- Do not attempt to operate any electric switch as this can produce a spark and ignite the gas.
- Open windows and doors.
- Evacuate the motorhome. Stay clear of the surrounding area.
- Keep open flames, spark producing devices and smoking material out of the area.
- Contact a qualified service technician to find the source and repair the gas leak.



WARNING: A fire or explosion from ignited gas or gas fumes can seriously injure you or cause death.

LP- GAS TANK CAPACITY

LP-GAS TANK CAPACITY						
30 PBD	32 PBD	34 PBD	36 PBS	36 PBD	38 PBD	38 PBT
38 gal.	38 gal.	38 gal.	38 gal.	38 gal.	38 gal.	38 gal.

LP-Gas exists in both the liquid and vapor state within the LP-Gas tank. A "Full" tank is approximately 80% liquid. The pressure inside the tank varies with the temperature of the liquid. All tanks are required to be equipped with a pressure relief device. The purpose of the relief valve is to release gas or liquid caused by overpressurization. When storing portable LP-Gas tanks that are not connected to an LP-Gas system, install an approved plug in the tank outlet holes to prevent leaks. Do not transport or store LP-Gas tanks, gasoline or other flammable liquids inside the motorhome.

LP-GAS TANK
- Operation

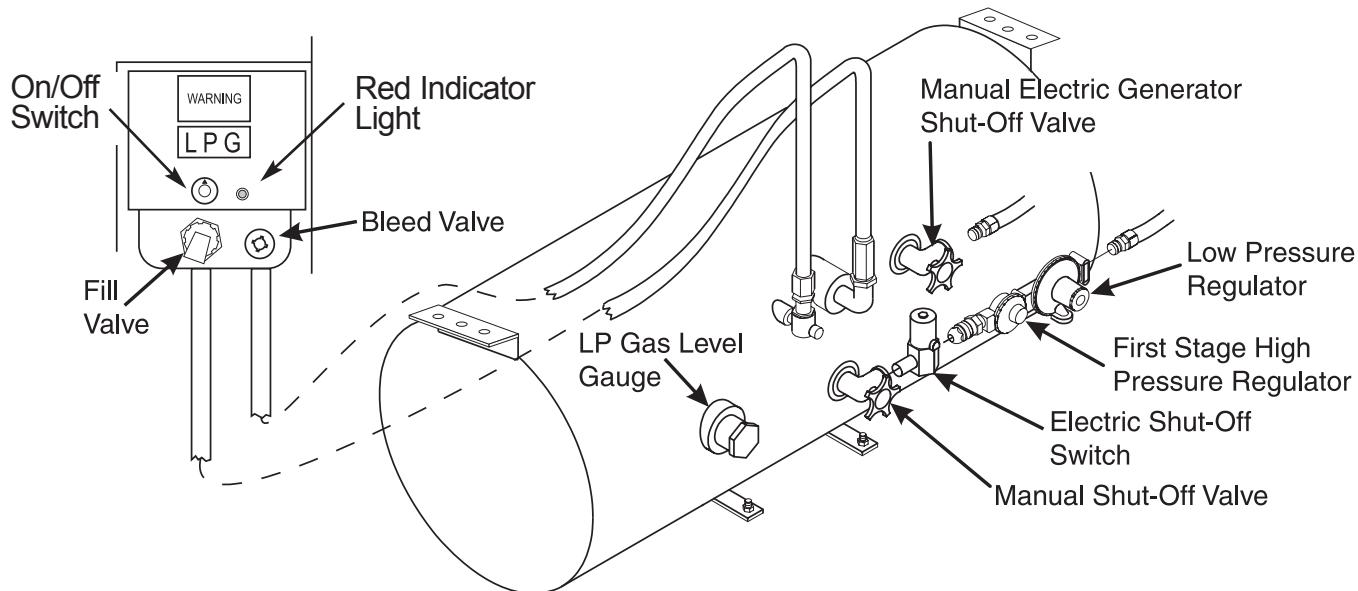

WARNING: Do not store or transport empty LP-Gas tanks, portable tanks, gasoline or other flammable liquids inside the motorhome. Keep open flame and spark producing materials away from the LP-Gas area. Shut off all appliances and LP-Gas tank valve (located on side of LP-Gas tank underneath the motorhome) when the motorhome is in storage. If this warning is ignored a fire or explosion could result.



CAUTION: Pressure inside LP-Gas tanks can reach over 300 psi when exposed to direct sunlight. A high pressure safety relief valve will purge excess high pressure if necessary. LP-Gas will stop vaporizing as the LP-Gas tank temperature approaches -40° F. Appliances which consume large amounts of LP-Gas, such as the water heater or furnace, will need to be operated in sequence in extremely cold environments.

- Manually open the main shut-off valve located on the roadside of the LP-Gas tank.
- Turn off the manual valve on the LP-Gas tank when the motorhome is in between trips.
- Hand tighten the manual valve. Do not use a wrench or pliers to close the valve.
- The manual valve is designed to be closed by hand, over tightening may permanently damage the valve seat.

There is an LP -Gas electric shutoff switch located in LP tank compartment on curbside of motorhome for use during trips. When switch is ON red indicator light will be lit.



LP-Gas Tank Filling

Woodall's Campground and Trailer Guide and other similar publications list refueling stations. Many travel parks sell LP-Gas. Shut off the pilot lights, appliances and igniters before filling the LP-Gas tank to prevent a fire or explosion. Have a trained service person fill the LP-Gas tank.

The LP-Gas tank fill is located in the LP-Gas tank access outside compartment. Caution the service technician, if the tank is new and being filled for the first time, to purge any air from the tank before filling. When the tank is filled to the proper level there is space available for the conversion of liquid into gas. If a tank is over-filled it may vent pressure. When this happens a strong rotten egg odor near the tank and/or a hissing noise may be detected.



WARNING: Turn off all pilot lights and appliances while filling the LP-Gas tank to prevent a fire or explosion.

# Capacity	Gallon Capacity	BTU Capacity
5	1.18	107,903
10	2.36	215,807
11	2.59	237,387
20	4.72	431,613
30	7.08	647,420
40	9.43	863,226

LP-GAS FUNDAMENTALS

CONVERSIONS

Gallons to Liters (1 Gallon = 3.785 Liters)

Fahrenheit to Celsius $(F^\circ - 32 \div 1.8 = C^\circ)$

11 in. Water Column = 6 1/4 ozs. per sq. in. pressure.

27.7 in. Water Column = 1 lb. per sq. in. pressure.

The above capacities allow for 20% vapor space on each cylinder.

Data taken from the National Fire Prevention Association (NFPA). Pamphlet #58-1998.

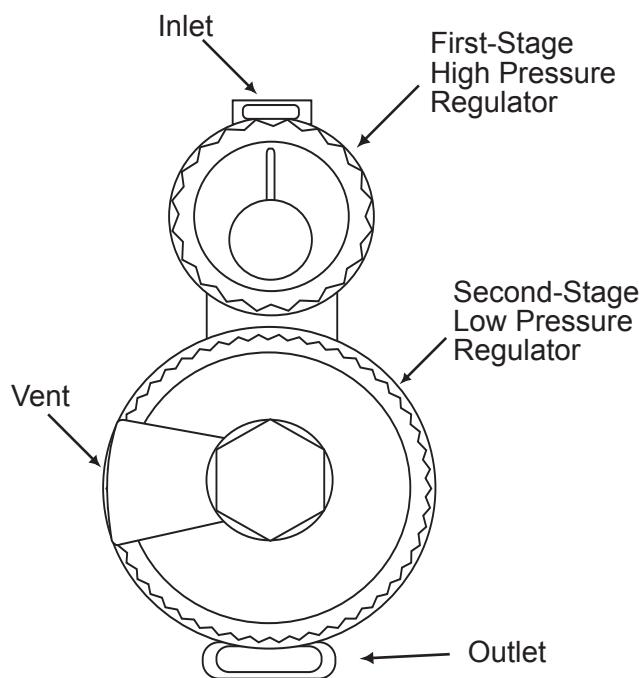
Basic Facts About LP-Gas:

Pounds Per Gallon	4.24
Specific Gravity of Gas	1.50
Specific Gravity of Liquid	.504
Cubic Feet Gas Per Gallon of Liquid	36.38
Cubic Feet Gas Per Pound	8.66
BTU Per Gallon	91,502
BTU Per Pound	21,548
Dew Point in Degrees Fahrenheit	- 44° F
Vapor Pressure at 0° F	31
Vapor Pressure at 70° F	127
Vapor Pressure at 100° F	196
Vapor Pressure at 110° F	230
Flash Point	842° F



NOTE: The above information is not a complete guide for the use of LP-Gas tanks or appliances. In cold climates keep fuel levels above 50% in order to keep vaporization of LP-Gas at the highest level.

LP-GAS REGULATOR



Typical two-stage LP-Gas Regulator.

The regulator is the heart of an LP-Gas system. The LP-Gas in the tank is under high pressure. The regulator reduces the pressure of gas so that it is safe to use with various appliances. The regulator on the motorhome is a two-stage regulator. The first stage regulator reduces the full tank pressure down to a range of 10-13 psig (pounds per square inch gauge). The second stage further reduces the pressure down to an outlet pressure of 0.4 psig (11 inches of water column). The regulator is equipped with a vent that allows it to breathe. It is important to keep the vent clean and clear of obstructions or corrosion. If the vent becomes clogged, pressure from LP tank could cause a failure of the components. If there is any corrosion, contact a qualified LP-Gas service technician. The regulator is mounted so that the vent faces downward. If the vent becomes clogged clean it with a toothbrush.

Under normal atmospheric conditions an LP regulator will not freeze, nor will the LP-Gas. The gas passing through the regulator will expand and cool creating moisture in the gas. This moisture will turn to ice which can build up and partially or totally block the orifice. The possibilities of freeze up is greatly reduced with the two stage regulator.

To prevent freeze up:

1. Ensure the LP tank is totally free of moisture prior to filling.
2. Ensure the tank is not overfilled.
3. Keep the valve closed when the tank is empty.
4. If a freeze up occurs, have an LP-Gas distributor purge the tank.
5. Have the LP-Gas distributor inject methyl alcohol in the tank.



WARNING: Do not attempt to adjust the regulator, it is preset at the factory. If adjustments need to be made it requires special equipment. Failure to follow these instructions may result in a fire or explosion and cause severe personal injury or death. Do not attempt to enter the motorhome until the problem has been corrected!

LP-GAS CONSUMPTION

Each gallon of LP-Gas produces 91,502 BTU's of heat. One 27 gallon tank produces two million BTU's. Total consumption depends on the rate of usage by each appliance and the operating time. The stove and heating systems typically use the most gas. With sub-freezing temperatures and high winds, consumption by the furnace can be very high. Check the tank level often in cold weather.

Determine Fuel Consumption:

To determine approximately how many hours an LP-Gas appliance will operate on one gallon of LP use the following formula:

- LP-Gas appliances are rated in Input BTU (British Thermal Units). The rating is usually stamped or printed on tag affixed to the appliance. For example: the Input rating of the appliance is 10,000 BTU's.
- One gallon of LP-Gas produces 91,502 BTU's.
- Divide the amount of BTU's of one gallon of LP-Gas (91,502) by the rating on the appliance in this example 10,000. Net continuous operation time for one gallon of LP Gas for this appliance would be approximately 9.2 hours.

The above formula can be useful when trying to determine the approximate length of time a tank of LP-Gas will last. Generally, LP-Gas appliances do not operate continuously. An example would be the typical cycling of the furnace or water heater.

Determining how long a tank of LP-Gas will last:

- Combine the BTU input totals of all appliances and the approximate length of time these appliances operate per day.
- Multiply the number of liquid gallons in the LP tank by 91,502.
- Divide the total of BTU's of the LP tank by the total number of BTU's the appliances consume equals the approximate number of hours of operation before refueling.



WARNING: LP-Gas is highly volatile and extremely explosive. Never use matches or open flame to test for leaks. Use only approved LP-Gas leak testing solution to test for leaks. Unapproved solutions can damage copper tubing and brass fittings. Never attempt to adjust LP-Gas regulators without the use of proper equipment. Improper LP-Gas regulator adjustment will affect the performance of LP-Gas operated appliances. Incorrect flame or explosion can occur. Only qualified personnel should perform any maintenance or repair to the LP-Gas system.

Typical Appliance BTU Ratings	
Water Heater (Atwood)	
6 gallon - 8,800 BTU	
10 gallon - 10,000 BTU	
Furnace (Atwood)	
34,000 BTU	
20,000 BTU x2*	
Cooktop/Stove (Atwood)	
9,000 BTU-front	
6,500 BTU-rear	
7,100 BTU-oven	
Refrigerator	
2-door 1500 BTU	
4-door 2200 BTU	

* Only on 38PBT models

LP-GAS DISTRIBUTION LINES

A primary manifold black steel pipe running throughout the motorhome distributes LP-Gas to secondary lines. All secondary lines leading to gas appliances are made of copper tubing with flared fittings. If any lines rupture do not attempt to splice them. Always run a new line. We recommend gas distribution work be performed by an authorized dealer or an authorized service technician. When removing or servicing any gas appliance, manually close the main valve located on the side of the LP-Gas tank. This will prevent dangerous gas leakage that could result in an explosion and possible serious injury. If a gas leak is suspected, get the system inspected and repaired by a qualified service technician as soon as possible.

LP-GAS SAFETY TIPS

Liquid Propane gas is one of the safest and most reliable fuels available on the market if it is handled properly. LP-Gas, however, does have a great explosive "potential" if handled improperly. Danger is minimized by becoming familiar with and following a few safety precautions, and by learning how to properly operate LP-Gas appliances. Use of LP-Gas requires the responsibility to enforce extra safety measures.

The motorhome is equipped with many LP-Gas operated appliances because it is a convenient and efficient source of fuel. LP-Gas appliances must be operated and maintained in accordance with the product manufacturer's instructions.

The National Propane Gas Association (NPGA) has a special service program offered called GAS® (Gas Appliance System) Check. The GAS® Check program is aimed at educating users in the association about the convenience of propane use with safety and peace of mind. For information on the **NPGA Gas® Check program, call (630) 515-0600 or visit www.npga.org.**

LP-Gas Tanks and Cylinders:

Tanks are built to American Society of Mechanical Engineers (AMSE) Code. The cylinders are built to DOT (Department of Transportation) Code. The major difference between cylinders and tanks is in required testing and inspection procedures and in the construction of the containers. Both tanks and cylinders are required to undergo pressure testing and inspections; however, the procedures for how they are tested and inspected differ.

The difference between the two codes are that the valves, fittings and brackets are located only on the ends of the DOT cylinders; however, on the ASME tanks they may be located on ends, as well as the sides. There is also a difference in how the tanks are rated. Required tank ratings are in gallons (ASME ratings) or pounds (DOT) water capacity. The Federal DOT (Department of Transportation) regulations require periodic inspections and re-qualifications of cylinders.

American Society of Mechanical Engineers (AMSE) tanks or bulk containers are generally used in the motorhomes and motorized products. These tanks are permanently mounted on to the unit.

An alloy steel two-piece welded and brazed tank is used on all towable products. The marking on the collar, DOT 4BA240, identifies the DOT specifications and service pressure. Other pertinent information included on the collar is the water capacity (WC) and the tare weight (TW), both which are measured in pounds, and the Manufacture date (one of the most important items). There is a required 12 year re-qualification. The final piece of information is for the Dip Tube (DT) length. This is part of the overfill protection and maximum liquid allowance in the cylinder.

Maintenance and Safety Tips for the LP-Gas Refrigerator and the Propane Furnace:

- Have the refrigerator, furnace and venting inspected annually by an authorized service center.
- Before firing up the refrigerator, or using the propane gas furnace for the first time each season, have the venting system checked for blockage. Insects may have built nests that will obstruct flow.
- At the first indication of incomplete combustion (yellow flame instead of a blue flame or soot is present) contact a service technician immediately. Improper combustion can cause carbon monoxide buildup, which is potentially fatal!

Maintenance and Safety Tips for the Propane Range:

- Burner flame should be a blue color, indicating complete combustion. If not, have the unit serviced by a qualified technician.
- Do not cover the oven bottom with foil. Air circulation will be restricted.
- Never use gas ranges or ovens for heating purposes.
- Always have pot handles turned inward.
- Ensure children understand never to turn or play with the knobs on the front of the propane gas range.

Maintenance and Safety Tips for the Propane Water Heater:

- Test the operations of the temperature and pressure relief valve. Maximum temperature 210° F and pressure 125/150 psi.
- Keep flammable substances away from the water heater. Do not store items close to it as this may block the airflow the water heater needs to operate properly.
- At the first indication of incomplete combustion (yellow flame instead of a blue flame or soot is present) call a service technician immediately. Improper combustion can cause carbon monoxide buildup, which is potentially fatal!

NOTES

KNIGHT

SECTION 8
ELECTRICAL SYSTEM - HOUSE

INTRODUCTION • 203	
<i>Shore Power • 203</i>	
<i>Generator • 203</i>	
<i>Inverter/Converter (Optional) • 204</i>	
BATTERY DISCONNECT - HOUSE • 204	
BATTERY CUTOFF SWITCH • 204	
SHORE POWER HOOK-UP • 205	
TRANSFER SWITCH • 207	
GENERATOR - 120 AC • 208	
<i>Prestart Checks • 209</i>	
<i>Starting the Generator • 209</i>	
<i>Stopping the Generator • 210</i>	
<i>Powering the Equipment • 210</i>	
<i>Generator Fuel • 211</i>	
<i>Resetting the Circuit Breaker • 211</i>	
<i>Generator Exercise • 212</i>	
DISTRIBUTION PANEL - HOUSE 110 • 212	
<i>AC Panel • 212</i>	
<i>Circuit Breakers • 213</i>	
GFCI BREAKERS & OUTLETS • 214	
<i>Energy Management System - 50 Amp (Optional) • 215</i>	
DISTRIBUTION PANEL - HOUSE 12 VOLT • 218	
<i>FUSES • 219</i>	
<i>Tools of the Trade • 219</i>	
<i>Know When to Say No • 219</i>	
BATTERY - HOW IT WORKS • 220	
<i>Starting Battery • 221</i>	
<i>Deep Cycle Battery • 221</i>	
<i>Battery Maintenance • 221</i>	
<i>Testing the Battery • 222</i>	
<i>Reasons Why Batteries Fail • 224</i>	
<i>Battery Voltage & Current • 225</i>	
<i>Battery Charge Time & Consumption Rate • 226</i>	
<i>Battery Specifications - House • 228</i>	
BULB USAGE CHART - INTERIOR • 229	
INVERTER/CONVERTER (Optional) • 229	
<i>Battery Charging • 230</i>	
<i>Remote Panel • 230</i>	
<i>Battery State Indicator • 231</i>	
<i>Circuit Breakers • 231</i>	
<i>Stand-by Mode • 231</i>	
<i>Power Share • 231</i>	
<i>Charge Cycles • 232</i>	
<i>Pass-through Relay • 232</i>	
<i>Temperature Sensitive Charging • 232</i>	
<i>Programming the Inverter • 233</i>	
<i>Equalize Charge • 233</i>	



The motorhome 120/240 Volt AC system can be operated from three different power sources: shore power, the on-board generator or the inverter/charger (wheel). Shore power is the most efficient and should be used whenever possible. The on board generator can be used when shore power is unavailable. The inverter/ charger supplies silent AC power using the house batteries of the motorhome. This source has limited AC power output and should be used sparingly.

INTRODUCTION

Two different sources supply the main AC circuit breaker panel with power: the 50 Amp shore power cord or the on board generator. The power source used is automatically selected by an automatic electrical switching device known as a transfer switch.



WARNING: The electrical system is engineered and tested for complete safety. Circuit breakers and fuses protect the electrical circuits from overloading. If you plan modifications or additions to the electrical system, we strongly recommend consulting your dealer for assistance to ensure continued integrity and safety of the electrical system. Please note that any modifications may void the warranty.

The motorhome is equipped with a shore power cord. The electrical cord connects the motorhome to outside electrical services. Shore power service is the most efficient source of electrical power. Use this as the primary power source. The plug end of the shore power cord is 50 Amp 220 Volt. Many facilities are equipped with this power service. When this type of power service is not available electrical adapters will be required to allow a proper and safe connection to the electrical service supply.

Shore Power



NOTE: In instances when 50 Amp shore service is not available, care will have to be used when operating the appliances and using the outlets so the shore power service will not be overloaded.

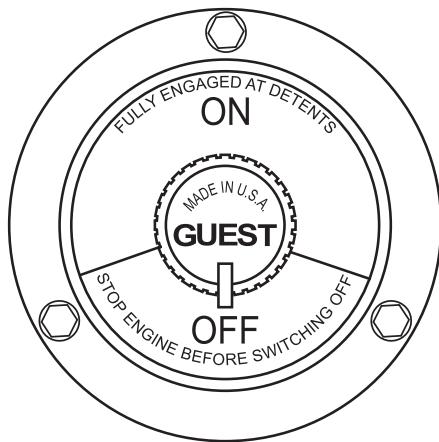
The generator can be selected for use when AC shore power is not available. The generators maximum amount of output power, measured in watts, is calculated at an elevation of 500 feet above sea level. This figure will decrease slightly with a higher altitude. Ambient temperature also effects total maximum output. The amount of AC electrical load applied to the generator determines fuel consumption.

Generator

Inverter/Converter (Optional)

The inverter/charger can be used for silent AC power if shore power is not available, and using the generator is not going to be selected as a secondary power source. This device has limited AC power output, measured in watts. It operates only selected appliances and outlets. The inverter/charger is two components in one. First is as an auxiliary 120 Volt AC power source that uses 12 Volt DC house battery power to invert to 120 Volts AC. The second function of the inverter/charger is to use 120 Volts AC power, supplied from either shore power or the generator, and convert it to 12 Volts DC power to recharge the batteries. When dry camping, the inverter may be used to supply power to selected outlets.

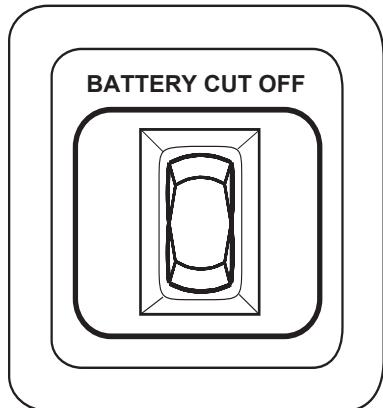
BATTERY DISCONNECT - HOUSE



Located in the Battery Compartment.

The main battery disconnects are located in the rear passenger side battery compartment. In the compartment are a pair of battery disconnects: One for the chassis batteries and the other for the house batteries. Turn off the batteries any time the motorhome is going to be stored and not in use. If possible, leave the motorhome plugged into an AC source with the battery disconnects on. This will help prevent the batteries from going dead. Use of the battery cut-off switch at the entry door will not turn off all DC electrical items. There are small "parasitic" loads that are present on both the house and chassis batteries. Some are federal mandate items, such as the LP detector. If the motorhome will not be used, or will be stored for more than 48 hours, it is recommended to turn the batteries off.

BATTERY CUTOFF SWITCH



The battery cut-off switch is located inside and next to the entry door. This switch controls the 12 Volt DC power to the domestic fuse panels. When the switch is ON power is supplied to all interior DC lighting and DC operated appliances. Some appliances will require both DC and AC power to operate, such as the roof air conditioner. This switch is helpful when dry camping and can be used to conserve house battery power. Refrigerator and inverter operation are unaffected by the operation of this switch. When turned off, this switch will not stop all parasitic loads and therefore is not a substitute for the main battery disconnect switch.

The power requirement for the motorhome is 50 AMP 120/240 Volt AC single phase. The shore cord is stored in the roadside compartment. If 50 Amp shore power service is available, all that is necessary is connect the supplied shore power cord. If 50 Amp service is not available, electrical adapters will be required.

SHORE POWER HOOK-UP



CAUTION: Avoid flash damage to the electrical system contacts. Before hooking up to shore power, starting the generator or using the inverter make sure all the appliances are off.

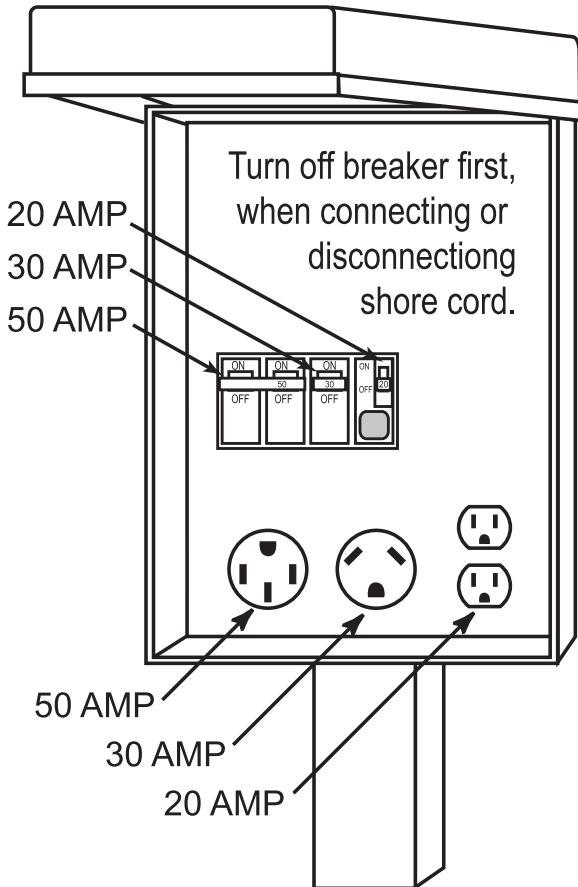


WARNING: Keep fingers away from metal contacts of the shore plug end. Avoid standing in water when making electrical connections. Serious electrical shock and personal injury can occur. To avoid the risk of an electrical shock, turn the circuit breaker off for the power supply outlet before making the shore power connection.

Plugging in the Shore Cord:

- Located in the roadside compartment is the shore power cord.
- Unscrew the deck plate and extend a sufficient amount of cable through the deck plate to reach the socket.
- Align cord end with socket terminals. Insert and rotate end clockwise $\frac{1}{4}$ turn locking end into socket.
- If 50 Amp service is not available, install the proper electrical adapters to the cord.
- Always turn off the shore power breaker to the power supply outlet before connecting or disconnecting the shore cord. This will prevent an accidental shock and flashing of electrical contacts.
- Make the connection to the outlet and turn the shore power breaker on. The transfer switch should make an audible click.

After connecting the motorhome to shore power, wait approximately one minute for the inverter/charger or converter to "stabilize" charging of the batteries before starting air conditioners or other large AC loads. In the instance 50 Amp service is not available, use caution not to overload the supplied shore service breaker. Operate appliances and outlets in sequence rather than all at the same time.



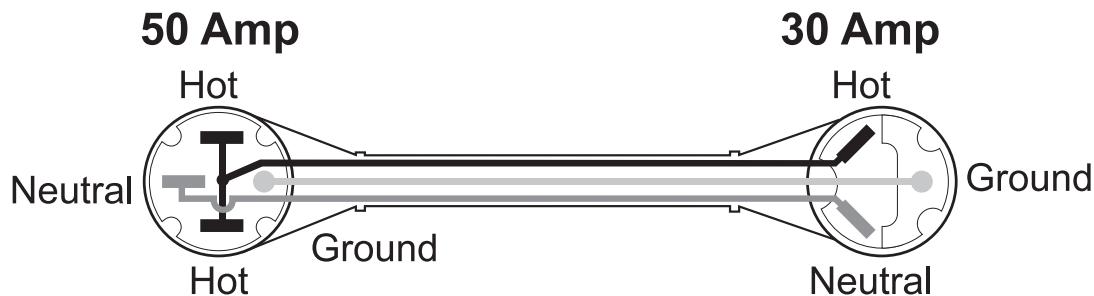
Power Supply:

Different amperage supplies vary greatly in the amount of available current.

- The continuous amount of current through a breaker or fuse is only 80% of its rated capacity.
- 50 Amp 220 Volt AC shore power service consists of two power supply conductors, a neutral and a safety ground. The 50 Amp breaker simultaneously limits each power supply conductor to no more than a short-term maximum of 50 Amps for each conductor. The 50 Amp 220 Volt service actually provides 80 continuous amps.
- Use care when hooked to anything less than 50 Amp shore service. Shore power service less than 50 Amps consists of one power supply conductor, a neutral and a safety ground. 30 Amp shore service is limited to 24 continuous amps. 20 Amp shore service is limited to 16 continuous amps.

Electrical Adapters:

There are many different electrical adapters available to suit a variety of needs. Only UL approved adapters should be used. The most common adapter is a 50-30 Amp adapter. The type of connector adapts the 50 Amp shore cord to a 30 Amp shore power outlet. Always install the adapter to the cord prior to making the connection to the outlet.



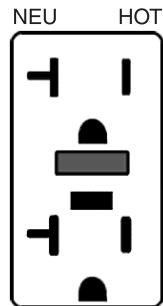
CAUTION: If shore power service is limited to 15 or 20 Amps, use of light duty extension cords and electrical adapters will create a voltage loss through the cord and at each electrical connection. Line voltage loss and the resistance at each electrical connection can be a hazardous combination. Damage to sensitive electronic equipment may result!



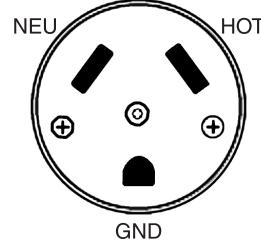
CAUTION: Avoid the risk of electrical shock or component damage by disconnecting from shore power during electrical storm activity. Use the inverter or start the generator if AC power is needed.



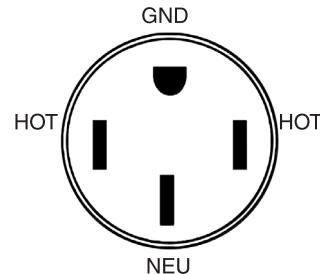
NOTE: Shown is the three types of shore power outlets most commonly used.



15-20 AMP
120 VOLT



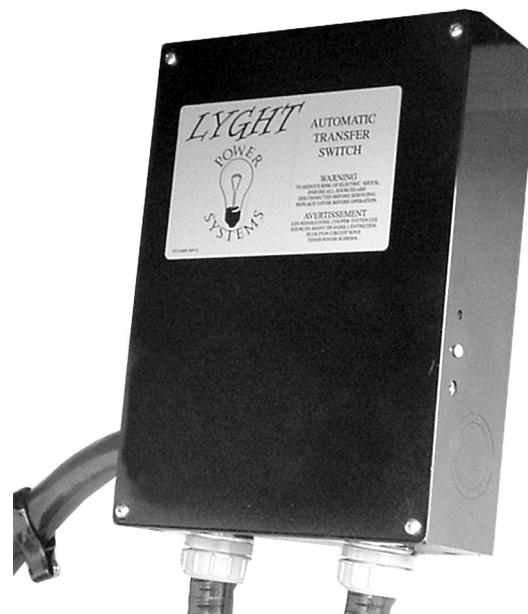
30 AMP
120 VOLT



50 AMP
220 VOLT

The transfer switch automatically transfers AC power from the shore power cord or generator through the transfer switch to the 110/220 Volt AC breaker panel. When using the generator as the power source, the transfer switch has a time delay built into it before transferring power to the AC breaker panel. This allows the generator time to warm up before applying an AC load. When operating the generator while hooked to shore power, the transfer switch automatically selects generator power as priority over shore power.

**TRANSFER
SWITCH**

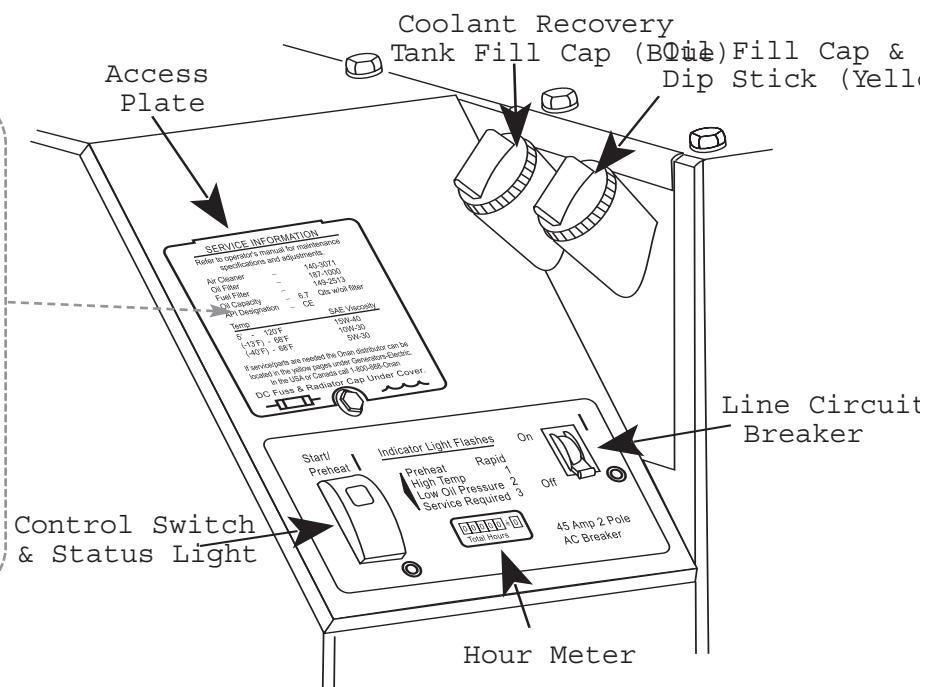
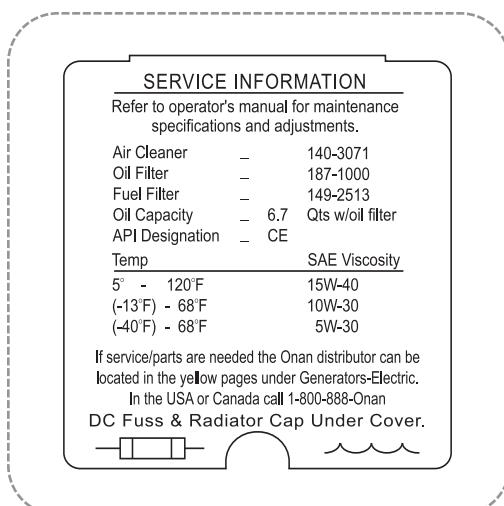


NOTE: The Shore Cord is NOT electrically connected to the generator. When the generator is operating, the electrical contacts of the shore cord are not electrically energized.



NOTE: To prevent damage to the transfer switch contacts do not have appliances on or AC loads plugged into outlets when hooking up to shore power or starting the generator. The transfer switch will begin to disengage at approximately 90 Volts AC. Operation at this voltage may damage the transfer switch, appliances or other items plugged into outlets. Start the generator and disconnect from shore service until the shore service supply voltage stabilizes.

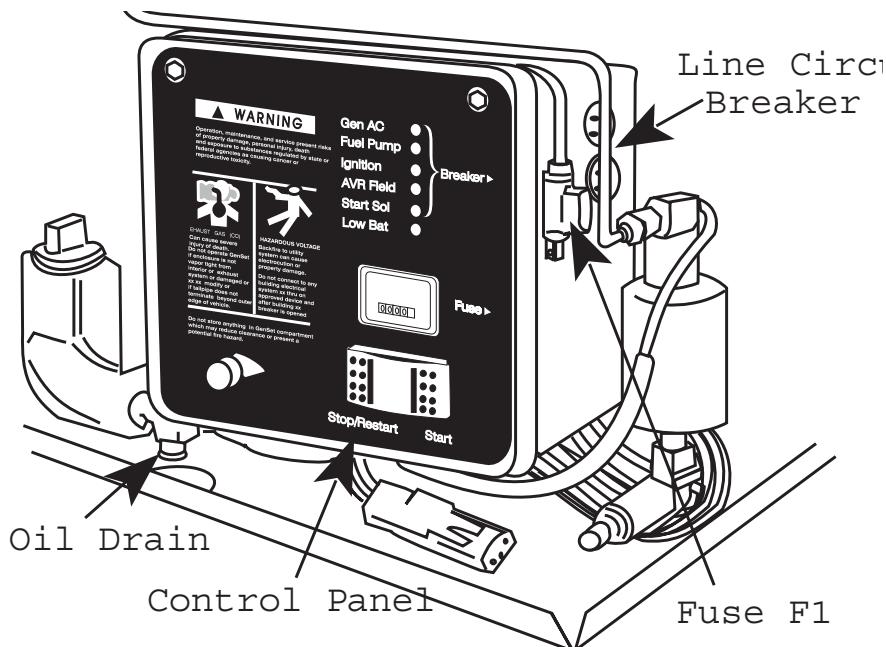
GENERATOR - 120 AC



Diesel Generator - (Optional)

The generator is located in the front compartment of the motorhome. The generator can be started from the following locations:

- The generator remote switch on the dash.
- The generator control panel located on the generator.



LP-Gas Generator - Standard

Prior to the first start of the day perform a general inspection including oil and coolant levels. Keep a maintenance log on number of hours in operation since the last service. Perform any service or maintenance that may be due.

Prestart Checks

 **NOTE: Make sure the LP-Gas liquid valve is on for LP-Gas generators.**

Before Starting the Generator:

- People and animals must be clear of hazards of electrical shock and moving parts.
- All appliances and other large AC electrical loads must be off.

Starting the Generator

Push and hold control switch in **START** position until the generator starts. Release switch. On diesel models the control switch may flash up to 15 seconds, indicating engine preheat.

 **NOTE: Diesel models may require priming. Hold control switch in the OFF position for one minute. Repeat if necessary. The diesel generator fuel pick-up tube is cut to approximately 1/4 tank so as not to run the main engine out of fuel.**

 **WARNING: Excessive cranking can overheat and damage the starter motor. Do not crank the engine more than 30 seconds at any one time. Wait at least two minutes before resuming.**

 **If the generator fails to start refer to the generator manufacturer's owner's manual.**

 **WARNING: When the motorhome is parked, position the dash air conditioner vent control in the OFF position to prevent exhaust gases from entering the motorhome. The engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, which is an odorless and colorless gas. Carbon monoxide is poisonous and can cause unconsciousness and/or death. Inspect the exhaust system thoroughly before starting the generator. Do not block the exhaust pipe or situate the motorhome where the exhaust may accumulate either outside, underneath, or inside the motorhome or any nearby vehicles. Operate the generator only when safe dispersion of exhaust can be assured. Monitor the outside conditions to be sure that the exhaust continues to disperse safely.**

 **WARNING: When parking near high grass, be sure that the hot exhaust does not come into contact with the grass, it could be a fire hazard. Hot exhaust pipe or hot exhaust gases can ignite the grass.**

Stopping the Generator

Turn off the appliances and disconnect other AC loads being used. Allow the generator to run unloaded for at least one minute before shutdown. This will allow the engine to cool. Push and hold the control switch in the **STOP** position until the generator stops. Release the switch.



NOTE: Diesel models require only a momentary stop signal.

Powering the Equipment

The AC output of the generator powers the motorhome air conditioners, the AC inverter/converter charger, all appliances and items plugged into the electrical outlets of the motorhome. The number of electrical appliances that can be operated at any given time depends upon how much power is available from the generator. If the generator is "overloaded" or a short circuit causes "over current," the generator will shut down or the circuit breaker will trip. If power consumption, in total, exceeds the generator power output, compensation for temperature and elevation may be necessary. Operate some appliances in sequence rather than all at the same time.



NOTE: The generator may shut down when it is loaded nearly to full power and an air conditioner (or other large motor load) cycles on. For a brief moment during start up an electric motor can draw up to three times the rated power. For this reason, it may be necessary to operate some appliances in sequence when air conditioners or other large motor loads are on.

It is important to remember that air density decreases as altitude increases, causing the generator engine power to decrease. Power decreases at approximately 3% of the rated power each 1,000 feet (305M) of increase in elevation above sea level. It may be necessary to operate fewer appliances at the same time when the camping location is at a higher elevation. For example: 7,500 watt generator at 5,000 ft. = 6,375 watts net. Temperature also affects maximum output power. For example: At 120° F. a 7,500 watt generator produces 6,000 watts net.



REFERENCE: The generator may shut down for other reasons beside "overloads." A blink code may appear on the control switch. Refer to the manufacturer's manual to obtain an explanation of the codes.

When refueling there is always a possibility the fuel may be contaminated. Contamination of fuel effects the performance of the generator. Diesel fuel may contain water or a microbe growth (black slime). Propane, due to the refining process, may contain lightweight oil. Any contamination of fuel greatly reduces the total output of the generator and may cause erratic AC output.

Generator Fuel

AVERAGE FUEL CONSUMPTION	LP-GAS 6,300 WATTS (lbs./hr.)*	DIESEL 7,500 WATTS (gal./hr.)
No Load	2.6	.13
Half Load	4.5	.49
Full Load	7.3	.96

* 4.5 lbs. = one liquid gallon of LP-Gas.



NOTE: The motorhome manufacturer does not cover damage to the generator caused by fuel contamination, or to appliances due to erratic AC voltage.

If a circuit breaker trips in the main AC breaker panel, or on the generator control panel, there may be a short circuit or too many loads.

Resetting the Circuit Breaker

 **NOTE: The generator will continue to run after a circuit breaker trips.**

If a circuit breaker trips, disconnect or turn off as many loads as possible. To reset the circuit breaker, switch the circuit breaker to OFF; then switch back to ON to reconnect the circuit. If the circuit breaker immediately trips, the electrical distribution system has a short or the circuit breaker is faulty. Call a qualified electrician. If the circuit breaker does not trip, reconnect a combination of loads that will not overload the generator or cause the circuit breaker to trip again. Remember to compensate for elevation and temperature changes when reconnecting loads.

 **NOTE: An appliance or load may have a short if it causes a circuit breaker to trip after reconnection. DO NOT continue to reset breaker. Have the problem corrected before resuming operation.**

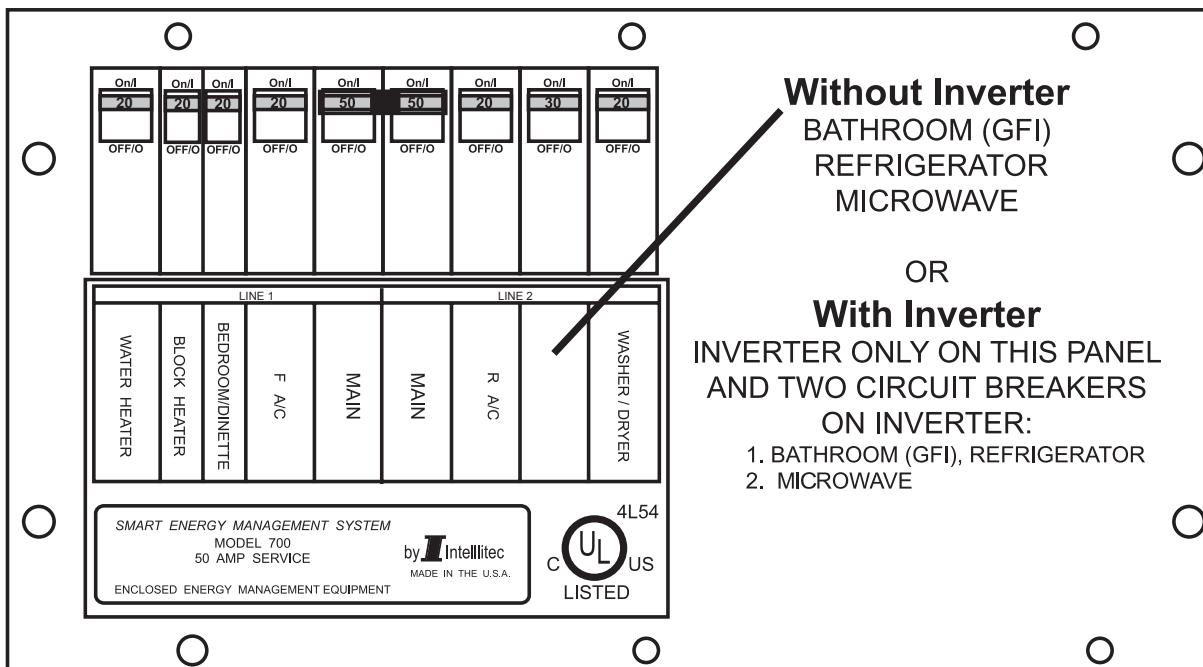
Generator Exercise

If use of the generator is infrequent, "exercise" the generator once a month by operating it at approximately half the maximum rated output for two hours. This "exercise" will help promote better starting, more reliable operation and longer engine life. This procedure drives off moisture, lubricates the internal engine parts and replaces the old stale fuel with a fresh supply. It also promotes removing oxides from the electrical switches and contacts.



NOTE: Avoid short run periods of the generator set. Run the generator set under a load for a minimum of one-half hour.

DISTRIBUTION PANEL - HOUSE 110 AC Panel



The AC distribution panel is located in the bedroom. The main AC panel 120 Volt circuit breakers receive power from the transfer switch, which is powered by either shore power or the on board generator. Power is introduced into the panel to the 50 Amp MAIN breaker first, followed by power being fed to the individual branch circuit breakers. The panel label describes the breaker layout and the item, outlet or appliance to which they pertain.



WARNING: This panel contains high voltage which can cause serious injury or death. Before beginning any work or testing procedures involving the electric panels, or any of the branch circuits, be sure the motorhome is unplugged from shore power, the generator is not running and the inverter is in the OFF position. Certain testing procedures can require the AC power to be on. Only qualified personnel, or personnel with electrical backgrounds, should attempt any testing procedures.

Branch circuit breakers supply AC power to the different items or “loads.” An electrical load is any item or device that will use current when supplied with an electromotive force. Should a breaker “trip” from over current use, or a short circuit condition, the load to which the breaker is supplying the electromotive force should be reviewed or disconnected to determine the cause of the trip. If no cause is found, or not readily apparent, reset the breaker by toggling the breaker to the **OFF** position, then back to **ON**. Should the breaker trip again after the load is reapplied it may indicate a fault with that particular load.

Do not continue to reset breaker until the problem has been diagnosed and corrected.

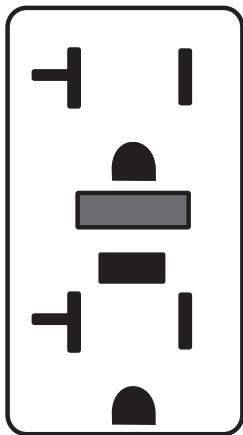
Breaker current ratings are current set points in which the breaker is designed to operate. The internal configuration of the circuit breaker is designed to trip when excess current is drawn through the breaker. The breaker will heat up from the excess current causing the breaker to trip. The trip action of the circuit breaker can occur within milliseconds due to the speed at which electricity can travel. Breakers are designed to operate at a continuous load of 80% of the breaker’s rated capacity. For example: A breaker with a 20 Amp rating will operate a continuous 16 Amp load. This design leaves a small amount of working capacity within the breaker. When an inductive load is applied, such as when an electric motor turns on, the motor starts to spin and current consumption may momentarily exceed the rated capacity of the breaker. As the electric motor comes up to operating speed, the electric motor’s current consumption will fall. The AC current load then falls back into the breaker’s rated 80% set point. This electric principle should be kept in mind when using anything other than 50 Amp shore service and using appliances with electric motors, such as air conditioners. When using outlets, care should be considered when applying loads such as electric motors, heaters, coffee makers, toasters, hair dryers or other large current consuming loads. The current rating is usually stated on most electrical items. The current rating will either be rated in amps or watts. Current ratings stated on electrical items will change slightly with voltage fluctuations. As voltage increases current consumption decreases. As voltage decreases current consumption increases. This may explain why in some instances items operated at borderline voltage to current tolerances may seem fine in one location but problematic in another.

Circuit Breakers



NOTE: To calculate watts to amps simply divide the watt figure by the voltage of which the item operates from. For example: The electrical item is rated at 1,370 watts. Divide that by the operating voltage of 115 Volts which equals 11.913 Amps. Use this formula to calculate the amount of load to the available power supply.

GFCI BREAKERS & OUTLETS



GFCI Outlet.

A ground fault circuit interrupter “GFCI” can be found in two different types of applications. One type is incorporated in a breaker used in 120 Volt AC breaker panels, the other is incorporated in an outlet. The GFCI, whether it is a breaker or an outlet, offer two types of protection. One type of protection is from over-current or shorts. It also provides protection for persons against hazardous ground fault currents which can result in injury or death. Ground fault currents are currents that flow from the “HOT” or power terminal through a person to the ground. For example, touching a faulty appliance while standing on or making contact with an electrical ground such as a water fixture, bath tub or the earth. If the device has been properly installed it will offer protection against the type of shock that can result from faulty insulation, wet wiring from inside an appliance, or any device or equipment plugged in or wired to that circuit. The “ground fault” portion of the outlet or breaker uses sensitive electronics inside the outlet or breaker to detect a ground fault problem. The electronics monitor the normal current of power, flowing to the “hot” or black wire through the load (eg. a light bulb or appliance) and coming back on the “neutral” or white wire. If just a small amount of the current comes back on the safety ground wire the electronics will “trip” the breaker or outlet, stopping the flow of electricity. The amount of current it takes to trip the device from a ground fault varies slightly from the different outlet or breaker manufacturers (approximately 30 mils or less). Electrical shocks resulting from ground faults can be felt, but such a shock is considerably less than one without ground fault protection. People with heart conditions, or other conditions that make them susceptible to shock, can still be seriously injured. A GFCI outlet or breaker will not protect against shock from a normal current flow. For example, a shock from touching both metal prongs of an electrical cord or appliance while plugging it in.



WARNING: If a breaker or outlet trips continually DO NOT continue to reset breaker or outlet until the problem has been identified and corrected.



NOTE: The ground fault outlet or breaker should be tested once a month to insure it is working properly. Use the “TEST” button on the outlet or breaker. It should trip with an audible “click.” The breaker or outlet will not trip if no AC power is present to the device. If power is present and the device will not “trip,” replace it before using that circuit.



NOTE: One mil is 1/1000 of one amp.

The Energy Management System is easily identified by the remote display panel located in the inside overhead compartment next to the entrance door.

The 50 Amp Smart EMS consists of two elements: the display panel and the bedroom distribution panel. The display panel is mounted in the inside overhead compartment next to the entrance door. The distribution panel, located in the bedroom, is a completely self-contained 120/240 Volt power distribution and energy management system intended to be used in recreational vehicles. It is housed in a sheet metal enclosure with removable front panel. It provides circuit protection for all the 120 Volt AC loads in the motorhome and a system of energy management to minimize the over-loading and tripping of circuit breakers.

Energy Management System - 50 Amp (Optional)

Circuit Breakers:

The distribution panel offers slots for eight single or dual, standard 120 Volt circuit breakers. Two of these breakers, located in the two center positions, is the 50 Amp breaker that acts as the main input protection for each of the lines supplying the remainder of the branch breakers (up to 12).

Energy Management:

The 50 Amp Smart EMS automatically senses the available power to the motorhome. It determines whether it is connected to a 120 Volt AC - 30 Amp shore power source, 50 Amp shore power source or generator source. Depending upon available power, it controls the operation of six possible loads as indicated on distribution panel. These may be any type load, but are typically heavier loads; those whose use can be "postponed" until a time when current is available for their use. If the available power source is 120 Volt AC - 30 Amp shore power it attempts to keep the total 120 Volt current draw to less than 30 Amps.

Operation:

If 120 Volt AC is not available at the distribution panel, L1 or L2 outputs, the system shuts itself off. This feature is intended to prevent the system from drawing current from the +12 Volt DC battery supply when not in operation.

When 120 Volt AC power is applied the system automatically powers up and determines the nature of the power source. If the generator is running 120 Volt AC will be present at the distribution panel L1 and L2 inputs. In this mode the energy management feature is disabled and all control relay contacts are closed, energizing all of the controlled loads. The control Module sends a signal to the display panel causing the load meter to display actual load current, the generator service indicator to light and all power status indicators to light.

If 120 Volt AC is present at the distribution panel L1 and L2 inputs the system will assume that 120 Volt AC, 30 Amp shore power is available and the energy management feature will be enabled.

If only 20 Amp service is available the user must select the 20 Amp service mode by momentarily pressing the 20/30 Amp select switch on the Control Panel.

Initially, all relay contacts are closed and the total current is monitored. If the total current should exceed the service limit the system will turn off the first load in the shedding table. As it turns the loads off it calculates the amount of current that was removed, which is the value for that load. This value is placed in memory. If the current remains above the service limit the system will turn off the next load in shedding table. Again, it calculates the amount of current that was removed and places this value, which is the value of that load, in memory. The system continues to turn off loads until the total current falls below the service limit or all of the six controlled loads have been shed. Through this process the system has “learned” the amount of current that each particular load draws. This feature compensates for the differences in current draw over a range of line voltage and ambient temperature, by re-learning the load each time it is turned off or “shed.”

The 50 Amp Smart EMS now waits until the total current is lower than the service limit and enough current is available (as compared with the amount in memory for the last load shed) before it will turn that load back on. This assures that there is sufficient current to operate the load.



NOTE: There is a two minute minimum delay period after a load is shed before the load will be turned on again to prevent air conditioners from turning on with a head pressure.

Three Hour Averaging:

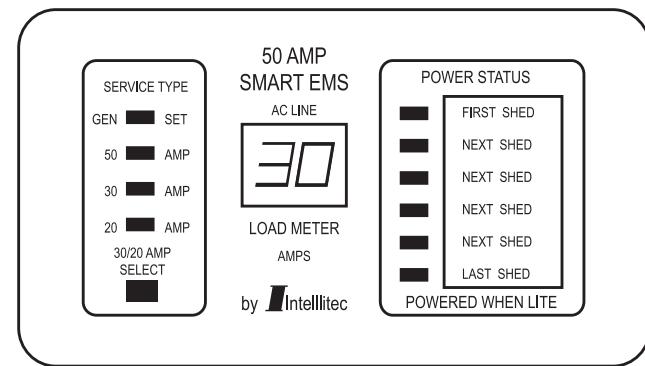
The RVIA (Recreational Vehicle Industry Association) in conjunction with the NEC (National Electrical Council) have established rules regarding the rating of electrical systems and the use of energy management systems.

One of these rules requires that if any energy management system is used, the average total load current for the system over a three hour period be limited to 80% of the service rating. For that reason the 50 Amp EMS calculates the average running current for the system and, if it exceeds 80% of the service rating, the EMS sheds loads to reduce the average current below that limit.

For example: If a system operating under 120 Volt AC, 30 Amp service has been running at the 30 Amp limit for three hours, the EMS will change its shedding threshold to 24 Amps and turn off loads until the 24 Amp limit is attained. If the user selects the 20 Amp service mode this limit will translate to 16 Amps. Because the EMS calculates a running three hour average, if the average load current drops below the limit the system will restore power to loads based on their impact on the limit. If the system is in the averaging mode the decimal point at the lower right corner of the load meter display on the display panel will illuminate.

Display Panel:

Six power status LEDs indicate that power is applied to those loads. These LEDs are on when the power is applied. The load meter has a two digit display to indicate the amount of current actually being drawn by all the appliances in the motorhome.



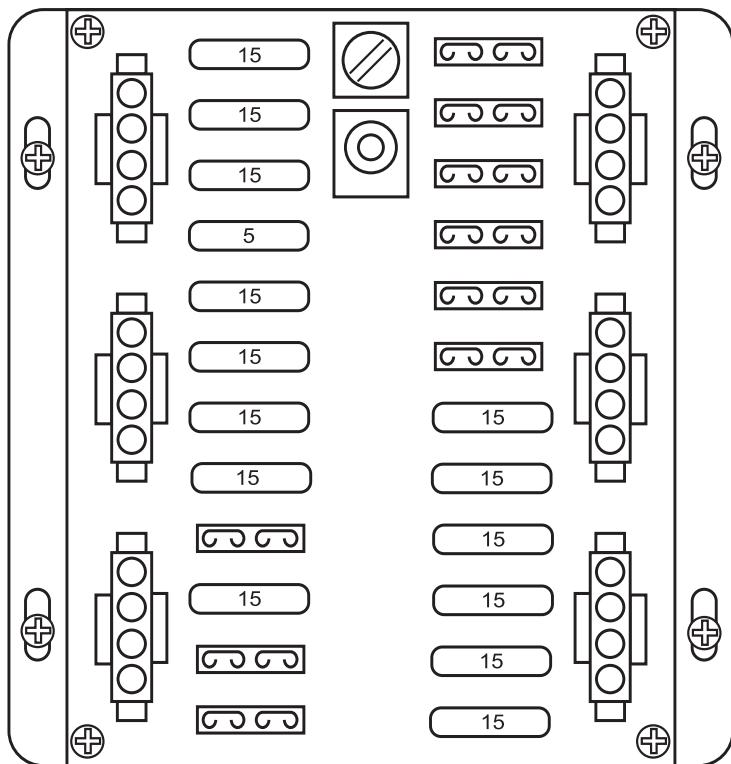
NOTE: The load meter is non-functional when connected to 50 Amp shore service.

Four service type LEDs indicate the source for 120/240 Volt AC power. Three of these sources are automatically detected and indicated by the EMS: Generator Service, 50 Amp Service and 30 Amp Service.

The 20 Amp service mode is not automatically detected and the operator must manually select the 20 Amp mode when 20 Amp service is available.

The service select button allows the current threshold to be set to either 30 Amps or 20 Amps to match the incoming service.

DISTRIBUTION PANEL - HOUSE 12 VOLT



The 12 Volt DC house distribution panel contains fuses (located in the bedroom) that protect the electrical circuits. These fuses are a standard automotive type.

When a fuse is “blown,” the wire in middle of the plastic case will be burnt. A broken, bad or “blown” fuse must be replaced with a fuse of the same rating and type. Using a fuse with a different rating or type will defeat the circuit protection provided by that fuse and could result in damage to the motorhome’s electrical system.

Fuse assignments are as follows:

CIRCUIT ASSIGNMENT	Wire Gauge	Wire Color	Fuse Size
Bath Lights	14	Blue	15 Amp
Living Room	14	Yellow	15 Amp
Bedroom	14	Green	15 Amp
Vent	14	Violet	15 Amp
Kitchen	14	Red	15 Amp
Power Awning	14	Orange	15 Amp
Furnace	14	Grey	15 Amp
Monitor Panel	14	Red	15 Amp
Slide-out	10	Black	15 Amp
Radio	16	Grey	5 Amp
Computer Table (Optional)	14	Red	15 Amp
Power Toilet (Optional)	14	Brown	15 Amp
Bedroom Slide-out (Optional)	14	Green	15 Amp
Triple Slide-out (Optional)	10	Red	15 Amp
External Radio (Optional)	14	Violet/Black	15 Amp

The 12 Volt fuses, located in this distribution panel, service the interior house lighting, ventilation fans, monitor panel, furnace and water heater. Should a fuse blow it will be evident by the broken metal strip located in the center of the fuse. Replacement fuses should be of the same amperage. If a higher rated fuse is installed it can damage the wiring. Fuse current set points follow much of the same electrical principle as the 120 Volt AC breakers. Using 12 Volt DC as the electromotive force can make it more susceptible to outside influences, such as corrosion from weathering or oxidation.

The large variety of applications this voltage can be used in makes it a diet staple for most of the recreational vehicle and automotive industries. The danger from shocks with this voltage is minimized, but can still occur. A good example is when a magnetic field is generated, then collapses when the power supply is cut. The result is a discharge that can reach tens of thousands of volts for a short time period. Care should be used when working with this voltage as current values can be quite high, like in the case of a battery cables.

Shorting a battery cable to ground with a battery at a reasonable state of charge can result in a fire or serious personal injury from a burn.

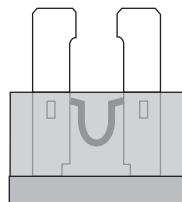
One of the most widely used tools for testing a 12 Volt problem is the test light. Test lights come in a host of varieties, such as a light bulb with a probe and ground clip, to the more elaborate electronic ones that measure a wide scale of voltages and perform a variety of functions. A VOM or Volt Ohm Meter is used to perform a multitude of tests. It is generally used when exact values are needed for evaluation. These meters come in an analog or digital format. Either of these two testing tools may be used, depending upon personal preference. If a 12 Volt light is not working, the test light may be better suited for this. In the case of a charging system problem the meter may be the tool of choice. In any situation the testing tool is an invaluable piece of equipment when it comes to determining an electrical problem.

If it is necessary to use testing tools, use precautions and consider three things. First, recognize when the problem is beyond your skill level. Nothing will create more problems than being armed with tools and going in an unknown direction. Good intentions can lead to major problems. The second item to consider is if something will cause more grief by being dealt with now than if it were left alone and repaired by a professional at a more convenient time. Items that seem as if they should only take a few minutes, may end up

FUSES

AMPERAGE	COLOR
1	BLACK
2	GRAY
3	VIOLET
4	PINK
5	GOLD
7.5	BROWN
10	RED
15	BLUE
20	YELLOW
25	CLEAR
30	GREEN

Amperage Chart



ATO Fuse

Tools of the Trade

Know When to Say No

taking an entire day. The third item to consider is whether or not the current situation may be potentially dangerous if left to be repaired at a more convenient time.



NOTE: Check all related fuses before assuming you have encountered an electrical problem or situation. Spare fuses should be kept on hand and can be purchased from an auto parts stores. A fuse description label is on the distribution panel cover.



WARNING: If a fuse blows replace the fuse with same amperage rating and type. Installing higher amperage fuses can damage the wiring or the item the fuse is protecting, or may cause a fire. If the fuse repeatedly blows after replacing it do not continue to replace it. Have the problem diagnosed and corrected by a qualified technician.

BATTERY - HOW IT WORKS

Batteries come in different sizes, types, amp hours, voltages and chemistries. There are nearly as many descriptions of battery types and how they should be used as there are people willing to offer advice on them. Although it is not possible to cover batteries in their entirety, there are guidelines that can be followed to ensure that the batteries are well maintained.

The operation of the battery is based on a chemical reaction. The battery is a container of lead plates, insulators and a solution of distilled water and sulfuric acid. The solution, when mixed together, is known as "electrolyte." The 12 Volt battery is actually six batteries in one case. When charged, each cell has a voltage of 2.1 Volts. When six cells are hooked together this makes a 12.6 Volt battery (fully charged).

Electrons are stored on the negative plates. When a load (eg. a light bulb) is put between the positive and negative terminals, the electrons move from the negative plate to the positive plate through the "load" and then back to the ground terminal. At this time the sulfuric acid leaves the water and adheres onto the plates of the battery. The electrolyte solution keeps the electrons from flowing while the battery is in the "at rest" position.

Charging the battery moves the sulfuric acid back into solution with the distilled water. A battery left in a low or discharged state will cause the acid to "sulphate." In attempting to recharge the battery, the acid has become hardened and no longer will leave the plates and enter into the liquid solution with the distilled water. The lowered acid to water ratio has a direct affect on the battery's ability to release the stored electrons (power output) and the length of time it can perform (reserve capacity). Batteries left in a discharged condition will readily freeze. This can crack the case allowing the solution to spill, it can also warp the plates. The acid acts like an "antifreeze" for the battery. This is why batteries should not be left or stored in a "discharged" condition.

Starting batteries are designed for high output cranking power, but not for deep cycling like the house batteries are designed to do. Starting batteries will not last long in deep cycle application. The way they are rated should give a good indication of their intended use. "Cold Cranking Ampere" is a measurement of amperage output that can be sustained for 30 seconds. Starting batteries use thin plates to maximize the surface area of the battery. This allows a very high starting current but lets the plates warp when the battery is deep cycled (discharged).

Starting Battery

Deep cycle batteries are best suited for use with 12 Volt operated lights, appliances and inverters. Deep cycle batteries are designed to have a majority of their capacity used before being recharged. These are available in many sizes and types. The most common is a non-sealed, liquid electrolyte battery. The non-sealed types have battery caps. The caps should be removed periodically to check the level of electrolyte. When a cell is low, only distilled water should be added. Water consumption will vary depending on many factors: how far the batteries are depleted, how long the voltage is being applied to charge the batteries, how much voltage is used and how often this occurs.

Deep Cycle Battery

 **NOTE: Tap water contains minerals which can alter battery chemistry and ruin the battery. Use only distilled water when refilling the battery.**

At a minimum, the battery electrolyte level should be checked at least once a month. Check the level sooner if the battery is frequently used. The level should be above the top of the plates, but not overfull. Most batteries have a plastic cup or well. The electrolyte level should be approximately 3/8" below the well to allow room for expansion while the battery is being charged. Over-filling the battery will allow the electrolyte solution to boil or gas out of the battery cap. Remember to use only distilled water to refill the battery. A battery with a low electrolyte level will boil the water out rapidly once the plates have been exposed to air. This process may take only a matter of hours. If this has happened the battery is more than likely damaged.

Battery Maintenance



Wear safety glasses when servicing the battery.

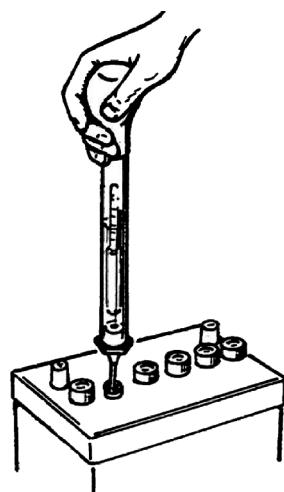
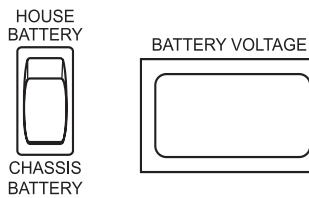
After checking the battery's electrolyte levels it is also a good idea to check the battery connections for tightness and corrosion. If any corrosion is found disconnect the cables (make sure to mark their locations) and carefully clean them with a mild solution of baking soda and water. There are also aerosol products available that will work. This will neutralize any acid that may be present. Do not allow the solution to enter the battery as this will damage the electrolyte balance. Use water to rinse the top of the battery and surrounding area when done. Carefully hook the cables back to the battery. Coat the terminals with petroleum jelly or an anticorrsion grease.

The battery cable to battery terminal connections should be metal to metal. Periodically check the batteries for corrosion. Look for cracks and check the vent plugs. Replace them if they are cracked or missing. Keep the top of the batteries clean. The accumulation of electrolyte and dirt may permit small amounts of current to flow between the terminals, which can drain the battery.



WARNING: Liquid lead acid batteries produce hydrogen gas while being charged. This is highly explosive. Do not smoke around batteries. Extinguish all flames in the area. The hydrogen gas may explode resulting in fire, personal injury, property damage or death.

Testing the Battery



Hydrometer (Cylinder Type).

There are several ways in which a battery can be tested and monitored. The motorhome uses a monitor panel which shows the status of the house batteries at a quick glance. Pressing and holding the test button, the power level will be displayed on the battery scale.

A more efficient way of testing the batteries is to check the electrolyte solution. The only way to test a battery's electrolyte solution is with a hydrometer. Many styles are available, from types with cylinder graduation (shown here) to types with floating balls. Hydrometers can be purchased from most auto parts stores. The hydrometer tests the battery's electrolyte solution which is measured in specific gravity. Distilled water has a specific assigned gravity of 1,000. The hydrometer is calibrated to this mark. Pure sulfuric acid has a specific gravity reading of 1,840. The acid is 1.84 times heavier than water. The electrolyte solution is about 64% water to 36% acid (fully charged battery). Hydrometers with cylinder graduation are graphed and the exact state of specific gravity can be determined.

Temperature and recent battery activity (charging or discharging) affect the hydrometer readings. It is best to check the battery when it has been "at rest" for at least three hours, although readings taken at other times will give a "ballpark" figure. When using the hydrometer, draw the electrolyte solution up into the tube. Allow the hydrometer to attain the same temperature as the electrolyte solution. Note the reading for that cell. Complete the same test for the rest of the cells on that battery bank.

The hydrometer is calibrated at 80° F. Temperature affects the hydrometer readings. The higher the electrolyte temperature, the higher the specific gravity reading. The lower the temperature, the lower the specific gravity reading. Add or subtract four points for each 10° variance from the 80° F chart. Readings between cells should not vary more than 50 points.

If one cell in a particular battery bank being tested is at a 50% state of charge while the others are indicating a full charge, charge only that battery to see if the low cell will come up. At the same time, do not over charge the "healthy" cells.

If the low cell does not come up after charging, this battery can damage the rest of the battery bank and should be replaced. An accurate digital volt meter + - .5% will also give an indicator of the battery's state of charge.

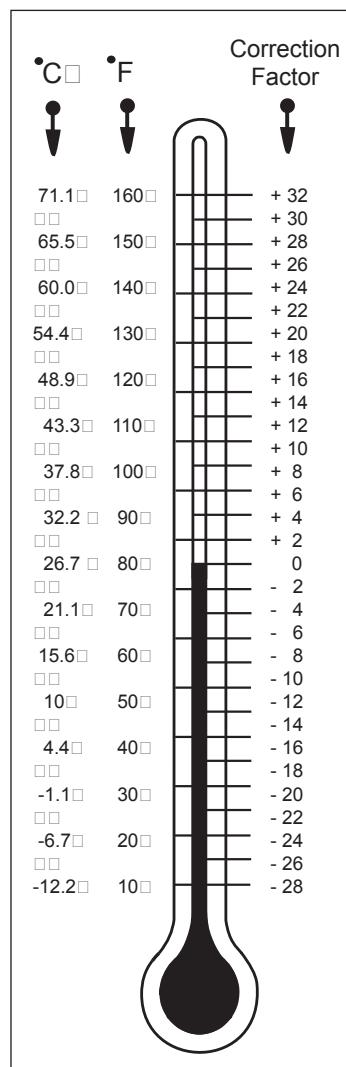
Another test that can be performed is to place a specific load on the battery for a predetermined length of time equal to that particular battery's rating. This machine is usually an adjustable carbon pile that can vary the load being applied to the battery(s) while monitoring voltage to see if they will perform to their specific rated capacities.



NOTE: See the chart for temperature compensation. Liquid levels should be even between the cells of the battery being tested as it will affect the accuracy of the test.



WARNING: Sulfuric acid in the batteries can cause severe injury or death. Sulfuric acid can cause permanent damage to eyes, burn skin and eat holes in clothing. Always wear splash-proof safety goggles when working around the battery. If the battery electrolyte is splashed in the eyes, or on skin, immediately flush the affected area for 15 minutes with large quantities of clean water. In case of eye contact, seek immediate medical aid. Never add acid to a battery once the battery has been placed in service. Doing so may result in hazardous splattering of electrolyte.



Temperature Correction Chart.

Reasons Why Batteries Fail

1. Physical Condition:

Active material flakes off the plates and falls to the bottom of the cell.

This is normal, but sediment accumulation under the plates can short out a cell. The plate separators fail to insulate positive and negative plates in a cell and the cell becomes shorted, ruining the battery.

2. Insufficient Electrolyte:

This allows exposed portions of the plates to sulfate rapidly. This reduces the battery's ability to accept a charge and the battery capacity is reduced. Accelerated erosion of the lower portions of the plates occur from higher than normal acid content due to water loss. Only the water evaporates, not the acid. The battery also has a higher internal resistance when low on water. Add only distilled water. Fill each cell to the bottom of the vent well when the battery is warm. Filling a very cold battery with water to the bottom of the vent well will cause overspill when the battery warms up and the plates expand. A Battery Formula For Failure: the battery has a higher internal resistance when low on water, therefore: *high resistance = more heat = shorter battery life!*

3. Sulfation:

When a battery remains discharged for too long the accumulated lead sulfate in the plate material solidifies and cannot reenter the electrolyte.

When a battery is left in a discharged state the lead sulphate will crystalize. Charging the battery does not move the crystallized lead sulphate off the battery plate. The battery is damaged.

4. Overheating:

The chemical reaction inside of the battery is increased when the battery temperature rises above 125° F. This increases the corrosion of the plates and reduces the battery life. When overheated, the battery plates tend to buckle and destroy the structural integrity of the battery.

5. Freezing:

When the electrolyte freezes, ice formed dislodges the active material from the plates. The battery case may crack and the electrolyte will leak out when thawed. It is especially important to keep a battery at full charge in cold weather to prevent freezing. The high specific gravity of a fully charged battery does not freeze as easily. Never attempt to charge a frozen battery. Warm it up first.

6. Corrosion:

Corrosion from spilled or splashed electrolyte form deposits that can conduct electricity and can cause battery drain. Clean off all corrosion, especially around the battery terminals and on the top of the battery. Prevent accumulation by coating the terminals and the exposed metal cable connectors with high temperature grease.

7. Overcharging:

Overcharging rapidly converts water to gas and decreases the electrolyte's water content as the water evaporates. The electrolyte level drops and becomes more acid in content. This subjects the plates to a higher concentration of sulfuric acid and results in early battery failure.



NOTE: Any time more than one or two ounces of distilled water is added per-cell per-thousand miles, check the motorhome charging system for overcharging. Prolonged overcharging generates excessive heat inside the battery, which buckles the plates and destroys the battery. It is a fact that over 50% of battery failures are caused by overcharging.

Why does the voltage on a discharged battery measure the same as a fully charged battery until the loads are applied? The simple answer to this might go as follows: A battery creates electrical power by converting energy from a chemical reaction into electrical energy. As this reaction slows down the battery voltage will drop. In a lead acid battery the electrolyte conductivity (how well electrical current can flow through it) changes. The same current may be available but the rate of the reaction decreases, causing a voltage drop.

Battery Voltage & Current

Another way of looking at this is to use the analogy of a water pump (a battery is an electric pump). The pressure in psi (pounds per square inch) that a pump delivers is like a battery's voltage. The volume of water in GPM (gallons per minute) is like the electrical current. Look at a 12 psi pump with no loads (the pump is running but the outflow valve is turned off). The pump will run and the internal pressure of the pump will build up to some point higher than 12 psi. When the valve is opened, and the water is free to flow into the loads, the pressure will drop to the rated output pressure of 12 psi, but only if the load is not too big. If the pump is designed to maintain 12 psi at 15 GPM, and a load demanding 20 GPM is connected, the pump will not be able to keep up and the pressure will get sucked down to a lower psi. If the load is reduced or removed the pump will catch up and return to its rated 12 psi pressure. If the pump has an infinite source of water, such as a lake or the water utility (this is like the grid, no battery), the pump will never run out of pressure. If the pump never runs out of pressure, and is operated at or below its 15 GPM level, it will hold 12 psi. However, a pump that is connected to a water tank with a

finite capacity will start to lose the ability to hold pressure as the level of water in the tank drops. Think of siphoning water from a bucket. As the level of the water drops, the volume of water exiting the siphon slows down.

When the tank is full it is capable of feeding more “pressure” to the pump inlet due to gravity, and the pump always has enough water available to maintain its rated pressure and volume. However, if the water tank gets low the pump will not have enough water volume coming in to maintain 12 psi at 15 GPM. If the loads are removed from the pump by closing the valve on the outflow, even with low pressure in the tank the pump will eventually pressure up to 12 psi. It will just take it longer to get there. When the valve is opened the pump will sustain 12 psi for a brief period, but since the tank is no longer feeding the pump as fast as needed the pressure will eventually drop. This analogy can be restated by replacing the pump with a battery, pressure with voltage, volume with amps, outflow valve with a switch, water with electricity and the water tank with the battery electrolyte.

The level of the tank could be thought of as the rate of the reaction occurring in the electrolyte. When the battery is fully charged the electrolyte has an excess of reactions taking place to feed the battery terminals. This tapers off with time as the electrolyte is spent, so maintaining voltage becomes possible. With no loads the discharged electrolyte will be capable of producing close to the rated voltage, but only after a period of time has elapsed for enough of a reaction to take place to bring the voltage back up. Hopefully, this explanation will clarify why a battery measured at rest can indicate close to its rated voltage but will not run a load.

Battery Charge Time & Consumption Rate

Calculating Run Times:

Calculating run time figures when operating 120 Volt AC electrical items with an inverter can be exponential. This is due to battery characteristics. Flow characteristics of electrons vary with different battery types and chemical compositions. Deep cycle batteries are generally designed to slowly release a majority of their charge capacity. Deep cycle batteries are rated in amp hours (Ah) with the discharge occurring over an extended period of time before the battery is charged. Engine starting batteries are designed to quickly release large amounts of current for short durations, without depleting battery reserves. Commercial type batteries bridge the gap of deep cycle and engine batteries. Commercial batteries release medium amounts of current over a longer period of time but they are not designed to cycle their charge capacity.

The working range of a deep cycle battery is between 50 and 100% state of charge (SOC). Deep cycle batteries should not be cycled below 50% state of charge. Discharging a deep cycle battery below 50% state of charge shortens the life of the battery. Deep cycle batteries use an amp hour rating which is usually calculated over a 20 hour discharge interval. For example: A deep

cycle battery with a rated capacity of 100 Ahrs. is designed to release current at the rate of 5 Amps per hour. Multiply a 5 Amp load over a 20 hour discharge period equals the rated 100 Ahr. capacity. These discharge figures are calculated with the battery starting at 100% state of charge with the battery at 80° F when the discharge cycle begins. However, increasing the discharge load applied to the battery from five amps to ten amps on a 100 Ahr battery does not yield 10 hours of discharge time. This is due to the internal reactions which occur when a battery is discharging. Actual discharge time for a 10 Amp load may be closer to eight hours of discharge time. Increasing the load applied to the battery to 20 Amps will not yield five hours discharge time but may be less than three hours. It might be understood as a point of diminishing return.

Calculating applied loads to an inverter to approximate run time from the battery amp hours available is not an equal trade up when voltage is inverted and amperage is calculated. When the inverter is used to operate an AC load it uses approximately ten times the DC current needed from the battery when inverting 12 Volts to operate the 120 Volt item. There is also a small efficiency loss of about 10% when inverting. For example: When using the inverter to operate an AC electrical item, which has a current draw rating of 2 Amps, the inverter will use over 20 Amps DC power from the batteries.

Determining Current Consumption:

First determine the amount of current used by an AC item. For example: The television is rated at 200 watts at 120 Volts. Calculate watts to amps. Divide 200 watts by the operating voltage of 120, this equals 1.6 Amps. Multiply 1.6 Amps AC current by a factor of ten the inverter will use, this equals 16 Amps DC battery current. Add the revised 10% efficiency loss figure, this calculates to a total of 17.6 Amps DC. If the battery bank capacity is rated at 500 Ahrs., actual elapsed time to the suggested 50% state of charge would net viewing time for the television at approximately 13 hours in ideal conditions.

The run time figure will vary greatly with the actual state of charge of the battery bank when the discharge process begins. Ambient temperature, combined with other working loads, such as lights and parasitic loads applied to batteries, affect run times. Calculating the exact run time is not precise due to all the variables and equations involved; however, an approximate time figure can be obtained. Proper battery maintenance and charge cycles affect battery performance. Observe the battery condition with hydrometer and voltage readings. Use only distilled water when filling batteries. To achieve the highest quality of battery performance and longevity keep batteries in their proper operating range.

**Battery
Specifications -
House**

CHASSIS	AH (20HR)	CCA	RC (25A) MINUTES
Chassis 12 Volt Chassis 31P-MHD (2 each)	240	950	450
6 Volt Domestic U2200 (4 each) 2- With Converter	450*	**	447

*Total battery bank capacity. **Battery connections are made in a Series/Parallel connection. Domestic batteries are not rated in Cold Cranking Amps (CCA).

Battery State of Charge vs Voltage/Specific Gravity

VOLTAGE	SPECIFIC GRAVITY	STATE OF CHARGE	DEPTH OF DISCHARGE
12.66	1.265	100%	0%
12.45	1.225	75%	25%
12.25	1.190	50%	50%
12.05	1.145	25%	75%
11.90	1.100	0%	100%

CUMMINS ENGINE COLD CRANKING AMPS REQUIREMENTS

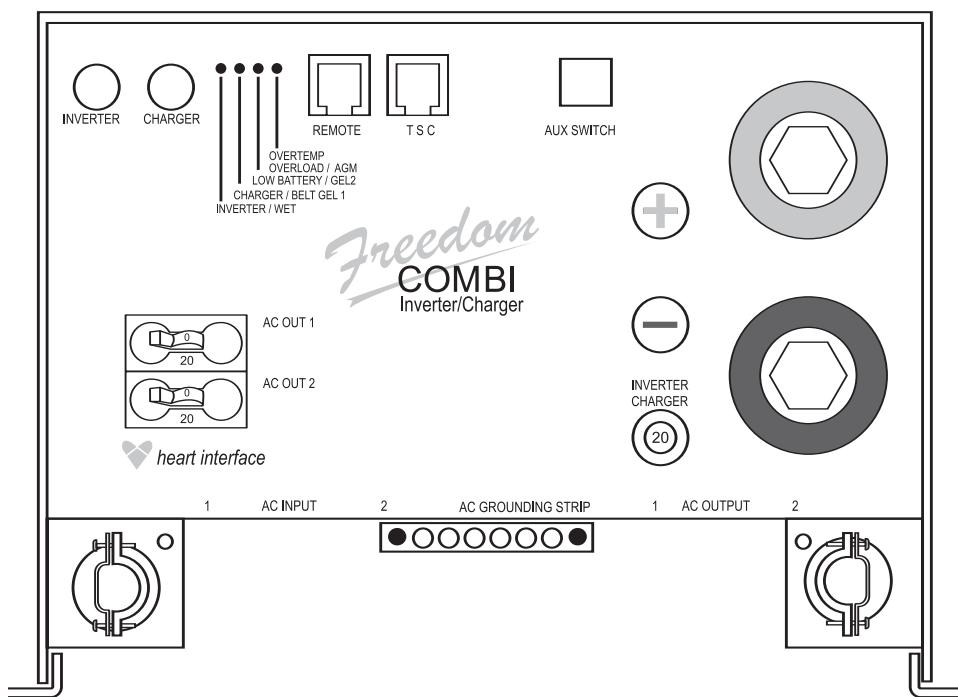
ISB	1100	CCA	12 VOLTS
ISC	1250	CCA	12 VOLTS

BULB USAGE CHART - INTERIOR

INTERIOR BULB CHART	
LOCATION	BULB NUMBER
LR Wall Lamps	C 921 or 912
BR Wall Lamps	12 Volt 1076
Ceiling Light - Flourescent	F8T5 CW / 1141
Ceiling Light - Halogen 3"	12 Volt 10 Watt FC2585
Vanity Light	12 Volt 9-019F
Dash Indicator Lamps	161

The inverter performs two functions, first it changes DC battery power to AC electrical power. Second, it charges the batteries when hooked to shore power or operating from the generator. Use the inverter to supply AC power when shore power is not available and the generator is not going to be used as a secondary AC power source. The inverter supplies AC power to most receptacles, the television and microwave. It is important to remember that using the inverter quickly consumes house battery power. Turn off the inverter when not in use to conserve house battery power. The remote control is used to change the variable settings.

INVERTER/CONVERTER (Optional)



To turn Inverter On:

- Press the switch marked INVERT on the remote panel.

Battery Charging

The inverter will automatically begin charging when AC power is supplied from shore service or the generator. The charger uses a three-stage cycle to charge the batteries. If desired the charger may be turned off.

To turn the charger OFF or back ON:

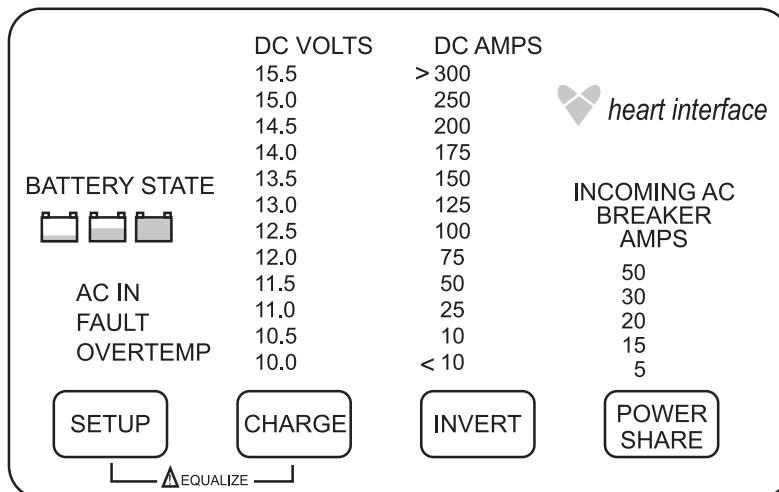
- Press the switch marked “CHARGE” on the remote panel.



Reference: Complete detailed instructions and guidance can be found in the Owner's Information File Box. Please refer to the information booklet provided from the manufacturer.

Remote Panel

The remote panel monitors the inverter status and is used to change variable settings. The panel uses LED lights to monitor values when hooked to shore power, inverting or in the set-up mode.



LED indications when hooked to Shore Power:

- DC Volts represents DC output voltage at the inverter.
- DC Amps represents the amount of DC charge current.

LED indications when Inverting:

- DC Volts represents DC battery voltage at the inverter.
- DC Amps represents the amount of DC discharge current.

LED indications when in Set-up Mode:

- DC Volts represents the amount of Amp Hours of the battery bank.
- DC Amps represents the amount of load (measured in watts) needed to activate the inverter.

The battery state indicator performs two functions. When not hooked to shore power the Battery State indicator displays the approximate state of charge of the house batteries. When connected to shore power or operating from the generator, the lamps indicate what part of the charge cycle the inverter is in.

Battery State Indicator

- **Red = Bulk Charge**
- **Yellow = Accept Charge**
- **Green = Float Charge**

Battery Charger Circuit Breaker:

Circuit Breakers

The circuit breaker for the charger is located on the front of the inverter. The breaker is a re-settable breaker in case an over current or short circuit condition occurs within the Battery Charger circuitry.

AC Out Circuit Breakers:

Two branch circuit breakers are located on the front of the inverter. One of the branch circuit breakers supplies AC power to various receptacles. The other breaker supplies AC power to the microwave.

The inverter may be placed in "STAND-BY" when hooked to shore power or operating from the generator. If AC power discontinues, the inverter activates automatically. When AC power resumes, the inverter will go back to STAND-BY mode. STAND-BY mode is indicated by the **INVERT** status light flashing once every two seconds when hooked to shore power or operating from the generator.

Stand-by Mode

To enable or disable this feature:

- Press the **INVERT** button.



NOTE: Remember to disable stand-by mode when not in use. It may run down the house batteries.

Setting the Power Share amps can limit the amount of AC power available to the internal charger. Battery charger draw can exceed 20 AC amps. When hooked to anything less than 50 Amp service it may be necessary, depending on other AC loads, to adjust the Power Share amps to avoid overloading the shore power breaker.

Power Share

 **NOTE: Limiting the amount of useable current for the charger increases the amount of time necessary to charge the batteries.**

Charge Cycles

The time it takes to fully charge the batteries varies greatly. It can take several hours or even days, depending on the inverter's settings and state of charge of the batteries. The charge cycle is done in three steps:

- **First step is "BULK" charge.**

The "bulk" charge will bring the DC voltage up high, initially between 14.2-14.5 Volts DC, depending on conditions. The length of the bulk charge cycle depends on the condition of the battery, loads and other factors. When the battery voltage attains 14.2-14.5 Volts DC, the charger begins the next cycle.

- **Second step is the "ACCEPT" cycle.**

The voltage in this cycle is the same as the bulk charge cycle 14.2-14.5 Volts DC. The length of the absorb cycle will vary with state of charge of the batteries.

- **Final step is the "FLOAT" charge cycle.**

Approximately 80% of the charging has been completed at this time. The float charge voltage is generally around 13.3-13.7 Volts DC. The last 20% of the charge cycle of the batteries typically takes the most amount of time. The charging cycle is initiated each time the inverter is disconnected or reconnected to AC power. Repeated charging cycles in succession can lead to boiling of the batteries.

Pass-through Relay

Incorporated in the inverter is a double pole "pass-through" relay that trips when AC power is supplied to the input terminals. This relay transfers AC power through the inverter to the two circuit breakers located on the front of the inverter. The two breakers supply AC power to various outlets and the microwave. When AC power is supplied to the inverter, the internal battery charger will "ramp up" battery charge voltage. A 20 second time delay allows charge stabilization before pass through AC power is supplied to the breakers.

Temperature Sensitive Charging

The inverter uses a battery temperature sensor to adjust charge voltage. When the battery temperature rises the sensor sends this information to the inverter to decrease charge voltage. Voltage compensation with temperature variation is necessary to keep charge voltage at optimum values. The sensor is secured to the terminal of the battery.

Battery Capacity and Idle Mode are adjustable. The program mode must be entered to change a setting.

Programming the Inverter

To Enter the Programming Mode:

- Press and hold the **SETUP** button for five seconds. LED lamps will change from **green** to **red**.
- If a setting change does not occur within five seconds, the remote returns to the user menu.
- Use the Remote Owner's Manual to cross-reference the LED lights to their respective indication.

Idle Mode:

Setting the **IDLE** mode controls the threshold (in watts) that turns the inverter on from search mode. The adjustment range is 5 to 100 watts. The factory setting is five watts. Press the **INVERT** button to change the settings.

Battery Capacity:

Setting the proper battery capacity tailors the internal charger to optimum values. The Factory setting is 400. Press the **CHARGE** button to change the settings.

Batteries can sulfate over time. When sulfating occurs some of the sulfuric acid has adhered to the lead plates of the battery and does not enter the electrolyte solution though normal battery charging. A battery with a low concentration of acid in the electrolyte will effect the battery's performance. Sulfation can occur when a battery is stored in a discharged condition or when a battery is continually cycled below a 50% state of charge. An indication a battery has sulfated is when the inverter is in float charge and the hydrometer reading has stabilized below a full state of charge (approximately 1260).

Equalize Charge

An equalize charge cycle may promote the acid to leave the lead plate and enter the electrolyte solution. This is done by charging the battery at a slightly higher than normal voltage for a short duration. The equalization cycle will charge the batteries at approximately 15.5 Volts for eight hours. To maximize the results from equalize charging initiate the equalize cycle after the inverter has entered float charge.

Only liquid lead acid or absorb glass matte (AGM) type batteries should be equalize charged. Other battery types can be damaged if equalize charged. Monitor the electrolyte solution closely when equalizing a liquid lead acid battery. A battery's "healthy" cell(s) can be damaged if overcharged. High DC charge voltages can also damage voltage sensitive electronic equipment.



NOTE: Several precautions should be used when performing an equalize charge.

Precautions to Take When Performing an Equalize Charge:

- Only equalize charge batteries with the motorhome in a well-ventilated area, preferably outdoors. Liquid lead acid batteries produce explosive hydrogen gas when charging. Extinguish all flames and eliminate other sources of ignition.
- Secure the battery compartment door in the open position.
- Remove the battery caps during the equalize charge cycle.
- A liquid lead acid battery will consume water when equalize charged. Fill battery cells with distilled water before beginning an equalize charge cycle. Do not overfill the cells. Overfilled battery cells will spatter excess electrolyte.
- Protect all painted surfaces from any electrolyte solution that may spatter during equalize charging. If the electrolyte solution spatters on the exterior painted surface rinse immediately using large quantities of water.
- Turn **OFF** the battery cut-off switch located at the entry door.
- Observing polarity, disconnect the 12 Volt DC supply from the refrigerator. Access supply leads through the outside refrigerator compartment. Tape the positive lead to prevent a short circuit.
- Avoid operating any electrical equipment while in the equalize charge cycle.

To Equalize Charge:

- Press and hold the **SETUP** button on the remote for five seconds.
- After the LED lights change from green to red press and hold the **SETUP** and **CHARGE** buttons simultaneously.
- The Battery State indicator lamps flashing sequentially indicate equalize charge. The inverter will run an equalize charge cycle for about eight hours.

To Exit Equalize Charge:

- The equalize charge cycle may be discontinued at any time during the charge cycle. Press the **CHARGE** button.
- Allow the batteries to cool for approximately three hours. Check the electrolyte solution with a hydrometer. Avoid overcharging the battery resulting in damage to the healthy cells.
- Add distilled water if necessary. Install battery caps. Use large quantities of water to rinse the entire battery compartment and surrounding area.
- Observing polarity, hook the 12 Volt DC supply leads to the back of the refrigerator. Do not reverse polarity. Damage to the refrigerator circuit board can result.



CAUTION: Never attempt to charge or equalize charge a frozen battery.



WARNING: Liquid lead acid batteries produce highly explosive hydrogen gas when being charged. Extinguish all flames and other sources of ignition. Never smoke around batteries.

Danger of explosion, fire, property damage, serious personal injury or death can result!

NOTES

KNIGHT

SECTION 9
ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS - CHASSIS

INTRODUCTION	• 239
BATTERY DISCONNECT - CHASSIS	• 239
BATTERY CHASSIS	• 240
<i>Battery Specifications - Chassis</i>	• 241
FUSES & CIRCUITS - CHASSIS	• 242
<i>Distribution Panel - Front</i>	• 242
ALTERNATOR	• 244
STEERING COLUMN	• 245
<i>Tilt & Telescope</i>	• 245
TRANSMISSION - Shift Selector (T-1000)	• 246
TRANSMISSION - Shift Selector (MH 2000 & 3000)	• 247
<i>Parking Brake</i>	• 248
<i>Leveling Controls</i>	• 248
DASH	• 249
<i>Indicator Lamps</i>	• 249
<i>Gauges</i>	• 251
<i>Switches - at Left</i>	• 253
<i>Switches - in Middle</i>	• 255
<i>Switches - at Right</i>	• 256
<i>Air Conditioner & Heater Controls</i>	• 257
DIAGNOSTIC PLUG LOCATION	• 268
BULB USAGE - EXTERIOR	• 268

9

A majority of the lighting and appliances are designed to operate from 12 Volt DC (direct current) power. This is why the batteries play such an important role in the function of the motorhome. There are exceptions with appliances such as the microwave or television; however, indirectly they still operate from 12 Volt DC power, as they can be operated from the inverter. The chassis functions (engine, transmission, dash air, etc.) are also 12 Volt DC.

With the all technological advancements taking place in the past several years manufacturers have now incorporated electronics into these systems. It is important to keep the 12 Volt system(s) in good working order. These systems, with their incorporated electronics, are voltage sensitive. Some items can be damaged if the DC voltage is not maintained within the designed specifications.

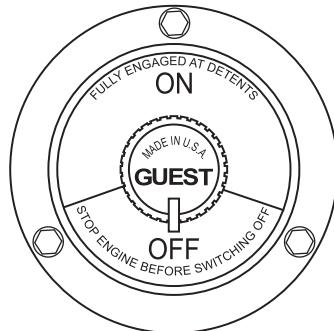
There are two separate 12 Volt systems. One is the chassis system; the other is the house system. These two systems, for the most part, are separate from one another. The house system does not operate engine functions; as the engine system does not operate house functions. However, within the two systems there are some inner connections. For example: While the motorhome is driven the alternator on the engine will charge the house batteries. Likewise, while the motorhome is plugged into shore power, or the generator is running, the engine battery(s) are being charged. Each system will supply 12 Volt DC power to the 12 Volt distribution panels. The 12 Volt panel that services a majority of the chassis system functions is located outside by the roadside front wheel. The other panel, located in the bedroom, services the house interior functions such as the interior lighting and appliances. You should become familiar with these panels and the items they operate.

The two different systems, engine and house, have their own set(s) of battery(s). The engine battery supplies 12 Volt DC power to the front distribution panel located in an outside compartment by the roadside front wheel. This panel contains mostly engine system fuses and wiring such as headlights, taillight, dashboard functions, gauges, etc. The house battery(s) supplies 12 Volt DC power to the distribution panel located in the bedroom. This panel contains fuses for the house, interior lighting and appliances, such as the furnace and water heater.

The main battery disconnect for the chassis battery turns the DC power on or off to the front electrical bay. Most chassis and engine functions are interrupted when the battery disconnect is turned off. Some electronic items require a constant power source for memory retention such as the dash radios. Some electronic components of the engine and transmission require a constant power source. Turn the main battery disconnect switch off when the motorhome is going to be stored, or when performing electrical maintenance. If possible, leave the motorhome plugged into an AC source with the battery disconnect switch on. This will help prevent the

INTRODUCTION

BATTERY DISCONNECT - CHASSIS



possibility of dead batteries. If an AC source is not available, and the motorhome is not going to be used or is stored more than 48 hours, it is recommended to turn the battery disconnect switch off.



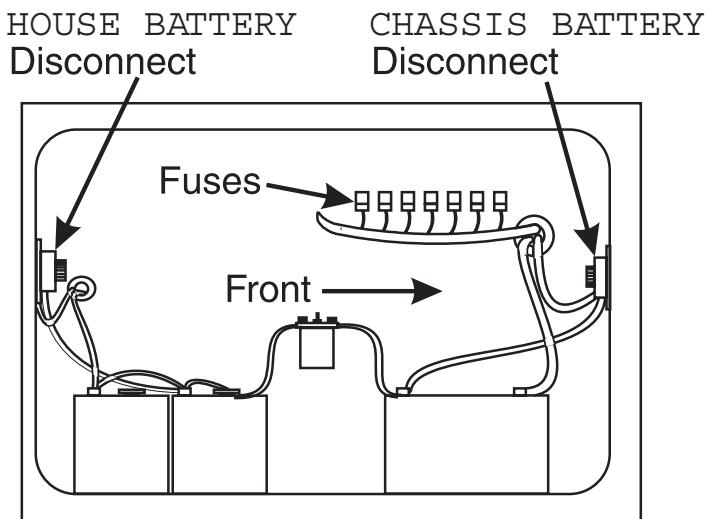
NOTE: The solar panels will charge the batteries with the disconnect switch off.



WARNING: When the frame or other welding is involved for motorhome repair, or modification, the following precautions are required to protect electronic components in the motorhome chassis:

1. Disconnect the (+) positive and (-) negative battery connection and any electronic control ground wires connected to the frame or chassis.
2. Cover electronic control components and wiring to protect from hot sparks.
3. Disconnect the wiring harness connectors at the transmission electronic control unit. Open bed storage compartment, open engine access door. The ECU is located above the transmission.
4. Do not connect welding cables to electronic control components.
5. The welding ground cable should be attached no more than two feet from the part to be welded.

BATTERY - CHASSIS



The chassis battery operates only chassis and engine functions. The chassis battery is a crank type battery, producing the high amperage needed to start the engine. Engine starters initially require a large amount of current to crank an engine. Initial starter amperage draw exceeds 1200 amps. The type of application in which the engine battery is used differs from the house battery application. The engine battery state of charge remains consistent. Maintenance is still required with an engine battery. Regular electrolyte level checks and hydrometer readings should be performed. High electrolyte consumption, or inconsistent hydrometer cell readings, may indicate a charging system problem. Perform a charging system and current draw check if the battery is exhibiting abnormal hydrometer readings.



NOTE: Replacement batteries should have the same cold cranking amp (CCA) rating.

**Battery
Specifications
- Chassis**

CHASSIS	AH (20HR)	CCA	RC (25A) MINUTES
Chassis 12 Volt Chassis 31P-MHD (2 each)	240	950	450
6 Volt Domestic U2200 (4 each) (2 each w/ converter)	450*	**	447

*Total battery bank capacity. **Battery connections are made in a Series/Parallel connection. Domestic batteries are not rated in Cold Cranking Amps (CCA).

Approximate Hours at Ampere Load					
	5 AMPS	10 AMPS	15 AMPS	20 AMPS	25 AMPS
U2200	55.0	22	12.5	9.1	7.0

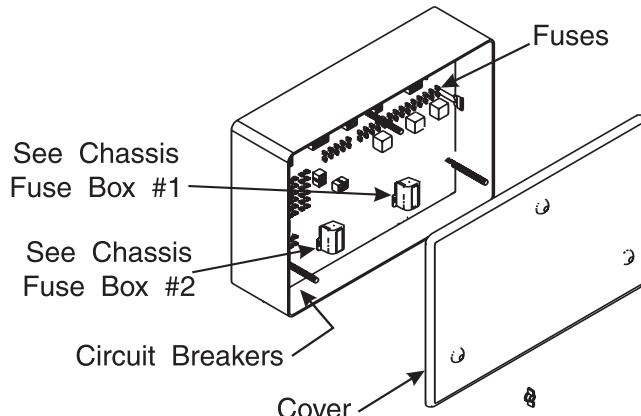
Battery State of Charge vs Voltage/Specific Gravity			
VOLTAGE	SPECIFIC GRAVITY	STATE OF CHARGE	DEPTH OF DISCHARGE
12.66	1.265	100%	0%
12.45	1.225	75%	25%
12.25	1.190	50%	50%
12.05	1.145	25%	75%
11.90	1.100	0%	100%

CUMMINS ENGINE COLD CRANKING AMPS REQUIREMENTS				
ISB	1100	CCA	12	VOLTS
ISC	1250	CCA	12	VOLTS

CCA Rating are at 0° F. These are the minimum requirements.

FUSES & CIRCUITS - CHASSIS

Distribution Panel - Front



Front Distribution Panel

The front electrical panel is located on the roadside, ahead of the front wheel. It contains the fuses, self resetting supply circuit breakers, solenoid and relays.

The automotive fuses and emergency flashers are located in the front electrical panel. The fuses are the standard plug-in type (ATO). When a fuse "BLOWS," the wire in middle of the plastic case will be broken. A bad or blown fuse must be replaced with a fuse of the same rating and type. Using a fuse of a different type rating will defeat the circuit protection provided by the fuse, which could result in damage to the motorhome's electrical system. If a fuse has been replaced and it "BLOWS" repeatedly, that may be an indication that a fault exists or an electronic component has failed. It is recommended that the motorhome be taken to a qualified RV technician before any future use to diagnose and repair the problem. Circuits are identified on the fuse label located on the inside of the electrical compartment door.

Circuit Breakers And Fuses

House:

1. Reserved
2. LP/CO Detector - 3 amp Fuse
3. Power Seat (Driver) - 15 amp Circuit Breaker
4. Power Seat (Passenger) - 15 amp Circuit Breaker
5. Storage Lights - 15 amp Fuse
6. Service Lights/LP SOL - 15 amp Fuse
7. Auxiliary Start/TV AMP 7.5 amp Fuse
8. Reserved
9. Map Lights - 7.5 amp Fuse
10. Reserved C.B. Radio
11. 12 Volt Receptacle - 15 amp Fuse
12. Reserved

Chassis:

13. Step Switch - 5 amp Fuse
14. Step Motor - 20 amp Fuse
15. Reserved
16. Reserved
17. Reserved Visors - 5 amp Fuse
18. Step Cover - 2 amp Fuse
19. Reserved

Accessories:

20. Rear Vision - 5 amp Fuse
21. Leveling Jacks - 15 amp Fuse
22. Air Dumps - 15 amp Fuse
23. Reserved
24. Reserved

Ignition:

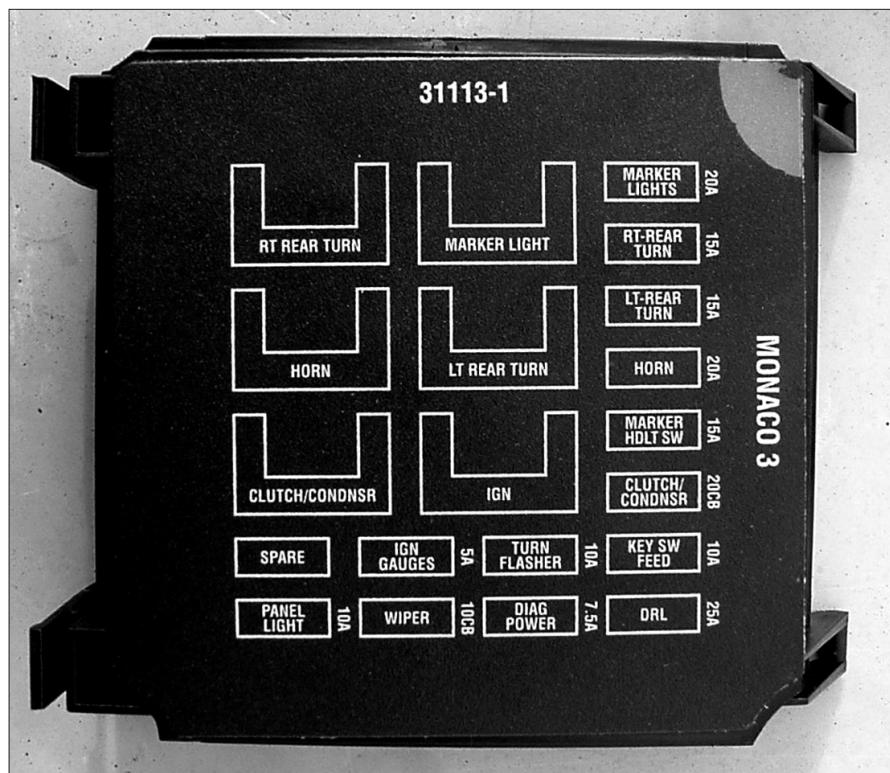
25. Air Conditioner - 20 amp Fuse
26. Jack/Antenna Warning Lights - 5 amp Fuse
27. TV IGN Relay & Leveler Lock - 7.5 amp Fuse
28. Slide-Out - IGN Relay - 7.5 amp Fuse
29. Mirror Heater - 15 amp Fuse
30. Mirror Control - 1 amp Fuse
31. Power Pedal 10 amp Fuse
32. Reserved
33. Step/ISO/Vac Sense - 7.5 amp Fuse

Marker (Chassis):

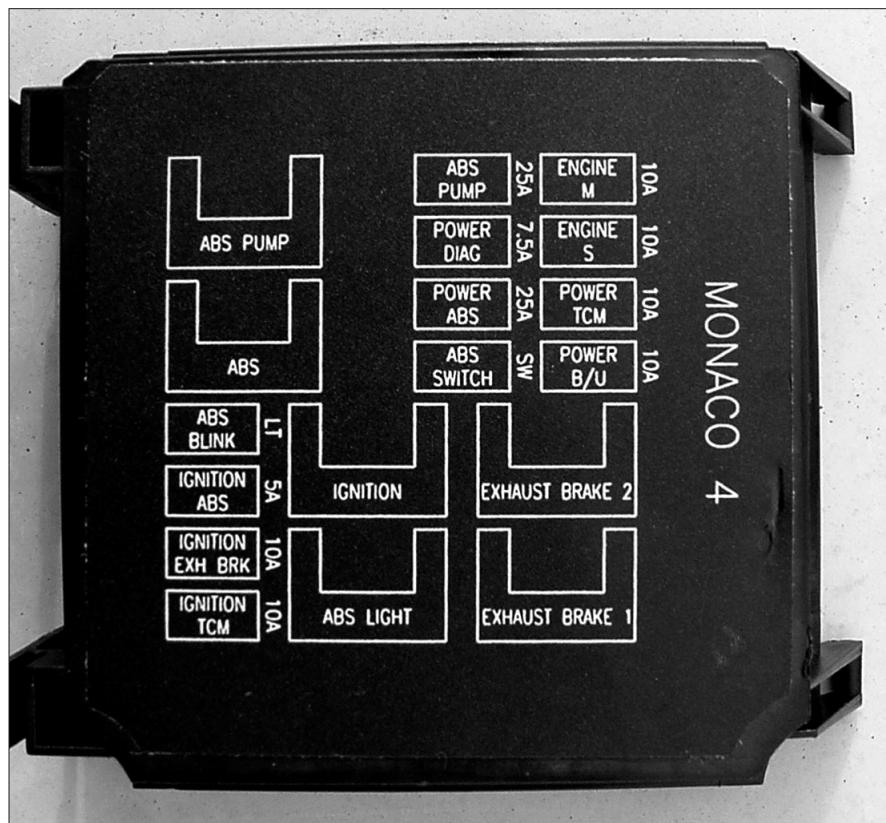
34. Marker Lights - 7.5 amp Fuse

Circuit Breakers:

- Refrigerator 2-Way/3-Way 5/30A
- Interior Fuse Panel 50A



Located in the fuse bay below driver window.



Located in rear compartment, curbside.

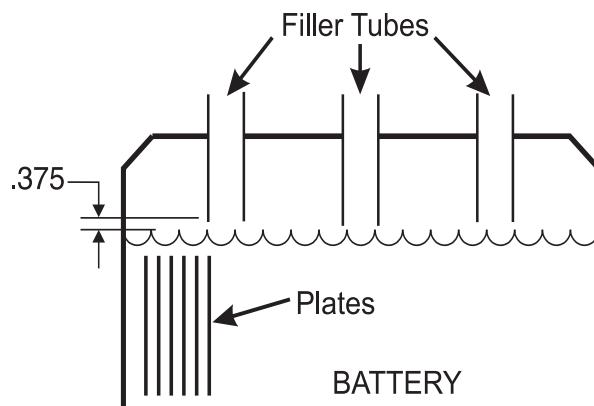
ALTERNATOR

The alternator is designed to convert mechanical energy produced from the engine, and convert the mechanical energy into an electrical energy. The electrical energy is first internally generated in the form of an AC voltage. The AC voltage is then passed through a diode bridge to rectify the voltage to a DC voltage level. The DC voltage level is used to maintain a proper level of voltage for operating the motorhome. The alternator is designed to operate at 12 Volt DC with a maximum output of 160 Amps.

Features:

- Enclosed brushes.
- Directional fan design.
- Lightweight compact construction.
- Simple two wire connection (B+ and B-).
- One terminal for Tachometer (AC).
- One terminal for Dash warning lamp (L).
- The output of the alternator range is 13.5 to 14.2 Volt DC. Connect a voltmeter to the (B+) terminal of the alternator and chassis ground. Idle the engine up to 1,200 rpm.
- Check all wiring for burnt or loose connections. Repair as needed.
- Check all grounds and connections to ensure they are clean and tight.
- Inspect the alternator for damage. A broken fan blade can damage an alternator or make it out of balance.
- Check belt, pulley and fan for wear. Replace as needed.
- Never attempt to disconnect the battery or battery wire from the alternator with the engine running. This can cause damage to the alternator or the regulator.
- The pulley for the alternator should be torqued to 80 foot pounds.

Remember the alternator is not a battery charger. It is designed to maintain the proper operating voltage level for the motorhome. A battery with a low charge or a dead battery may cause damage to the alternator.



The distilled water level in the battery should be 3/8" below the vent tube.

Any water touching the bottom of the vent tube will boil out when charging.

Tilt and telescope steering wheel control lever is located on the steering column.

- To tilt the steering wheel, pull the lever up. Tilt the steering wheel where you want it. Release the lever and it will lock the steering wheel in the new position.
- To telescope the steering wheel, push and hold the lever down. Push down or pull up on the steering wheel until the wheel is where you want it. Release the lever and the steering wheel will lock in the new position.

Turn indicator and headlight high/low dimmer control lever is located on the steering column.

- Pushing the lever forward will activate the right turn indicator circuits when the ignition is on.
- Pulling the lever down will activate the left turn indicator circuits when the ignition is on.
- Pulling the lever up will select high/low beam circuits when the head lights are ON.

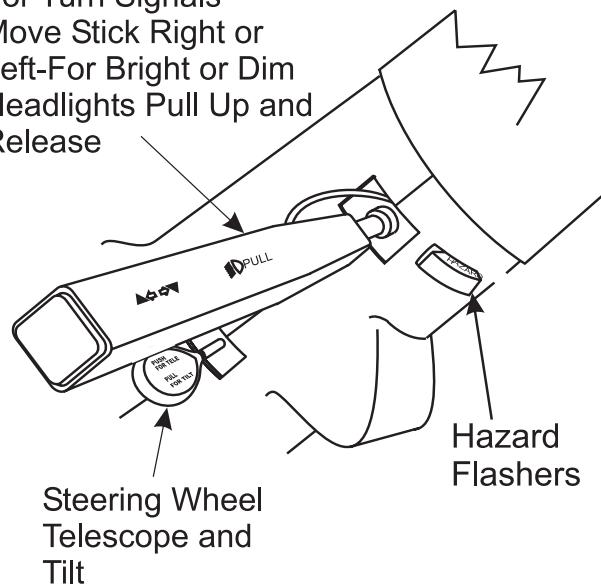
Hazard Flashers:

- The flasher button is located on the steering column.
- To turn four way flasher on, pull out on flasher button.
- To shut off flasher, push button inwards.

STEERING COLUMN - Tilt & Telescope

For Turn Signals

Move Stick Right or Left-For Bright or Dim Headlights Pull Up and Release



TRANSMISSION - Shift Selector (T-1000)

Park (P):

Places the transmission in neutral and engages the park pawl.

Reverse (R):

For backing up the motorhome.

Neutral (N):

Neutral operation.

Overdrive (OD):

Highway driving range 5.

Drive (D):

City driving range 3 and 4.

Second Range (2):

Heavy city traffic and braking on steeper downgrades.

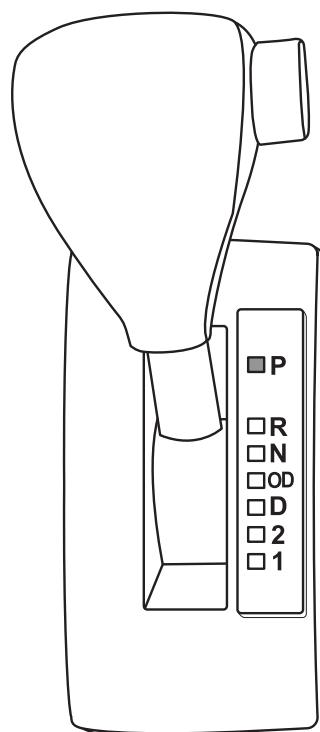
First Range (1):

Driving on steep grades.

Pulling through mud or snow.

Maneuvering in tight spots.

First range provides the maximum driving torque and braking effect.

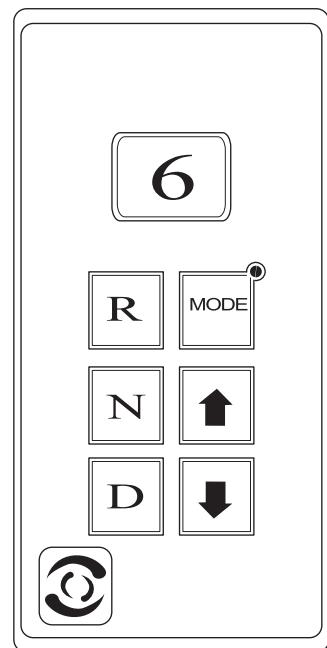


Transmission Key Pad:

The function of each position of the keypad push-button shifter is as follows:

- Select the **REVERSE** gear by pressing **R**.
- Select **NEUTRAL** by pressing **N**. The area around the **N** button is a raised ridge so the driver can orient his hand to the push buttons by touch, without looking at the display.
- Select **DRIVE** range by pressing **D**. The highest forward gear appears on the **SELECT** display and the transmission will shift to the starting gear.
- The **UPSHIFT** and **DOWNSHIFT** arrow buttons are used to select a higher (if not in **D**) or lower (if not in **1**) forward range. These buttons are not functional in **NEUTRAL** or **REVERSE**. One press changes the range selected by one range. If the button is held continuously the selected range will continue to change up or down until the button is released or until the highest/lowest possible range of gears is selected.
- The fluid level of the transmission can also be checked from the shift selector keypad. Press the up and down arrow button simultaneously while the motorhome is at a rest position. This activates the diagnostic circuitry of the transmission. To exit the diagnostics press **N**.

TRANSMISSION - Shift Selector (MH 2000 & 3000)



Transmission Key Pad.



NOTE: The oil level sensor method of checking the fluid level compensates for transmission fluid temperature between 60° C - 104° C (140° F - 220° F). Any temperature below 60° C (140° F), or above 104° C (220° F) will result in an Invalid for Display condition.

- The **MODE** button will enable the secondary shift point to be selected. The transmission shift point used will be 200 rpm lower. It is further used by a service technician to access diagnostic codes when troubleshooting. The diagnostic circuitry must be enabled to display the codes.

To Enter Economy Mode:

Press the **MODE** button. The LED will illuminate.

To Exit Economy Mode:

Press the **MODE** button. The LED will extinguish.

- When the Auxiliary Braking device is used, the display will change to default reading of two or three. This default is pre-selected at the factory and can only be reprogrammed by an authorized Allison Service center. The transmission is not in second or third gear. This is only the reference for the rpm shifts points to optimize the braking capacity.



CAUTION: Do not use the economy mode in heavy stop and go traffic or mountainous terrains. While in economy mode using heavy throttle applications with frequent shifting will raise transmission fluid temperature. Exit economy mode until road conditions improve.

Parking Brake

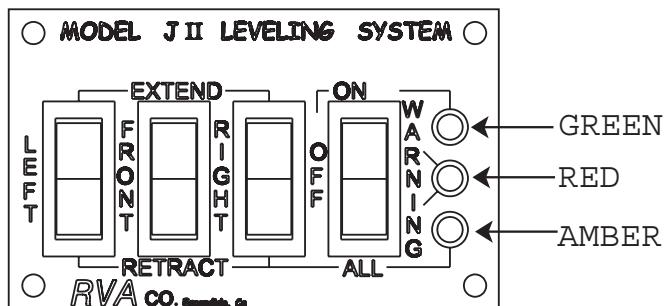


The parking brake system is activated when the push-pull control knob (located on the driver's left console panel) is pulled. When the knob is pushed, the brake is released. Prior to driving, allow time for the air compressor to build up sufficient air to shut off the air warning lamp.



WARNING: If the air tank is not dumped, there is the possibility of an accidental release of the parking brake. Traveling with small children and/or pets may require a small block to be fabricated to prevent accidental release. The block should be placed under the knob and rested on the dash panel. A wooden clothes pin clasped at the base of the shaft will work.

Leveling Controls

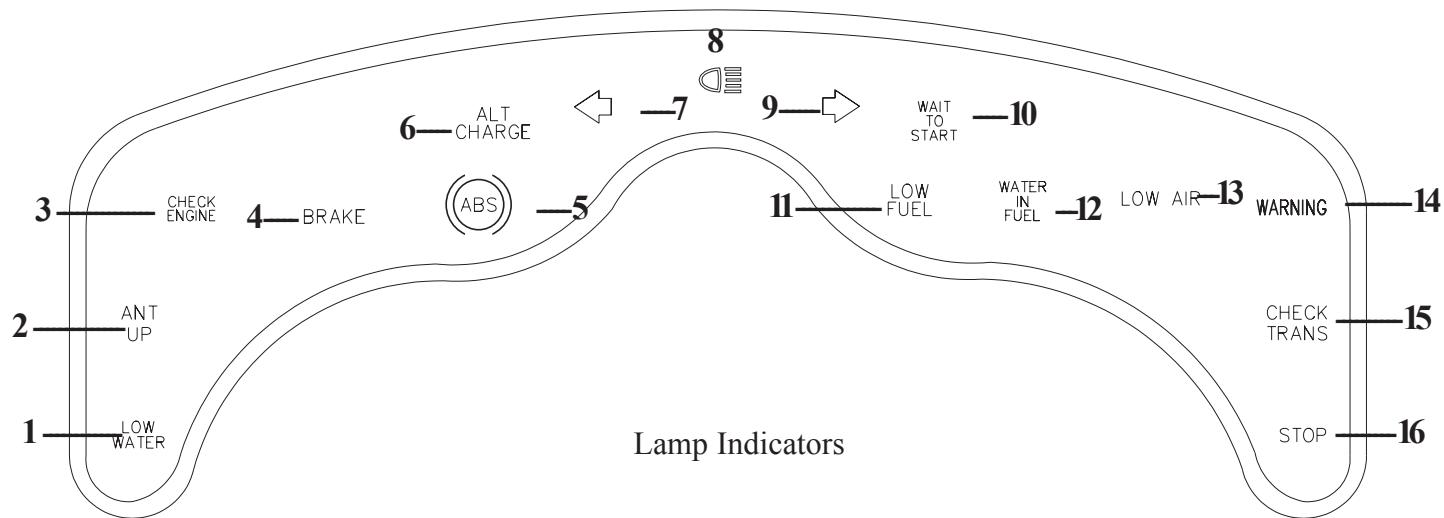


Leveling Panel:

This control panel is for remote operations of hydraulic leveling system. The module consist of four rocker switches and three indicator lamps. Rocker switches are three position spring loaded switches.

The center position is neutral or **OFF**. The up position is used for the extend functions. The down position is for the retract functions. Switch 1, 2, 3 control movement of the leveling jacks. Switch 4 is for power. Switch 5 is for retracting all leveling jacks, or auto leveling mode.

- **Green** light indicates power is **ON**.
- **Red** light indicates jack is extended or low fluid level.
- **Amber** light indicates all jacks are retracting.

DASH - Indicator Lamps**1. Low Water:**

Indicates coolant level in the radiator is below acceptable level.

2. Ant Up:

Indicates TV antenna is not resting flat in the storage cradle.

3. Check Engine:

Indicates problems with the Cummins Engine.

4. Brake:

Indicates parking/emergency brake is applied.

5. ABS:

Indicates ABS possible fault in the ABS brake system. Also indicates faults codes for service technicians.

6. Alt Charge:

Indicates a failure within the alternator charging system.

7. Left Turn Indicator:

Indicates left turn indicator circuits active.

8. High Beam:

Indicates high beams when illuminated.

9. Right Turn:

Indicates right turn indicator circuits active.

10. Wait to Start:

Monitors the intake air heater and intake manifold temperature.

11. Low Fuel:

Indicates fuel level is becoming low.

12. Water in Fuel:

Indicates water has been detected in the fuel filter.

13. Low Air:

Indicates air storage tank low and air systems may not operate properly.



CAUTION: The Low Air Lamp will only illuminate when a low air indication is present. You should check the operation of the Low Air Lamp when air tank is drained.

14. Warning:

Indicates out of range condition exist within the engine protection circuits.

15. Check Trans:

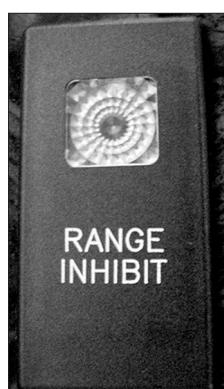
Alerts of problems related to the Allison Transmission.

16. Stop:

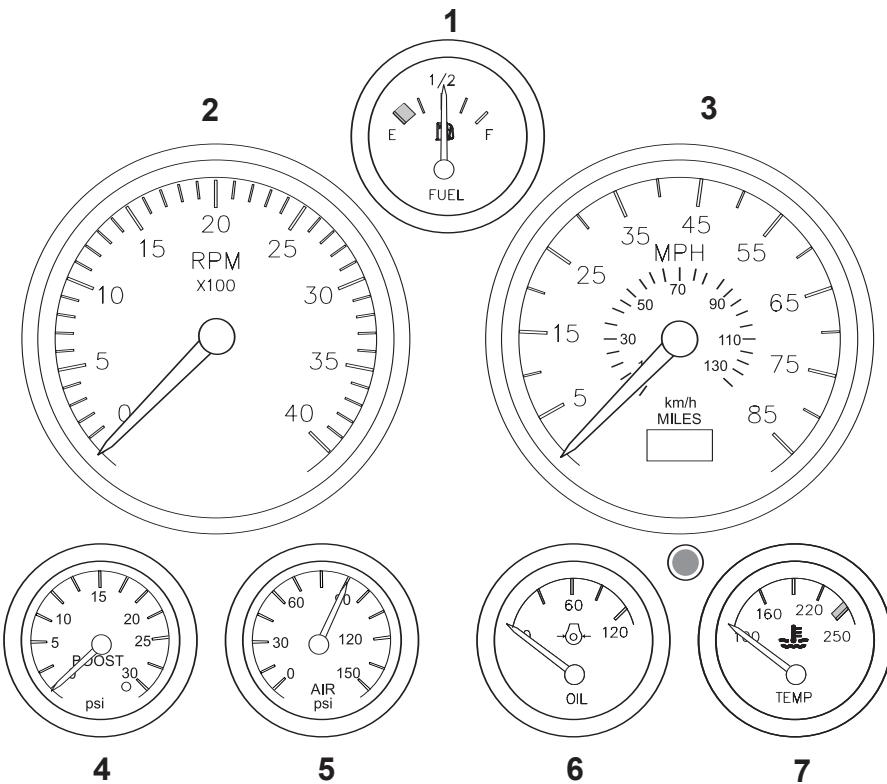
Alerts of severe out of range condition within the engine protection circuits.

Range Inhibited Lamp (T-1000 transmission only):

Indicates operation of the transmission is being inhibited and range shifts are inhibited. Located on the left switch panel.



Range Inhibit Lamp for the T 1000 transmission only.



Gauges may vary from model to model.

1. Fuel Gauge:

The fuel gauge will register the approximate fuel level in the tank when the ignition switch is in the run position.



NOTE: Fuel mileage varies with driving style and road conditions. Always average more than one tankful to obtain a more accurate figure. The diesel generator system uses fuel from the main tank, and will affect fuel mileage figures. The diesel generator will not operate below 1/4 tank of fuel to insure there is enough fuel to run the main engine.

2. Tachometer:

Displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (RPM). Normal low idle speed can vary from 700 rpm to 875 rpm. The tachometer reads the output pulse of the alternator. If the tachometer quits, have the alternator checked immediately.

3. Speedometer:

Indicates the speed MPH and is located on right side of the instrument cluster. The Odometer/Trip Meter is built in to the meter.

Odometer/Trip Meter:

Records the mileage driven, as well as keeps track of mileage on a trip. To operate, push the round black button under the speedometer. This changes the odometer mileage reading to the trip mileage reading. The black reset button sets the trip mileage back to zero when held for 2-3 seconds. Release the button and momentarily press the button again. This changes the trip mileage reading to the odometer mileage reading.

4. Turbo Boost Gauge:

The turbo boost gauge indicates the boost pressure produced by the engine turbocharger.

5. Air Pressure Gauge: (Air over hydraulic brakes) This gauge uses two needles to indicate air system pressures. One needle indicates air pressure of the front air tank. The other needle indicates air pressure of the rear air tank. The normal air system operating pressures are 105 to 120 psi. These air pressures are preset at the factory. If a problem occurs with either air system not maintaining normal operating pressure, it is an indication of a malfunction in the air system. Use caution and stop the motorhome in a safe area. Contact your dealer immediately.



NOTE: It is not safe to drive the motorhome with low air pressure. Damage can occur to the suspension and driveline, also affecting operation of the air brake system.

6. Engine Oil Pressure Gauge:

Indicates the pressure of the oil and not the amount of oil in the system. Normal ranges are between 15 psi and 60 psi.

7. Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge:

Under average conditions, the gauge will read between 160° F and 212° F. Monitor this gauge frequently when climbing hills, towing, or in high ambient temperatures. Overheating may be a result of any of the following conditions:

- Low coolant level.
- Fan failure.
- Mechanical failure of the hoses or belts.
- Something blocking the charge air cooler fins.
- Climbing a long hill on a hot day.
- Towing a heavy trailer.
- Idling for long periods of time.

**Switches
- At Left**

Batt Boost: The Battery Boost switch is used in the event the motorhome chassis battery has been drained or is at a low charge level where the engine cannot start. This switch momentarily “jumps” the house battery to the motorhome domestic battery to assist in starting the engine. The boost switch, used in conjunction with engine starting procedures, should not be held for more than 30 seconds. This time period is long enough to prevent the boost solenoid from overheating.

Cruise Control Switch: This switch provides the capability of foot off the accelerator drive operation. The cruise control circuitry is incorporated in the engine and controlled by the Cummins Electronic Control Module (ECM). Do not use in heavy traffic or severe weather conditions. Control of the motorhome can be lost.

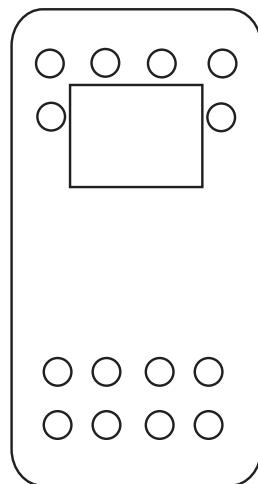
Drvr Shade: Operates the power sun visor located driver's side.

Engine Brake Switch: This switch activates the control solenoid for the engine brake system.

Idle Up/Down Switch: This switch will increase and decrease the engine idle in 25 rpm increments. There are limits to the idle speed, about 700 to 875 rpm.

Economy Mode Switch (T-1000 transmission only): This switch is used in conjunction with Allison Transmission to select secondary shift points to maximize fuel economy.

Range Inhibited Lamp (T-1000 transmission only): Lamp indicator.



Mirr Heat: This switch turns on the heaters in outside rear view mirrors. The mirror heaters should be used when defogging or deicing is needed. Mirror heat should not be left in the ON position unless continuous fogging conditions occur.

Pass Shade: Operates the power sun visor located at driver and passenger side.

Pedal In/Out: After sitting in the driver's seat and making adjustments to the mirrors and steering wheel, use the Pedal In/Out switch to adjust the brake and throttle pedal to be either closer or farther away. Locate the switch on the left hand shifter panel marked Pedal Adjusts. The switch moves the pedal inward or outward approximately three inches. If you need to move the pedal inward, just push the same switch in the opposite direction. When the pedals reach the end of their traveling distance you will hear a different sound in the noise of the motor. Release the switch. Do not continue moving the pedals. Damage to the motor and or fuses may result if operation of the switch continues after reaching the fullest extend or retract position.

Radio On/Off Switch: This switch enables 12 Volt DC to power the dash radio from the dash area.

Set/Resume Switch: This switch establishes the parameters for which the cruise module will operate. Once the parameters are established they will remain in effect until either the cruise switch is turned OFF, or the ignition key is turned OFF. The Cruise Control and Set/Resume switches are used together to provide cruise operations and can be used to control idle operations. When the Cruise is on and the Resume is pushed momentarily, the idle will jump to 200 rpm. If the Resume is pushed a second time, the idle will max out at 1,300 rpm. This is the high idle function. Both operations are cancelled when the service brake is applied. The Set switch, when pushed while driving, will store the parameter for use by the EMC. After a service brake application, speed can be restored by briefly pushing Resume. If the cruise operations are in effect, holding down the Resume switch will cause the ECU to increase the parameters.

Wiper/Washer Switch: This is a multi-function switch which controls the speed and delay of the wiper motor. Push the control to activate the washer pump motor.

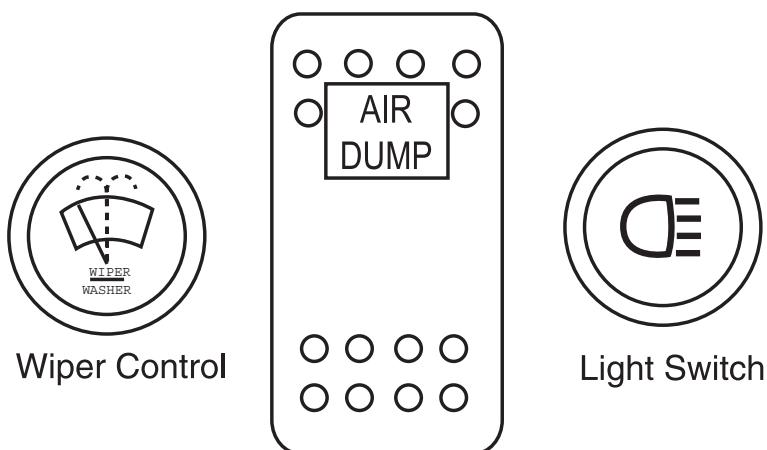
Air Dump Switch: Located the left side of the dash console. Will manually dump air from the air bags. May be an aid in leveling the motorhome. Releasing the air from air bags will give the leveler more range of travel for leveling.



NOTE: Never drive the motorhome with the air bags deflated. This may damage the motorhome.

Headlight Switch: Pull one click to operate the parking lights. Pull two clicks to operate the headlights. Rotating the headlight switch clockwise will dim the dash lights. Counterclockwise rotation will illuminate the map light in the overhead compartment.

Daytime Headlight System/CSA Standard: The Hamsar Daytime Running Light (DRL) module is a solid state component which is installed on all CSA (Canadian Standard Approved) motorhomes. The daytime running light module operates only the low beam elements at 50% of their normal rated voltage to prolong bulb life. The module activates the headlights low beam when the ignition key is turned on and the park brake is released. Tailights and clearance lights are not illuminated when the DRL module is activated. The headlight switch will deactivate the DRL module resuming normal headlight/taillight operation.



**Switches
- At Right**

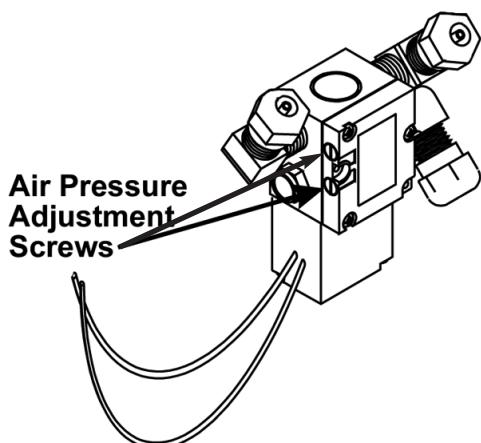
Batt Cut: Turns house battery power on to 12 Volt domestic fuse panels.

Gen ON/OFF: Starts and stops generator from the dash area.

Step In/Out Switch: The motorhome is equipped with a sliding stepwell cover that is extended and retracted by use of a dual action air cylinder. The air cylinder is controlled by an electrically operated air valve. The air solenoid, known as a “MAC” valve receives air pressure from the front air tank. The “mac” valve will direct the air pressure to either side of the dual action air cylinder, moving the stepwell cover in or out. The stepwell cover will not operate without sufficient air pressure (approx. 60 psi).



WARNING: Stepwell cover is under air pressure. When operating the stepwell cover be sure there are no pets, shoes or other obstructions in the stepwell area. Do not operate the stepwell cover while standing in the stepwell area.



MAC Air Valve Adjustment: The “mac” air valve is located in the front of the motorhome, behind the generator door mounted to the firewall. The easiest way to identify the location is have someone operate the Stepwell Cover with the generator door open and listen for the release of air. The “mac” air valve has two adjustment screws. The adjustment screws regulate the air flow to either side of the air cylinder. Adjusting the screws will affect the speed at which the air cylinder moves in or out.

- Clockwise adjustment on the screw will decrease air flow.
- Counterclockwise adjustment on the screw will increase the air flow.

The front door models are equipped with a sliding Stepwell Cover that is extended and retracted by two switch locations. One switch is located just inside the entry door to the right, next to the passenger seat. The second switch is located on the passenger control panel labeled **Step In/Out**.



NOTE: Layouts will vary with difference in models and options.

Porch Light: Turns the porch light & interior assist handle on.

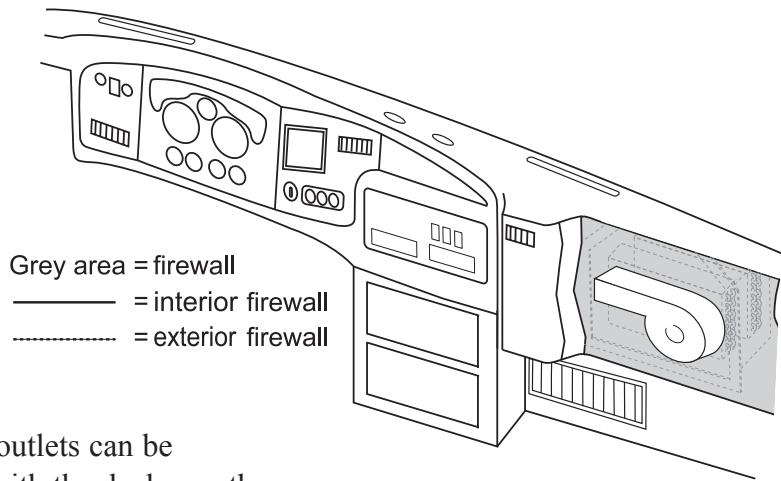
Air Conditioner & Heater Controls

Dash AC and Heater Control: The motorhome has been equipped with the highest performance integrated heating/air conditioning system. The system is much more powerful than those used in a passenger car. However, it is not capable of heating and cooling the entire motorhome. The design of the system is to provide windshield defrost and heating and cooling for the pilot and co-pilot area only. Following the operating instructions and tips, the heater/air conditioner will provide many years of comfort and dependable service.

System Layout:

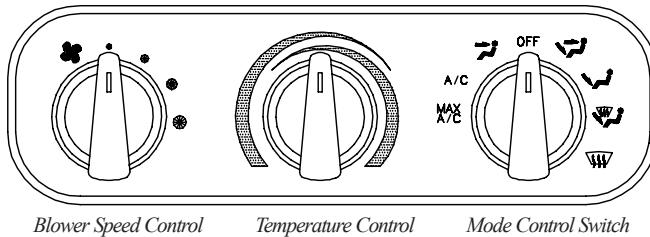
The heater/air conditioner unit is located beneath the dash on the passenger side of the motorhome with the heating and cooling coils located on the outside firewall. In most modes of operation, the unit takes fresh air from outside and heats or cools it prior to discharging it into the motorhome. Only when operating in MAX A/C mode does the system take air from inside the motorhome.

The type and location of the air discharge outlets can be different in each model motorhome. Consult with the dealer on the location and operation of the outlet for the motorhome. Proper adjustment of the air outlets provides maximum comfort.



Operating Instructions: The control panel enables the operator to control the temperature, volume and direction of the air discharged from the heating/air conditioning system.

Blower Operation: The best way to control temperature is by changing the speed of the blower. The blower knob automatically selects the desired feature. This knob provides four speeds in any mode of operation except OFF. The system is shut off by placing the mode control switch in the "OFF" position.



Temperature Control: The temperature of the discharged air is controlled with the rotary knob. This knob controls an electric water valve, regulating the amount of engine coolant passing through the heating and cooling coils in the system. Rotating to the red area provides warmer air; rotating to the blue area provides cooler air.

A/C Operation: The A/C dash system will operate in all modes except VENT, FLOOR and OFF. This provides significant moisture, dust and pollen removal for enhanced comfort. Temperatures below approximately 40 degree F, the A/C systems will not function. In the event control vacuum is lost the system is designed to discharge through the defrost vents.

Air Distribution Switch (Mode Control): This switch provides the operator the ability to select where the airflow is directed and where airflow is needed to maximize the comfort of the motorhome.

The A/C and MAX positions engage the A/C compressor. When the switch is positioned in the A/C mode fresh air is drawn through the front air intake of the unit through the A/C coil. In the MAX position, a damper door closes off the fresh air, while another door opens to permit only air from inside the coach to be used. When maximum cold air is desired this position should be selected. Also, use this position when you do not wish to introduce outside air into the motorhome.



MAX A/C - Recirculated air is drawn from the passenger area and discharged through the dash louvers.



A/C - Fresh Air is drawn from outside into the system and discharged through the dash louvers.



VENT - Fresh air is drawn in and discharged throughout the dash and defrost louvers.



OFF - The blower motor does not operate. The fresh air inlet door will close, minimizing outside air infiltration into the motorhome.



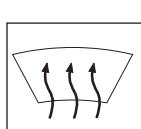
BI-LEVEL - Fresh air is drawn in and discharged through the dash, floor and defrost louvers.



FLOOR - Fresh air is drawn in and discharged through the floor louvers. A small amount of air is used to defrost the windshield.



MIX - Fresh air is drawn in and discharged through the floor and defrost louvers. The A/C system operates to dehumidify the discharged air.



DEFROST - Fresh air is drawn in and discharged through the defrost louvers. The A/C system operates to dehumidify the discharged air.

Winter Use:

- De-ice the windshield using the **DEFROST** mode.
- Air will heat up faster with a slower blower speed until normal engine operating temperature ranges are reached.

Summer Use:

- Close all windows and vents to hot, humid outside air.
- **MAX A/C** and **HI** blower will provide quick cool down.
- Use a lower blower speed to produce cooler air.

Care and Service:

- Keep the condenser and radiator free of bugs and debris.
- Periodically inspect belts and hose for wear and proper tension.
- Operate the A/C system monthly to keep the compressor lubricated.



WARNING: The air conditioning system contains refrigerant 134A, which is under high pressure. Service should be performed by qualified personnel only. Improper service methods could cause serious personal injury.

Troubleshooting: The dash A/C/Heat system uses a combination of compressed air (developed by the chassis system), vacuum air (developed by the vacuum generator) and electric relays and vacuum switches. Therefore, any repair can be classified in one of five categories:

- Electrical • Vacuum • Air Conditioner • Heater • Defroster

The motorhome compressed air tank must have adequate pressure to operate the vacuum generator or damper doors will not function. Also, the dash **A/C/Heat** unit must be switched **ON** to provide electric current to the relays, vacuum switches, etc. The dash A/C and heater system should be used monthly to keep the compressor lubricated.

The motorhome compressed air tank must have adequate pressure to operate the vacuum generator or damper doors will not function. In addition, the dash A/C/Heat unit must be switched **ON** to provide electric current to the relays, vacuum switches, etc. The dash A/C and heater system should be operated monthly to keep the compressor lubricated.

The following information is provided to assist in troubleshooting common operational problems which may occur.

No Heating:

1. A/C switch is turned off.
2. Blower switch is turned off.
3. Verify the proper engine coolant level.
4. Verify that the engine is reaching operating temperature.
5. Verify engine coolant is reaching water valve attached to unit.
6. Verify operation of water valve to permit engine coolant to pass through valve to heater core.
7. Check unit fuses.
8. Check power supply to water valve and grounding.
9. Check wiring.
10. Engine thermostat faulty.

No Cooling:

1. Check blower is operating, A/C switch is in A/C or Max position, temperature control is turned to max cooling (blue area).
2. System fuses are not blown.
3. Condenser fan is operating.
4. Check power supply to unit and grounding of system.
5. Check wiring.
6. Coolant valve leaking.
7. Drive belt loose or broken.
8. Compressor Clutch inoperative, will not engage.
9. Expansion Valve faulty or frozen.
10. Thermostat control faulty.
11. Mode control switch faulty.
12. Compressor faulty.
13. Loss of refrigerant.

Reduced Cooling:

1. Coolant valve not operating correctly.
2. Air passages obstructed.
3. Loose or worn drive belt.
4. Check blower and select switch.
5. Thermostat control valve faulty.
6. Expansion valve faulty.
7. Compressor faulty.
8. Low refrigerant charge.

Blower Does Not Operate or Runs Slow:

1. Check fuses.
2. Check for loose or corroded connection.
3. Check wiring.
4. Check ignition switch is “ON.”
5. Check blower and select switch.
6. Motor shaft seized.
7. Blower wheel out of alignment.

Damper Doors Do Not Operate:

1. Does motorhome air tank have pressure?
2. Check vacuum generator is being powered and producing vacuum.
3. Check vacuum line entering unit for vacuum.
4. Check that the vacuum solenoid mounted on unit is receiving power from the mode switch. If operating properly, the vacuum solenoid will feel hot if current is engaging the solenoid.
5. Check mode switch.
6. Check wiring.
7. Check for pinched vacuum line leading to the vacuum motor operating the damper door in question.

Air Conditioner Refrigeration Components:

Compressor - The compressor is belt driven from the engine through the compressor and electronic clutch pulley. The compressor will pump freon from a low pressure gas into a high pressure, high temperature gas. This is the start of the refrigeration process.

Condenser - The condenser in front of the radiator is made of coils and fins which provide rapid transfer of heat from the refrigerant as external air passes over the coils. The high pressure gas is changed to a high pressure liquid.

Condenser Fan - A steady flow of cooling air is maintained across the condenser during system operations. The fan is part of the hydraulic system.

Receiver-Drier - Freon leaves the condenser, enters the dehydrator and is stored until needed. The drier filters out moisture in the system. It only takes one drop of moisture to cause a malfunction in the cooling unit.

Expansion Valve - The expansion valve suppresses the refrigerant into the evaporator according to the cooling requirements. The pressure is reduced in the restrictive effort of the expansion valve. A part of the valve is the capillary tube assembly. The capillary tube is the sensing bulb at the outlet of the evaporator.

Evaporator - A tube core and fins are used in the evaporator similar to the condenser. Air is blown through the fins to allow the evaporator to cool and reduce the pressure.

Blower and Motor - Just as the condenser has a fan, the evaporator has a fan called the blower. The blower will draw air from the cab area and force the air over the evaporator coils and fins. This forced air will ensure continuous vaporizing of the R134a.

Relays and Switches - Both electronic and vacuum switches are used in the control and operations of the system.

A/C System Operational Check

This is an A/C system "FIELD TEST" and Evaluation Procedure used by service personnel ONLY. This procedure aids in evaluating if the A/C is performing properly, and contains the correct refrigerant charge. The performance guidelines shown are approximate, and subject to numerous operational variables.

1. Park the motorhome and set engine speed to 1500 RPM.
2. Set the HVAC Controls as follows: Blower Speed at highest setting, A/C Thermostat Control at coldest setting, and Heater Water Valve Control Fully Closed (coldest setting).
3. Visually verify that the A/C compressor clutch is engaged, and the compressor is operating. Verify the water valve is closed, and zero flow through heater coil (cool lines).
4. The suction hose fitting (at Evaporator Outlet) should be cold to touch. This fitting may sweat or even frost lightly.
5. Cold Air is being discharged from the supply louvers in the cab area.
6. After 3-5 minutes of A/C Operation, the louver discharge temperature should be approximately 30 degrees F colder than the warmest air entering the A/C system. This can be fresh or recirculated air.
7. Air Inlet/Outlet Temperature differentials are greatly affected by ambient temperature and relative humidity. In cool ambient conditions, differentials smaller than 30 degrees F may be seen. Air can only be chilled to a certain level, and then the A/C compressor will cycle off to prevent evaporator freeze up. High humidity may also result in smaller differentials; a large amount of cooling capacity is used to dehumidify air, as well as cool it.

Estimated Performance Guidelines:

These Performance Guidelines are based on Test Conditions outlined above. Variables such as Engine Speed, Condenser Airflow, Sun Load, Blower Motor Speed, and Chassis Voltage all effect A/C System performance.

Air Entering A/C Unit	Inlet/Outet Air Temperature Differential	
Fresh or Recirculated (F)	Low Humidity	High Humidity
30	10	10
60	20	15
70	25	20
80	30	25
90	30	25
100	35	30
110	40	35

The Outlet louver closest to the A/C Unit usually discharges the coldest air. The warmest inlet air temperature (fresh or recirculated) should also be used for the Differential Calculation.

A/C System Operating Pressures:		
Ambient Air Temperature (F) Entering Condenser	Suction Pressure (PSIG) @ Evaporator Outlet	Discharge Pressure (PSIG) @ Compressor Outlet
50	5-15	75-125
60	5-15	100-150
70	10-20	125-175
80	10-20	150-200
90	15-25	175-225
100	15-25	200-250
110	15-30	225-300

TEMP F/ PSIG	TEMP F/ PSIG	TEMP F/ PSIG
16 15.69	60 57.47	112 151.30
18 17.04	65 64.10	114 156.10
20 18.43	70 71.19	116 161.10
22 19.73	75 78.75	118 166.10
24 21.35	80 86.80	120 171.30
26 22.88	85 95.40	122 176.60
28 24.47	90 104.40	124 182.00
30 26.10	91 106.30	126 187.50
32 27.79	92 108.20	128 193.10
34 29.52	93 110.20	130 198.90
36 31.32	94 112.10	135 213.70
38 33.17	95 114.10	140 229.40
40 35.07	100 124.30	145 245.80
42 37.03	102 128.50	150 263.00
44 39.05	104 132.90	155 281.00
45 40.09	106 137.30	160 300.10
50 45.48	108 141.90	165 320.00
55 51.27	110 146.50	170 340.80

Chemical Stability:

The air conditioning system life and efficient operations depend upon the chemical stability of the refrigeration system. The refrigeration system is made of Refrigerant-R134a and Polyakylene Gycol (PAG) synthetic lubricant. It is very important that all materials contained within the refrigerant system be chemically compatible. The only suitable compound for use with R134a is PAG. The total amount of PAG within the refrigerant system is approximately 18% of the total refrigerant in the system.

How much refrigerant is in the system? How much should be used when charging? You will need 1 oz. of PAG for each 7 feet of hose after the first 15 feet of hose. Roughly, a 40 foot motorhome will use 92 feet of refrigerant hose. Take 15 feet off the measurement and the result would be 77 feet. This 77 feet is then divided by 7 for total of 11. This represents the number of ounces of PAG oil needed for the A/C system (11 oz.).

Carrying the formula one step further, the 11 oz. equal approximately 18% of the entire system. The total will equate to approximately 61 oz. or 3.8 lbs. of R134a.

High pressure readings are another way to determine the amount of charge. The ambient temperature reading is measured one inch away from the condenser. The ambient temperature reading, plus 40°F, will equate to a value from the pressure table.

**EXAMPLE: 90° F
1 inch from condenser
+40°F
130°F ----- 198.90**

PSIG-On fully charged system the expected pressure that should be seen on the HIGH-SIDE gauge will be around 200 PSIG.

 **NOTE: All systems are charged at the factory with 4.0 lbs of R134A. Ten ounces of PAG oil is contained within the sealed system. This oil circulates and provides compressor lubrication.**

R-134a Refrigerant:

R134a is classified non-explosive, non-flammable and non-corrosive.

There is hardly any odor and it is much heavier than air. R134a is ozone friendly; however, it is not technician friendly. Proper care in handling and adequate ventilation must be observed. Under normal atmospheric pressures and temperatures R134a will evaporate so quickly it will freeze anything it comes in contact with. The open container boiling point for R134a is minus 21.7° F. This low boiling point makes for an ideal refrigerant. The tremendous amount of heat transfer which occurs when a liquid boils, or vapors condense, forms the basic principles of all A/C systems. The amount of heat required to raise or lower the temperature of one pound of water by 1° F equals one British Thermal Unit (BTU). The BTU is the standard measurement of an air conditioner system.

Safety and Handling of 134A and Pag Oil:

- When working with any refrigerant system wear eye protection and hand protection.
- Pag Oil irritates the skin. Flush with water immediately if in contact with any body part.
- Ensure any service work performed on the A/C system is in a well ventilated work area.
- Keep open flame away from service area. The discharge of a refrigerant gas near an open flame can produce a very poisonous gas.

 **NOTE: O-rings used in a 134A system are Hydrogenated Nitrile Butadiene Rubber (HNBR). These are green in color and required for the 134A system.**

A/C Heater:

The A/C system will also produce heat to warm the air in the dash area. Much like the refrigeration side of the system, a liquid will be used in the process. This liquid is the engine coolant. The coolant is passed from the radiator to an electronic water valve. The water valve, when open, will allow the coolant to flow through the heater core. The heater core is tubing and fins. Air is drawn into the system by a blower motor through the outside recirculation door opening. Air is blown through the A/C evaporator core and then through the heater core. When the temperature control is in the WARM

position coolant flows through the heater core. When the temperature is in the COOL position coolant flow bypasses the heater core. In either position, the airflow is felt at the discharge vents.

There are three common systems of an improperly operating electric coolant control system:

- No Heat in the Heat Mode.
- Unable to control the temperature in any operating mode.
- Poor cooling, no cooling, or even heat while operating in the A/C mode.

Temperature Control System

Part of the temperature control circuits is a small circuit board located inside a black plastic housing mounted behind the HVAC control panel. This circuit board is part of the HVAC wire harness, and will have an identifying stamp marked on the smooth side of the board. A visual inspection for signs of electronic component damage, such as a burnt circuit trace or the odor of burnt electronics, should be performed for any temperature control problem. DO NOT attempt to solder and/or repair the circuit board if damage is detected, replace the board. Another part of the temperature control circuits is a potentiometer control used for the temperature knob on the control panel. The knob should rotate freely from the cool stop (blue) to the warm stop (red).

Irreparable damage occurs to the potentiometer when rotated past the internal stops at full cool and full heat positions.

The electronic coolant valve assembly in the heater base unit is located on the firewall near the base of the Heater/Evaporator unit. The electrical connector is on the outlet side of the valve.



NOTE: The electrical coolant valve is a "directional valve, and must be correctly installed, or it will not function properly.

Coolant valves installed with the coolant flow reversed will leak coolant past the valve gate resulting in poor A/C performance. If a valve is installed backward it can be reused, but should be inspected and tested first. The outlet supply of the valve should be connected to the inlet side of the heater coil. The inlet side of the valve is from the engine with the coolant supply hose. This supply hose is actually coming from the engine supply port on or near the engine thermostat.

Functional

Test:

- Start and operate the engine until the water reaches normal operating temperature.
- Set the HVAC temperature control to the full hot position.
- The discharge air outlets should have hot air.
- Rotate the temperature control to full cold position.
- Allow 10 minutes for the temperature to stabilize.
- The discharge air outlets should have cold air.

No Heat:

- Check the blower and air mode operations. Fix or repair prior to proceeding.
- Verify the engine is reaching normal operating temperature.
(Check with engine manufacturer for proper procedure.)
- Check the inlet hose at the water valve. The hose has hot water at the valve inlet. The inlet water temperature should be the same as the engine water temp.
- With the temp control on full hot position, check the outlet hose of the water valve. The hose should be at engine water temperature.



CAUTION: Removal of the coolant valve should be performed when the engine is cold. Removing the valve from the system when the engine is hot could result in burns and/or serious injury due to extremely hot coolant escaping under pressure. Do not start the engine while the coolant lines are disconnected as the engine will quickly pump the system dry which could result in engine damage.

Vacuum Generator:

The vacuum generator is important to the operation of the dash heating and A/C systems. This provides the vacuum to open and close the vacuum switches. When the vacuum generator is operating it creates 15 inches of vacuum and is stored in the reservoir ball. Most dash heater and A/C systems will only require 10 inches of vacuum to operate the switches. The output from the reservoir is sent to the vent control knob. The control knob will then direct the vacuum operation to the appropriate vacuum switch to open or close vents and switches. The vacuum generator uses the air from the front air storage tank through a 1/4 inch red air line. Whenever the ignition is ON, and the A/C is operating, the vacuum generator will operate.

DIAGNOSTIC PLUG LOCATION



The engine maintenance checks and fills can be accessed through the rear access doors. The doors swing open allowing access to compartment. When fully opened, the doors will lock in place. To release, the small metal button must be pressed when closing the door.



NOTE: Engine oil may also be added from the bed access compartment inside the motorhome.

BULB USAGE - EXTERIOR

LOCATION	BULB NUMBER
Headlight - High/Low	9006
Headlight - High	9005
Front Turn (2)	194
Tail/Brake Light	1157
Turn Signal	1156
Back-up Light	1141
Corner Marker	194
Overhead Clearance	194
Third Brake Light	562
Compartment Bay Light	168
Porch Light	921

KNIGHT

SECTION 10 CHASSIS INFORMATION

INTRODUCTION - <i>Chassis, Towing System</i>	• 271	Coolant Hoses	• 302
AIR SUPPLY SYSTEM	• 272	Coolant System - Thawing	• 302
AIR GOVERNOR	• 273	BRAKE - AUXILIARY	• 303
AIR DRYER - <i>Air Dryer Operation</i>	• 273	BRAKE - EXHAUST	• 303
<i>Air Dryer Cycle</i>	• 273	Exhaust Brake Maintenance	• 303
<i>Importance of the Air Dryer</i>	• 274	TRANSMISSION (T-1000 5 Speed Models)	• 304
<i>Desiccant-Type Air Dryer</i>	• 274	Shift Selector	• 304
<i>Desiccant Cartridge</i>	• 275	Range Inhibited Light	• 304
AIR STORAGE TANKS	• 276	Shift Inhibits	• 305
AIR COUPLER - UNIVERSAL	• 276	Transmission - Check Light	• 305
AIR SYSTEM - CHARGING (External)	• 277	Rocking Out	• 305
SUSPENSION AIR RIDE BAGS	• 277	Parking	• 306
<i>Checklist - Air Bag Inspections</i>	• 278	Periodic Inspections	• 306
SHOCK ABSORBERS	• 279	Prevent Major Problems	• 306
RIDE HEIGHT VALVES - <i>Adjusting</i>	• 280	The Importance of Proper Fluid Levels	• 307
SUSPENSION - <i>Steering Axle & Drive Axle</i>	• 282	Checking Fluid Levels	• 307
ALIGNMENT SPECIFICATIONS	• 285	TRANSMISSION (MH 2000& 3000)	• 309
BRAKE SYSTEMS	• 287	Shift Selector	• 309
BRAKE - PARK & EMERGENCY SYSTEMS	• 287	Transmission - Check Light	• 310
BRAKES - ABS SYSTEM (Anti-lock Brakes)	• 287	Transmission - Periodic Inspections	• 311
BRAKES - EXHAUST BRAKE SYSTEM	• 287	TRANSMISSION LUBRICATING FLUID	• 313
<i>Maintenance</i>	• 288	Transmission Fluid Levels - Cold Check	• 314
BRAKES - MAINT. & TROUBLESHOOTING	• 288	Transmission Fluid Level - Hot Check	• 315
<i>Bleeding the System</i>	• 289	FUEL REQUIREMENTS	• 315
BRAKES - ELEC. PUMP & MASTER CYLINDER	• 290	FUEL TANK	• 316
BRAKES - AIR OVER HYDRAULIC (Optional)	• 291	FUEL/WATER SEPARATOR	• 316
FRONT AXLE (Oil Filled Bearings)	• 291	FUEL SENDING UNIT	• 317
LEVELING SYSTEM - <i>Hydraulic Leveling</i>	• 292	<i>Fuel Lines & Hoses</i>	• 319
<i>Manual Leveling System</i>	• 293	HYDRAULIC SYSTEMS	• 320
<i>Manual Leveling</i>	• 294	Hydraulic Reservoir	• 320
<i>Manual Retract Valves</i>	• 294	<i>Hydraulic Filter</i>	• 321
ENGINE - GENERAL INFORMATION	• 295	STEERING GEAR	• 322
ENGINE	• 295	AIR FILTER MINDER	• 322
STARTING PROCEDURE	• 296	AIR FILTER - Changing	• 323
STARTING PROCEDURE - COLD WEATHER	• 296	DRIVE AXLE LUBRICANT	• 324
OIL RECOMMENDATIONS (Engine)	• 296	DRIVE SHAFT	• 325
<i>Oil Recommendations - Cold Weather</i>	• 298	LUBRICATION CHART	• 326
ENGINE SHUTDOWN	• 299	PARTS - COMMON SOLENOIDS & SENDERS	• 328
ENGINE SHUTDOWN - Extended	• 299	CHARTS - FILTERS & BELTS, SPECIFICATIONS	• 330
COOLANT	• 299	CHART - METRIC CONVERSION	• 332
<i>Coolant - Additive (SCA)</i>	• 301	MAINTENANCE RECORD	• 333

This section contains knowledge and information on various components of your motorhome chassis. Following the guidelines and procedures will help you to understand and operate your motorhome. Complete instructions for various components can be located in the operator's manual included in the Owner's Information File box.

INTRODUCTION



WARNING: When frame or other welding is involved for motorhome repair or modification the following precautions are required to protect electric components in the motorhome chassis.

- 1. Disconnect the (+) positive and (-) negative battery connection, and any electronic control ground wires connected to the frame or chassis.**
- 2. Cover electronic control components and wiring to protect from hot sparks.**
- 3. Disconnect the wiring harness connectors at the transmission electronic control unit.**
- 4. Do not connect welding cables to electronic control components.**
- 5. Attach the welding ground cable no more than 2 feet from the part to be welded.**

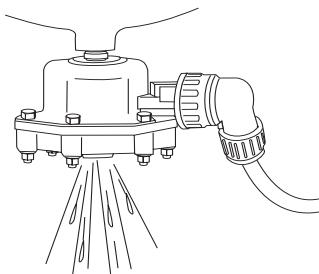
The design of the Roadmaster chassis provides exceptional balance, handling and braking characteristics. The rear engine chassis is an engine and frame unit featuring a C-channel ladder rail frame design, providing greater structural integrity and uniform stress distribution. Incorporated in the Roadmaster chassis is the Neway air suspension system using frame-mounted air bags and shock absorbers. The Neway air suspension system uses air from the air system to pressurize the air bags. Height control valves regulate the air pressure to the air bags maintaining proper ride height throughout the load range. The chassis is equipped with a three-point hydraulic leveling system. The setup and design of the chassis provides a smooth ride throughout the load range with trouble-free service, while delivering excellent drivability.

Chassis

The standard towing system incorporated in the construction of the frame is rated at 4,000 lbs. towing and 400 lbs. tongue weight. The optional engine and transmission combination increases the hitch rating to 5,000 lbs. towing and 500 lbs. tongue weight.

Towing System

AIR SUPPLY SYSTEM



Automatic drain on standard brake models.

The air compressing system on the motorhome is comprised of several items: an air compressor, air governor, air dryer (depending on options) and air tank(s). The compressed air system operates several items, some of which include optional air brakes, suspension, an air gauge (depending on options) and stepwell cover. A gear driven air compressor mounted on the engine charges the system. As engine speed increases, compressed air output increases. When air is compressed, heat is generated. Heat dissipates as the air is discharged from the compressor. Moisture condenses in the compressed air as it cools. Moisture laden air enters an air dryer (air over hydraulic brake models) where the air is filtered. The filtered air charges the air tank. The air tank is divided in two halves: a wet side and a dry side. The compressed air enters the wet side before entering the dry side. The tank is equipped with a pop valve, manual and automatic drain (standard brake models) valves. The manual drain is located on the DRY side of the tank. The pop valve and automatic drain valve are located on the WET side. The pop valve is designed to release pressure in the tank when the pressure exceeds 130 psi. The automatic drain valve (standard brake models) wired to the brake light circuit will activate each time the brakes are applied, with the ignition switched to ON. Only a small amount of air/water is expelled. The momentary release of air/water from the tank is audible.

On models equipped with the optional air over hydraulic brake system, a discharge line from the dry side of the first tank charges a second air tank. The discharge line uses an inline check valve to prevent back flow of compressed air. All air lines are color coded for identification.

Pneumatically operated items are divided into two categories: brakes and accessory air. Brakes have full use of supplied air pressure. Accessory air items, such as a stepwell cover, receive air through a pressure protection valve (PPV). The PPV will not allow compressed air flow until approximately 60 psi. In case of an air system problem, the pressure protection valve will leave a reserve air charge for braking. Pressure protection valves are installed for safety.

A low-pressure air switch connected to a warning lamp on the dash console monitors the air system. The lamp will illuminate when a low-pressure condition exists. Check the operation of the low air lamp when the air tank is drained.

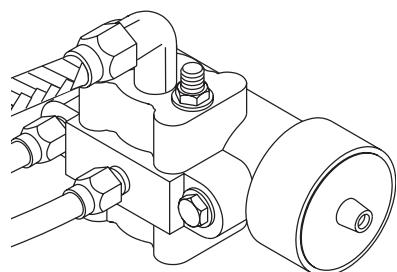


NOTE: The air tank(s) should be drained manually every 30 days. Open the manual drain until all air escapes. Leave valve(s) open an additional five minutes allowing excess moisture to drain.

The air governor is located in the engine compartment and performs two functions. It regulates the air compressor to cut-in and cut-out, keeping the air system in the specified operating range of 105-120 psi. then sends an air "purge" signal to the Air Dryer.

Cut-in pressure of approximately 105 psi. is factory preset from the governor manufacturer and is not adjustable. Cut-out pressure is calibrated to 120 psi. When cut-out pressure is reached, the governor will send an air purge signal to the Air Dryer. This opens the purge port of the Air Dryer, expelling moisture. The purge action of the Air Dryer is identified by the short release of air at the rear of the motorhome.

AIR GOVERNOR



The air dryer is located underneath the motorhome next to the transmission. The air dryer removes moisture from the compressed air system. This is important because if air contains moisture it can freeze and prevent operation of brakes or other pneumatic operated items.

The air dryer has three functions: cooling, filtering and drying the air going through the motorhome's air system. If an excessive amount of water is present when performing the monthly air tank drain service, it may be an indication that the filter for the air dryer needs to be changed.

AIR DRYER (Air Over Hydraulic Brakes Only)

During system pressure build-up compressed air passes into the air dryer where the filter system removes contaminants and passes the air into the drying stage. Initially, moisture that condenses out collects in the base of the dryer. Moisture-laden air passes through the desiccant bed in the air dryer cartridge and is dried. When the compressor unloads, the water is expelled and the dry air flows back through the dryer, drying the desiccant for the next cycle.

Air Dryer Operation

The governor turns the compressor on when supply tank pressure drops below cut-in pressure. Compressed air passes into the air dryer at the inlet port:

- Moisture-laden air and contaminants pass through the desiccant.
- Moisture is retained by the desiccant. Moisture also collects in the base of the dryer.

Air Dryer Cycle

When the compressor unloads the purge valve opens. The governor turns the compressor off when the system reaches cutout pressure (approximately 120 psi).

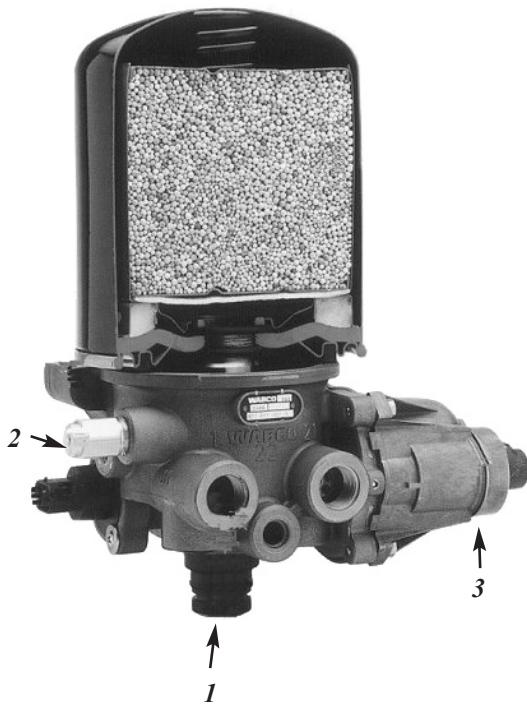
- The dryer purges and expels water collected in the dryer base.
- When the regeneration valve opens, the dry system air flows back through the dryer. A small charge of air from the front tank back-flows through the filter. The backflow dries the desiccant, preparing it for the next cycle.

Importance of the Air Dryer

1. When air is compressed the compressor takes in water vapor with the air, compresses the water vapor and puts it into the system as liquid water.
2. Liquid water that accumulates in air lines can damage seals and valves and wash away lubricants.
3. In cold weather water can freeze, block air lines and damage air system components.

Desiccant-Type Air Dryer

1. Warm, humid air from the compressor condenses into either liquid water or water vapor before entering the air dryer.
2. A desiccant-type air dryer protects the motorhome air brake system by drying moisture-laden air before it passes through the air reservoirs and into the brake system.
3. Water collects in the base of the dryer when warm air condenses into water before it enters the dryer, or inside of the dryer before the water reaches the desiccant.
4. The desiccant material then removes additional water vapor, further drying the air.
5. During the regeneration phase, the regeneration valve and pressure-controlled check valve remove water from the desiccant bed with a backflow of dried, expanded system air.



Air Dryer Components:

1. **Purge Valve:** A valve located on the bottom of the air dryer base that remains open during a compressor unload cycle. The purge valve allows collected moisture, condensation and contamination to be expelled from the air dryer during a purge cycle.
2. **Pressure Relief Valve:** A valve that protects the air dryer from over-pressurization.
3. **Regeneration Valve:** The valve that controls regeneration of the desiccant. The regeneration valve allows air from the supply and secondary tanks to bypass the outlet check valve. The air expands and backflushes moisture off the desiccant through the dryer's purge valve.

In extreme cold, make sure the air dryer heater is in good working order. The heater in the air dryer is a 100-watt heater controlled by ignition power and turned off when the ignition is switched off. Thermostat operating range is on below 45° F and off when the temp is above 86° F. The fuse is located in the front electric bay, front roadside.



WARNING: Remove all pressure from the air system before disconnecting any component, including the desiccant cartridge. Pressurized air can cause serious personal injury.

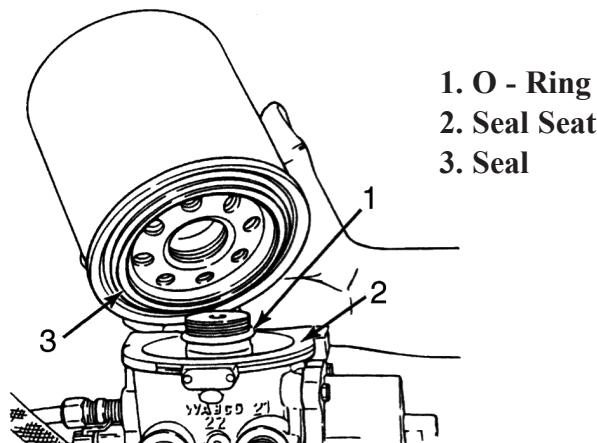
1. Replacement kit contains one cartridge and one O-ring.
2. Loosen and remove the old cartridge. Use strap wrench, if necessary.
3. Remove and discard the O-ring from the dryer base.
4. Inspect and clean the seal seat. Repair any minor damage.



NOTE: If the seats are damaged so badly that a tight seal cannot be maintained, replace the air dryer.

5. Lubricate the O-Ring on the stem with a thin layer of grease.
6. Lubricate the cartridge seal with a thin layer of grease.
7. Thread the replacement cartridge onto the base until the seal touches the base. Tighten the cartridge **ONE** additional turn. **DO NOT OVERTIGHTEN.**

Desiccant Cartridge



REPLACEMENT REQUIREMENTS

Components	When to replace	Why
Desiccant Cartridge	Every two to three years. When compressor is replaced. Water in supply tank.	Preventive maintenance. Contaminated cartridge. Saturated or contaminated cartridge, high duty cycle (wrong application of air dryer).

AIR STORAGE TANKS

The air tank(s) should be manually drained once a month, or more, depending on operating conditions where humidity is high. One air tank has a drain valve for both the wet and dry side. The other air tank only has one drain valve. Open the drain valves until all air is purged from tanks, allowing five extra minutes for moisture to be expelled. Remember to close the tank drain valves. Both air tanks have a pressure relief valve which are set to release at approximately 130 psi.

AIR COUPLER - UNIVERSAL

Provided for convenience is a remote air supply coupler. This is located in the front electrical compartment. This universal female fitting will accept several types of 1/4" ID male air fittings, including type C automotive. This auxiliary air fitting may be used to inflate tires, air mattresses or other pneumatic items.

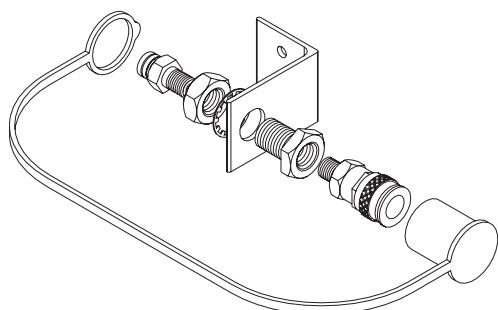
To use this feature:

- Remove the plastic protective dust cap.
- Using a firm grip, insert the air fitting into auxiliary air supply. The locking collar is spring loaded and will lock automatically when the fitting is properly inserted.

To remove fitting:

- With a firm grip hold the air hose near the fitting to prevent recoil.
- Slide the locking collar back to release fitting. The collar will lock into the open position when fully retracted.
- Replace the protective dust cap when finished.

This fitting is not designed to charge the air system on the motorhome. The air supply for the auxiliary air fitting is charged from the front air tank through a pressure protection valve. Due to the small air pressure restriction of the pressure protection valve, maximum supply pressure is approximately 95 psi with air system on the motorhome charged to 120 psi.

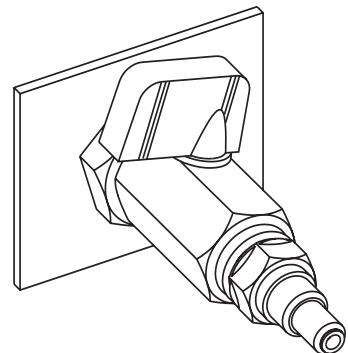


The air system on the motorhome can be charged from an external air supply source. Located in the generator compartment is a type C automotive male fitting. Caution should be used when charging the air system from this fitting. The air supplied from an external source may contain moisture. Compressed air introduced into the air system on the motorhome from this fitting is not filtered by the air dryer. The auxiliary air charge fitting will charge the air tanks.



CAUTION: The external air supply source should be regulated to charge the air system on the motorhome no higher than 120 psi. Damage to the air system or pneumatically operated items may occur

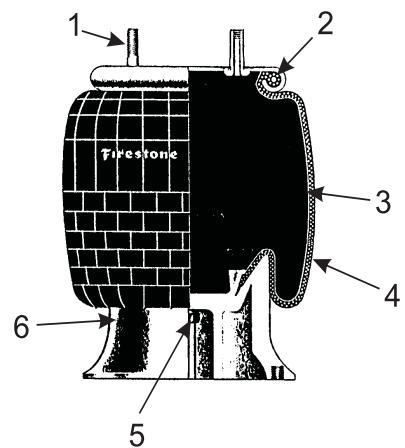
AIR SYSTEM - CHARGING (External)



Air ride springs are available in single, double and triple convolution types plus reversible sleeve models for virtually every conceivable heavy-duty vehicle suspension application.

- 1. STUD:** Manufactured as a permanent part of bead plate assembly for maximum strength and durability. Used to attach spring to the vehicle's suspension.
- 2. BEAD PLATE:** Crimped onto bellows at the factory for a durable design and maximum quality control. Allows 100% leak proof testing prior to shipment.
- 3. BELLOWS:** "Air bag" includes four plies of material: an inner layer, two plies of cord-reinforced fabric and an outer cover. Natural rubber construction provides functional properties up to - 65° F.
- 4. BUMPERS:** A solid rubber or engineered plastic device designed to prevent significant damage to the vehicle or its suspension in event of a sudden loss of air pressure in spring.
- 5. PISTON:** Provides a lower mounting arrangement for air spring. Controls characteristics of spring under changing pressure loads.
- 6. PISTON BOLT:** Attaches piston to bellows. Sometimes extended as a means of attaching spring to vehicle suspension.

SUSPENSION AIR RIDE BAGS



Checklist - Air Bag Inspections

Listed below are items that can be checked when the motorhome is in for periodic maintenance.



NOTE: Never attempt to service the air suspension on a motorhome with the air bags inflated.

- Inspect the O.D. of the air springs. Check for signs of irregular wear or heat cracking.
- Inspect the air lines to make sure contact doesn't exist between the air line and the O.D. of the air springs. Air lines can rub a hole in an air spring very quickly.
- Check to see that there is sufficient clearance around the complete circumference of the air spring while at its maximum diameter.
- Inspect the O.D. of piston for buildup of foreign materials. (On a reversible sleeve style air spring, the piston is the bottom component of the air spring.)
- The correct ride height should be maintained. All motorhomes with air springs have a specified ride height established by the manufacturer. This height should be maintained within $\frac{1}{4}$ in. This dimension can be checked with the vehicle loaded or empty.
- The leveling valves (or height control valves) play a large part in ensuring that the total air spring system works as required. Clean, inspect and replace if necessary.
- Make sure to check shock absorbers for leaking hydraulic oil and worn or broken end connectors. If a broken shock is found, replace it immediately. The shock absorber will normally limit the rebound of an air spring and keep it from overextending.
- Check the tightness of all mounting hardware (nuts and bolts). If loose, tighten. Do not over-tighten.

Cleaning:

The approved cleaning method is to use soap and water, methyl alcohol, ethyl alcohol and isopropyl alcohol. Unapproved cleaning methods include all organic solvents, open flames, abrasives and direct pressurized steam cleaning.

SHOCK ABSORBERS

The shock absorber by definition is a hydraulic device used to dampen suspension/body movement. The road surface irregularities or roughness is compensated for by the shock absorber. The Roadmaster raised rail chassis incorporates a "Gas Magnum" shock in the design of the exclusive, air glide suspension system. This shock absorber is a telescopic, monotubed unit filled with nitrogen gas and hydraulic oil. The result of the mixture is uninterrupted damping for the smallest of wheel deflection.

By design, a self-lubricating seal is used which will allow approximately 10% of the total oil capacity to pass onto the piston rod. The gradual process of oil loss does not affect the performance of the shock absorber during the service life. This process will be evident after a long period of service, by an oil film on the body of the shock absorber. The appearance of a coating or film on the body or rod is called "Misting" and is completely normal. It is an indication that the shock is functioning normally.

The road holding, handling, balance and braking characteristics all can be contributed to the shock absorber. A visual check or inspection is recommended for obvious damage. The key check will be driving; any noticeable changes in the ride of the motorhome, a lean in the motorhome or excessive bouncing may be caused by a worn shock. The operating conditions for which the shock absorber must endure will determine the life span.



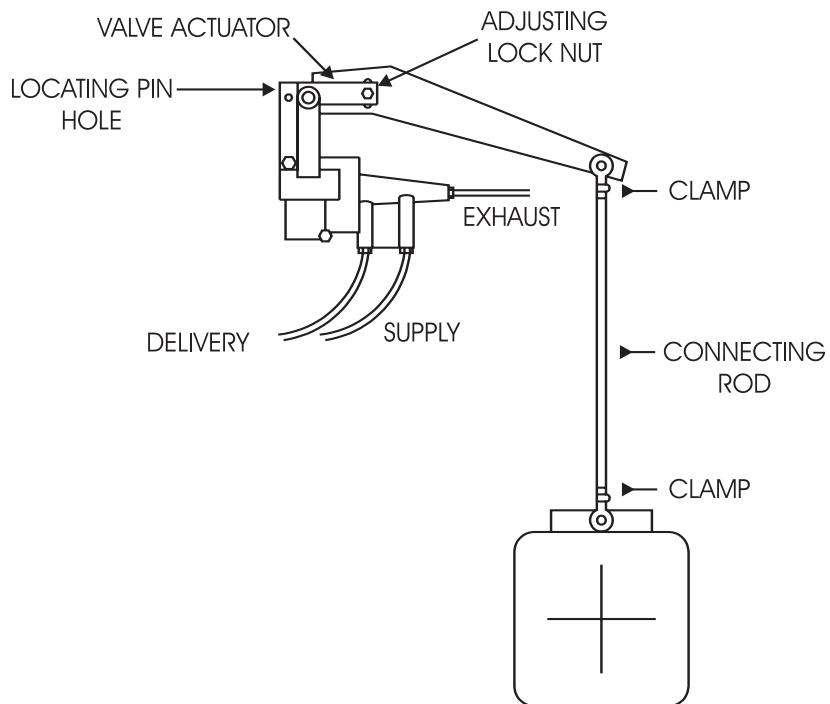
*Normal shock absorber
appearance after a long
service period.*

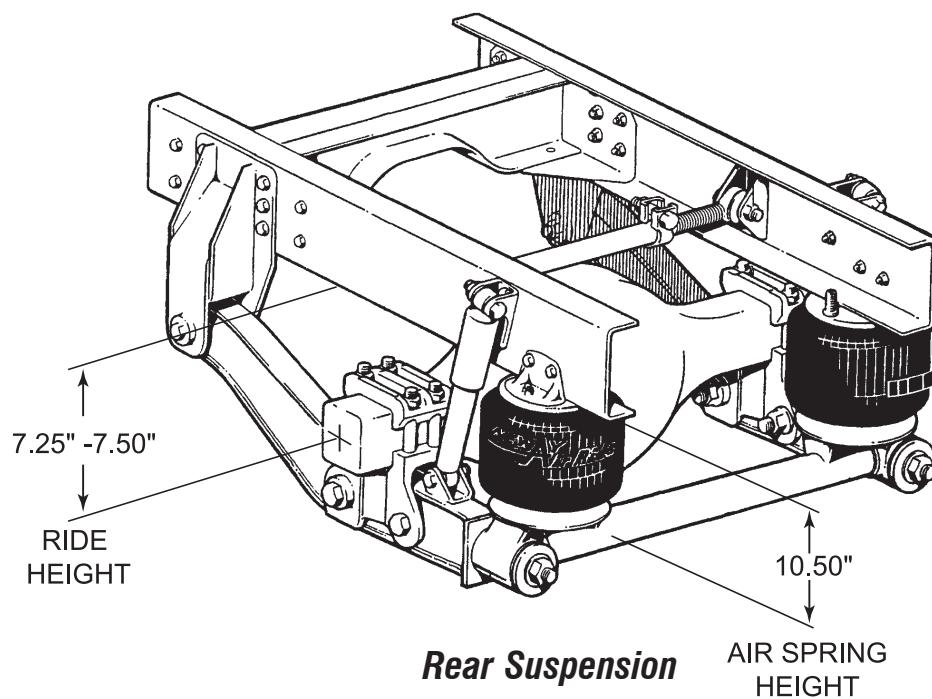
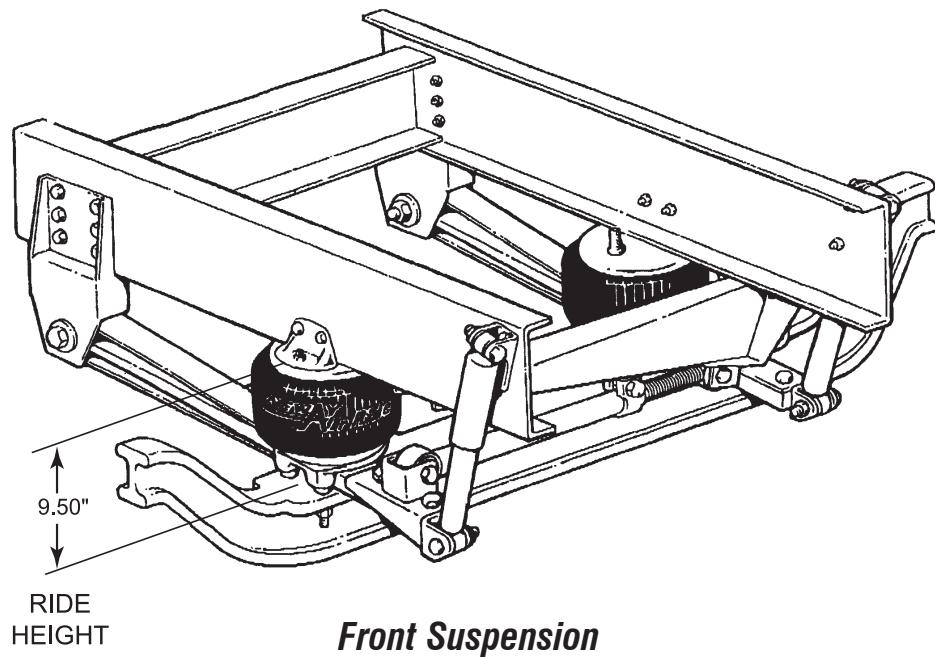
RIDE HEIGHT VALVES - Adjusting

The chassis has three height control valves. The drive axle suspension ride height is the distance from the underside of the C-Channel Rail to center line of the axle. Comparing this measurement to the height of the air bag will ensure an accurate adjustment. The steer axle suspension ride height is the distance from the underside of the C-Channel rail to the top of the axle. The air bag height measured from the top plate to the bottom plate should be 7.5". In order to obtain the ride height measurement for the rear axle, measure from the underside of the C-Channel Rail to the center line of the axle. The ride height measured for the drive axle should equal 10.5". Front axle ride height measured should equal 9.5".



NOTE: Ride height has + or - $\frac{1}{4}$ " tolerance.





SUSPENSION

The Neway air suspension system uses air drawn from an air system to pressurize the air bags. The height control valve regulates the air pressure required for varying loads and maintains ride height. The suspension can provide a cushioned ride throughout the load range. It will also provide excellent side to side and axle to axle, which helps equalize and control braking.

Each axle has two Firestone air bags and two Monroe shocks to provide the smoothest ride, best handling and top notch drivability. The suspension control arms bushing require no lubrication. The suspension ride height is preset and will maintain proper ride height automatically throughout the load range. Improper ride height adjustment could result in a poor ride or damage to the suspension, thus leading to erratic coach handling. The air bags, shock absorbers, control valves, and link assemblies should be visually checked as part of pre-trip and safety inspections. This should be done on a level surface, allowing two minutes after the low air lamp extinguishes.

Items that can be checked when the motorhome is in for periodic maintenance are listed below.



NOTE: Never attempt to service the air suspension on a motorhome with the air bags inflated.

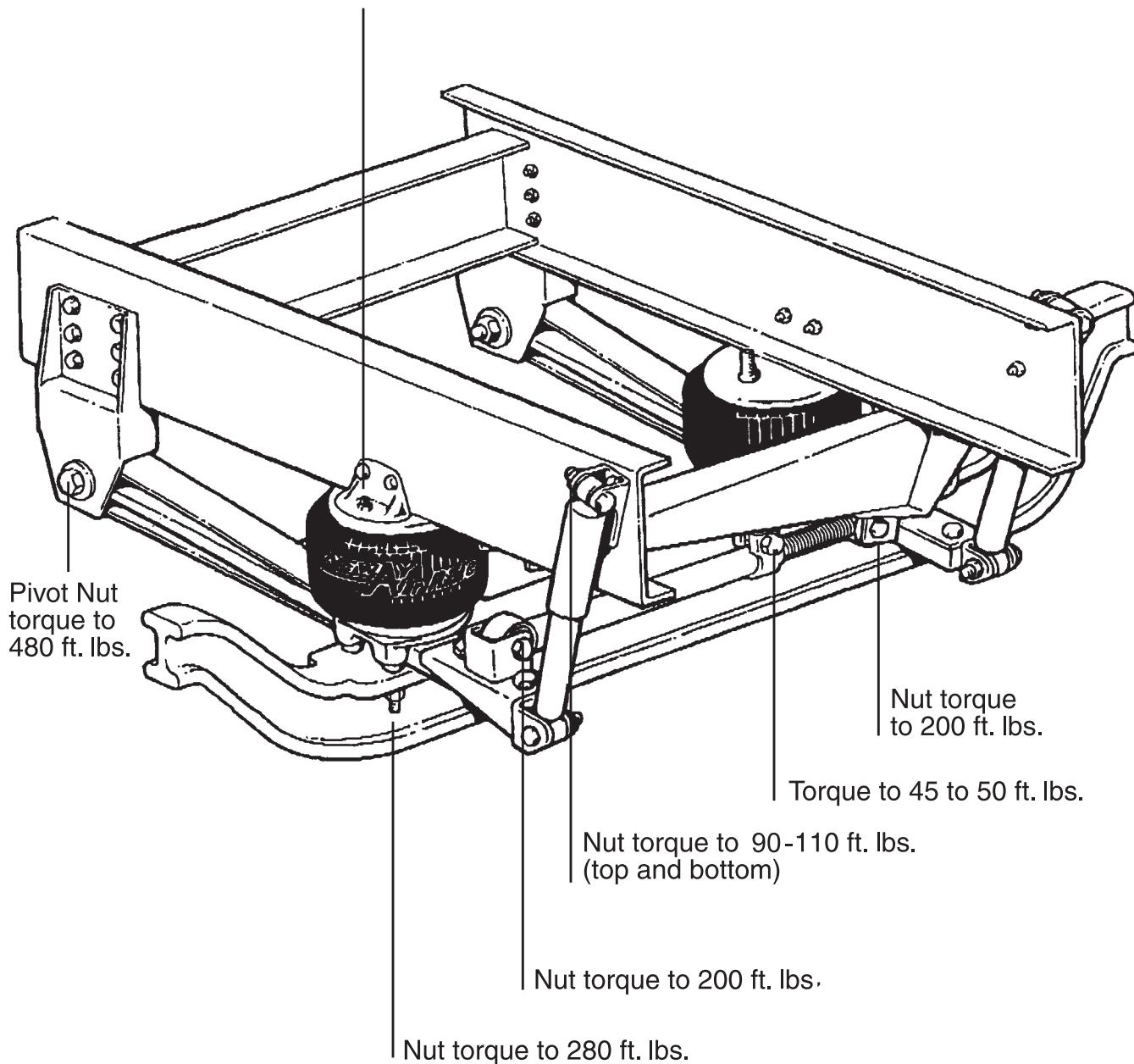
- Inspect the O.D. of the air springs. Check for signs of irregular wear or heat cracking.
- Inspect the air lines to make sure contact does not exist between the air line and the O.D. of the air springs. Air lines can rub a hole in an air spring very quickly.
- Check for sufficient clearance around the complete circumference of the air spring while at its maximum diameter.
- Inspect the O.D. of the piston for buildup of foreign materials. (On a reversible sleeve style air spring, the piston is the bottom component of the air spring.)
- Correct ride height should be maintained. The specified ride height has been established and set at the factory. This measurement can be checked with the vehicle loaded or empty.
- Leveling valves (or height control valves) play a large part in ensuring that the total air spring system works as required. Clean, inspect and replace if necessary.
- Check shock absorbers for leaking hydraulic oil and a worn or broken end connector. If a broken shock is found, replace it immediately. The shock absorber will normally limit the rebound of an air spring and keep it from overextending.
- Check the tightness of all mounting hardware (nuts and bolts). If loose, tighten. Do not over-tighten.

5,000 mile inspection (initial):

Bolts and nuts for proper torque; suspension ride height within 1/4"; air bags for equal firmness.

Steering Axle

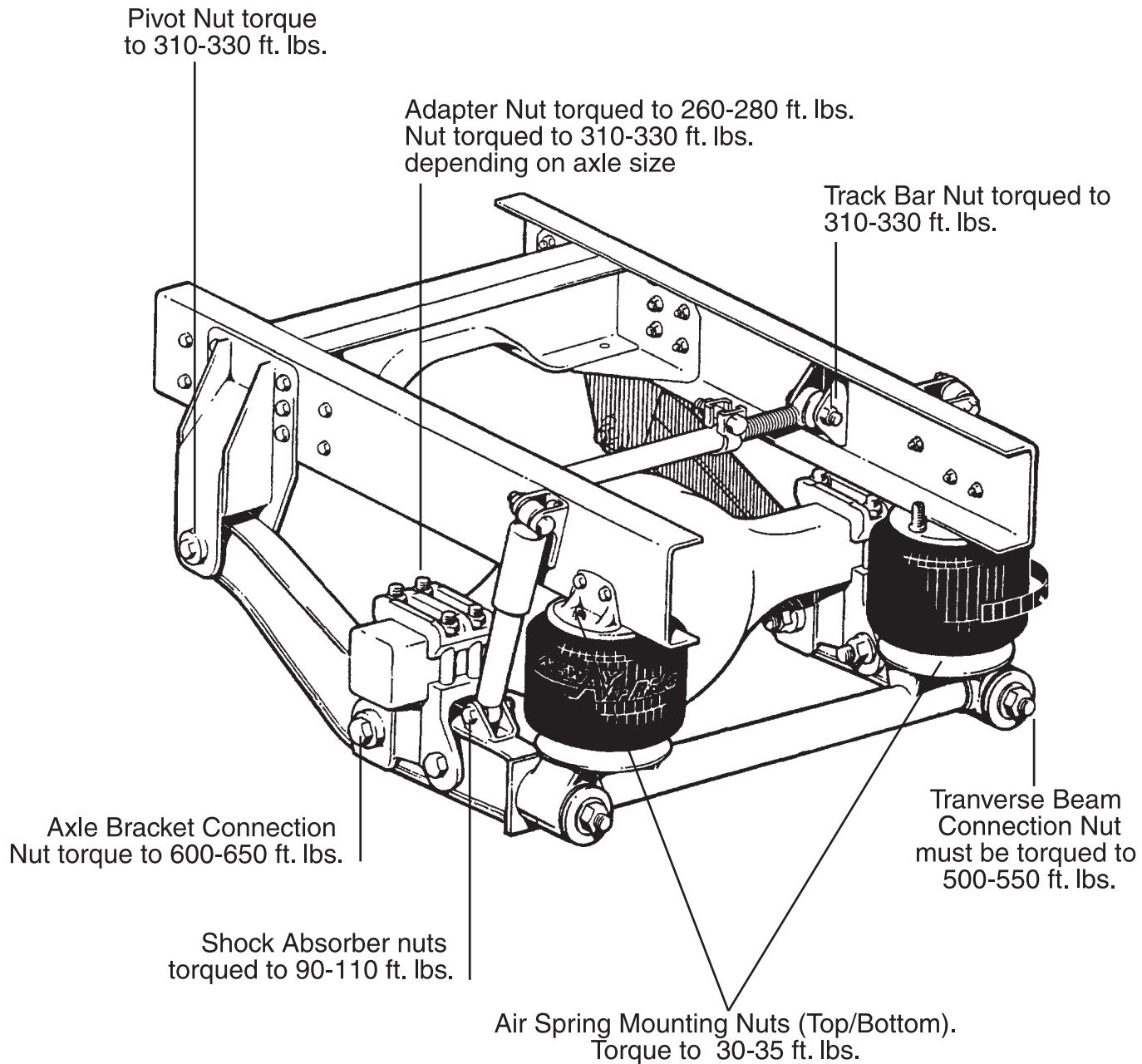
Nut air spring mounting hardware
(Top and Bottom) Torque 30-35 ft. lbs.



Drive Axle

50,000 mile or one (1) year:

Same as the 5,000 mile. Also, all other suspension components for any signs of damage, looseness, wear or cracks.



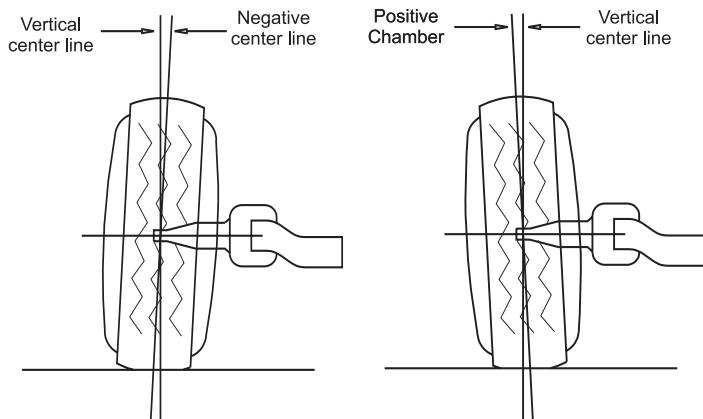
The correct wheel alignment promotes longer tire wear and ease of handling while minimizing the strain on the steering system and the axle components.

ALIGNMENT SPECIFICATIONS

Camber:

Camber, as shown, is vertical tilt of wheel as viewed from the front of the vehicle. This is machined into the axle when manufactured and is not adjustable.

- “Positive” camber is an outward tilt of the wheel at the top.
- “Negative” camber is an inward tilt of the wheel at the top.



Toe Setting:

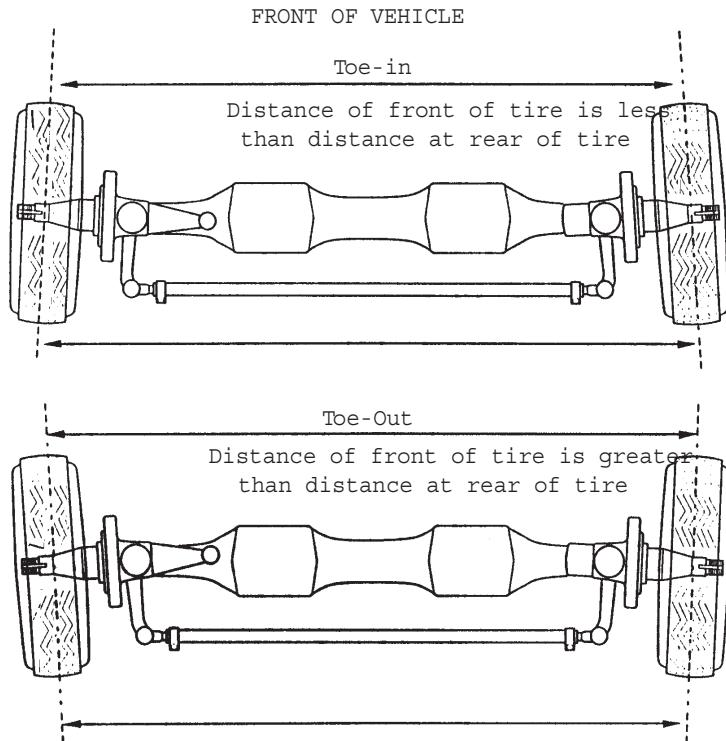
The toe setting represents different distances between the front and rear of the tires (measured at the vertical center line of the tires).

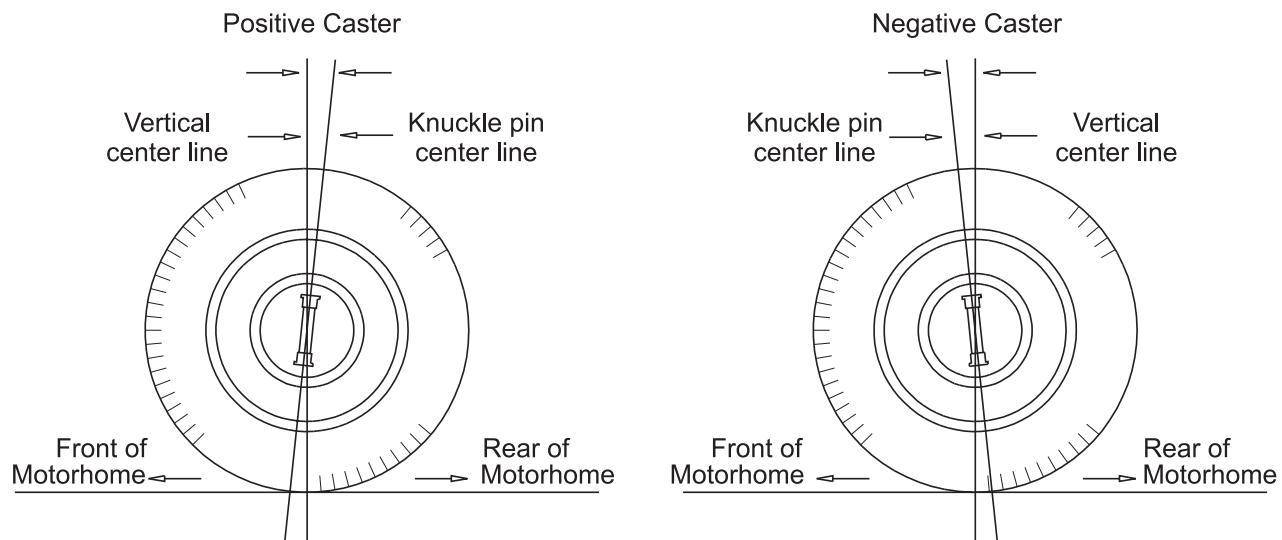
Toe-in occurs when the tire front distance is less than the tire rear distance.

Toe-out occurs when the tire front distance is greater than the tire rear distance.

Wheels are generally set with initial toe-in. As the vehicle operates tires tend toward a toe-out condition. By starting with an initial toe-in setting, a desirable “near zero toe-in” can be achieved when the vehicle is in motion.

Incorrect toe settings, where toed-in or toed-out, can have a significant affect on tire wear. The toe setting is adjusted by lengthening or shortening the cross tube.





Caster Adjustments:

Caster is the fore and aft tilt (toward the front or rear of the motorhome) of the steering kingpin as viewed from the side of the motorhome.

“Positive” caster is the tilt of the top end of the kingpin toward the rear of the motorhome.

“Negative” caster is the tilt of the top end of the kingpin toward the front of the motorhome.

A caster angle more positive than specified may result in excessive steering effort and/or shimmy. An angle less positive may result in vehicle wander or poor steering return to center. The caster angle is determined by the installed position of the steer axle.

FRONT	SPEC.	TOL.
Left Camber	-0.00°	0.41°
Right Camber	-0.24°	0.41°
Cross Camber	---	0.25°
Caster	3.50°	1.00°
Cross Caster	-0.00°	1.00°
Total Toe	0.03°	0.12°

The chassis incorporates four separate braking systems: The Primary Brake System, the Parking/Emergency Brake System, the Antilock Braking System (ABS) and the Engine (Exhaust) Braking System. The Primary Brake System uses a hydraulic brake actuation system. This system includes a hydraulic booster assembly, a master cylinder assembly and a monitoring system. A reserve electric hydraulic pump is included as a safety feature to provide limited power assisted stops should the primary system fails.

The Hydro-Max brake system gets primary power for the booster from the power steering pump. The reserve electric motor pump is turned on by a relay which is activated when an integral flow switch detects the lost flow of power steering fluid. The brakes will remain operational with a greatly increased stopping distance in the event that both the primary hydraulic and the backup electrical pump fail to operate.

The parking brake system is activated when the push-pull control knob (located on the drivers left console panel) is pulled. When the knob is pushed, the brake is released. Prior to driving, allow time for the air compressor to build up sufficient air to shut off the air warning lamp.

The Hydraulic Antilock Braking System is an electronic wheel speed monitoring and control system. The Electronic Control Unit (ECU) receives and processes signals sent from the wheel sensors located on each of the wheels. The ECU will process the signals and generate the commands to the solenoid control valves housed in the Modulator Assembly used to control the brake pressure. This process occurs when the wheels begin to lock. The rapid valve operations may even be noticed in the brake pedal.

The ABS indicator light located on the dash will alert the driver to possible system faults and is used by service personnel to assist in troubleshooting. In the event the ABS indicator light remains illuminated, the motorhome brake system may not be affected. However, continue to drive at a reduced rate of speed to the nearest repair facility.

The exhaust brake, located in the exhaust system of the engine, is designed to supplement the primary hydraulic braking system. Various features and benefits are obtained with this application.

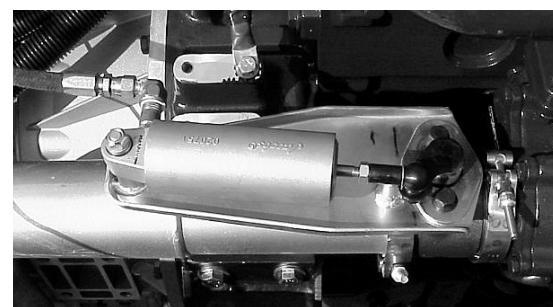
Attached directly to the engine turbocharger, the exhaust brake is activated when the dash switch at the drivers console is switched "ON" and the throttle is "RELEASED." The exhaust brake will not disengage the cruise control. This must be

BRAKE SYSTEMS

BRAKE - PARKING & EMERGENCY SYSTEMS

BRAKES - ABS SYSTEM (Anti-lock Brakes)

BRAKES - EXHAUST BRAKE SYSTEM



Exhaust Brake.

accomplished by tapping the service brake pedal. The amount of braking power developed, which is applied to the drive wheels only, is relevant to the engine speed (RPM). A butterfly plate inside the brake moves to restrict the flow of exhaust gases, causing an increase of back pressure in the engine. The increase of back pressure slows down the engine and creates an increased control in the coach braking performance. The slowing power reduces the use of the service brake and results in a service brake conservation. The exhaust brake is not a substitute for the service brake and cannot stop the coach completely. It can, however, be used continuously on steep downhill grades or long freeway off ramp. Use of the exhaust brake system allows the engine temperature to drop while going downhill. The exhaust brake should be turned off prior to starting the engine and when the engine is left idling for long periods of time.



CAUTION: Use of the exhaust brake on wet and slippery surfaces can result in overbraking and loss of traction.

When the exhaust brake is activated, the sound of the engine may vary and the slowing effect may or may not be felt. Once deactivated, normal throttle response with a slight change in RPM should occur.

Maintenance

The exhaust brake system, used routinely at normal exhaust operating temperatures, is virtually maintenance free. Some contributing causes which can result in failures with the exhaust brake include moisture, dirt, carbon and improper usage.

Starting the engine and idling for short periods of time is not recommended. Moisture is created within the engine and the exhaust system during cold start-ups. When normal operating temperatures are not obtained, moisture may get trapped in the valve housing resulting in rust, leading to insufficient operation of the exhaust brake.

Some problems that may be encountered with the exhaust brake include, but are not limited to, will not activate or deactivate, intermittent on/off operations or actuates with the switch off. These are commonly related to electrical symptoms. Slow operations or delays in operations, as well as limited performance, are mechanical symptoms. Refer these problems to the dealer for diagnosis.

BRAKES - MAINTENANCE & TROUBLESHOOTING

The most critical part of the service brake system is bleeding the system. Prior to bleeding the system, ensure all hose clamps, line connector and fittings are tight enough to prevent air from entering the system or fluid from leaking. The hydraulic brake system must be free of air to function properly. When bleeding, check the fluid level in both the power steering reservoir and master cylinder.



NOTE: The power steering system and Hydro-max system are two separate hydraulic systems. The fluids are not compatible and should not be mixed. Mixing of fluids will damage the systems and reduce service life.



NOTE: Do not attempt to move the motorhome in the event any line is disconnected, component removed or part of the hydraulic brake system is opened. There will be no braking capabilities until the affected system is bled.

If power steering fluid is noticed in the master cylinder, End Cap service on the power booster assembly can correct the leak. The Hydro-Max system should be bled prior to the brake system. Applying the brakes will cycle the pump and purge any air from the electric pump system. The engine will need to be started to bleed the booster. When started, applying the brakes two to three times will purge the air from the booster. Inspect fluid levels, add fluid as required.



WARNING: Brake lining may contain asbestos material and should only be serviced by qualified service technicians who are trained in the appropriate precautionary procedures.

It is important a supply of clean brake fluid be used during bleeding. Also, maintain the proper fluid level in the reservoir during bleeding. The sequence for opening the bleeder valves is curbside rear, roadside rear, curbside front and roadside front. A clear plastic tube inserted over the bleeder valve can aide in viewing air. Place the other end of the plastic tube in a container to catch the drain. When the valve is opened, observe the flow of fluid. Once a steady flow of fluid is present, close the bleeder valve. Check the fluid level in the master cylinder and repeat the process for the remaining calipers.

Flushing the system requires that the bleeder valve be left open until the fluid appears clear and uncontaminated. The system should be flushed whenever any repair has been performed, ensuring clean and uncontaminated fluid in the system.



NOTE: Do not reuse brake fluid which has been drained as the fluid may be contaminated.

Tires, suspension, wheel alignment and shocks can affect braking performance and should be inspected prior to checking the braking system. Some problems and repairs are listed below:

- Pedal fade is a good indication of leaks in the system. Inspect and repair leaks.

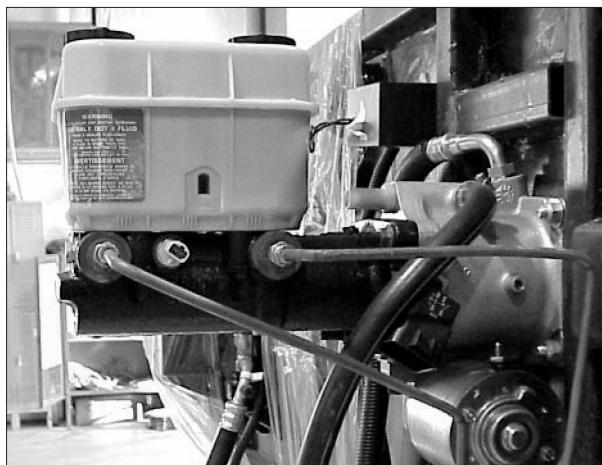
Bleeding the System

- Sluggish brake response indicates air has been introduced into the system. Bleed the brake system.
- Excessive pedal travel or excessive pedal effort relates to booster and master cylinder.
- Booster doesn't function properly in power or back up mode. Repair the booster and pump assembly.
- Booster works only in the back up mode. Repair the booster assembly.
- Booster works only in the power mode. Repair the back up pump.
- Dragging, grabbing, squealing or pulling brakes require servicing pads and calipers.

BRAKES - ELECTRIC PUMP & MASTER CYLINDER

The electric pump motor is reserve power for the booster assembly. The entire assembly should be replaced when a failure occurs. When the electric pump motor is working you will only have $\frac{1}{2}$ the brake boost. Caution should be taken as braking distance will be increased. The reserve power test is a quick test to ensure that the electric pump motor is operational. You would simply apply the brake pedal with the ignition "OFF." The electric pump should run and be audible.

The design of the master cylinder provides two separate brake fluid systems (front and rear). One system will operate should a failure occur in the other. When checking the fluid level in the master cylinder, the fluid should be clean with no evidence of contamination. A surge of fluid should occur when the brake pedal is applied, and fluid level should be at the bottom of the port ring openings. Since the master cylinder is the highest point of the system, gravity flow bleeding can be accomplished. Gravity flow bleeding requires only one person and NO pressure bleeder. Each caliper has a bleeder valve for removing any air in the system.



Hydramax right side view.

The brake system on the motorhome is designed to accommodate the weight of the vehicle and towing loads. The air brake system (**not available on 30 or 32 foot models**) is different from the conventional automotive hydraulic brake system and should be treated differently.

When operating a vehicle equipped with air brakes, considerations need to be given to stopping distances and air system pressures. The heavier the vehicle, the greater the kinetic energy. The motorhome has longer stopping distances than a car. Each brake application uses air from the air system. Engine speed is directly proportional to how fast the air system is replenished. Prepare for downhill grades. Grades are generally posted in percentages. It may be necessary to select a lower gear. Use the exhaust brake.

When making brake applications, use individual short applications down long hills rather than "riding" the brakes. This will extend the life of the brake linings. Avoid overheating the brakes. Hot brakes have less stopping power. When maneuvering the motorhome around in small areas or backing into spaces, several individual brake applications might be made. Plan when parking to make it easier on yourself. When preparing to back into a space, maneuver the motorhome so it is aligned with the parking slot before backing up.

Should a low air condition arise while the vehicle is under operation a dash warning light will illuminate alerting the operator of the situation. This warning occurs at approximately 60-65 psi (pounds per square inch).

A simple mechanical explanation of what occurs when a brake application is made is as follows: The air over hydraulic system uses air from the air tank to operate two air brake chambers. The air brake chambers operate two separate hydraulic master cylinders. The rest of the brake system is hydraulic. One master cylinder operates the front brakes; the other master cylinder operates the rear brakes.

BRAKES - AIR OVER HYDRAULIC (Optional)

All 8,500 lb. front axles use oil to lubricate the wheel bearings. Inspect the oil level before every trip or every 5,000 miles. The oil is drained and refilled without removing the wheel end assembly. Remove the hubcap to access the bearing cover and drain plug.

FRONT AXLE (Oil Filled Bearings)



To inspect the oil level:

- Remove the chrome hubcap.
- Locate the full and add mark on the outside of the clear plastic cover.
- If the lubricant level is low, add the recommended fluid until full.

The recommended oil change interval is based on the operating conditions, speeds and loads. Limited service applications may allow the recommended interval to be increased. Severe applications may require the recommended interval to be reduced. For more information, contact a Westport service representative.

Recommended Interval Change:

- Change the fluid whenever the seals are replaced, the brakes are relined or at 30,000 miles (48,000km). However, check the lubricant twice a year (spring and fall) for contamination. Change as needed.
- If yearly mileage is less than 30,000 miles, change it twice a year (spring and fall).

Lubricant Type:

- Standard 90 wt. API GL-5. Lubricant temperature must never exceed 250°F (+121°C).

To Drain:

- Place a suitable container below the bearing cover and remove the drain plug. If the cover does not have a drain plug, remove the screws retaining the cover plate to drain the lubricant.
- Replace plug or cover plate and fill bearing assembly with the recommended lubricant.

LEVELING SYSTEM

- Hydraulic Leveling

The three point leveling system features a multiple warning system with flashing lights and a bong alarm to alert you of the jack position. The system also features a remote control location from the driver seat. The torsion stress is significantly reduced during proper operating procedures. Damage resulting from improper procedures can range from windshield damage to entry doors jamming.

The model 22.5A J-II leveling system pump is located curbside front with easy access from the generator door. The valve assembly manifold is mounted on the the pump motor, providing easy access to the manual retract valves. The system is designed to be self bleeding in the event any component of the hydraulics has been removed or repaired. Fully extend and retract each jack twice. The remote rocker switches will operate with a minimum of 7.5 Volt DC. Optimum requirements for operating the system are voltages above 9.6 Volt DC.



NOTE: The leveling system jacks are not designed for use in changing tires. This can cause problems with the suspension system, frame alignment and/or cause damage to the windshield.

When manually operating the leveling system, always lower the front jack first. The front jack acts as a pivot point for the chassis and reduces torsion stress on the body of the motorhome.

Manual Leveling System



NOTE: In the event the front of the motorhome is high and does not require elevating, it will be necessary to raise front of motorhome a minimum of $\frac{1}{2}$ inch to allow jacks to act as a pivot point.

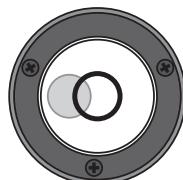
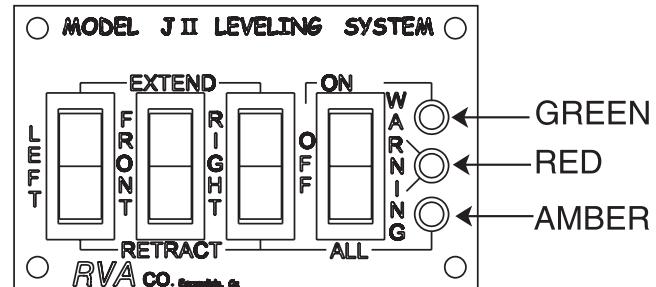
The leveling system was designed to reduce site selection problems. If possible, park the motorhome with the front facing downhill. If the ground is soft, place a wooden 2 X 8 board under the foot of each jack pad to prevent sinking.

The front jack will be the pivot point for the chassis and is always lowered first. This reduces the torsion stress on the body of the motorhome. The Bong alarm will activate when any jack is extended more than 2" to 6" from fully retracted position and will indicate low fluid level for the pump motor. The Bong alarm may momentarily activate when driving over rough roads, or negotiating curves and corners. Usually this indicates low fluid level.

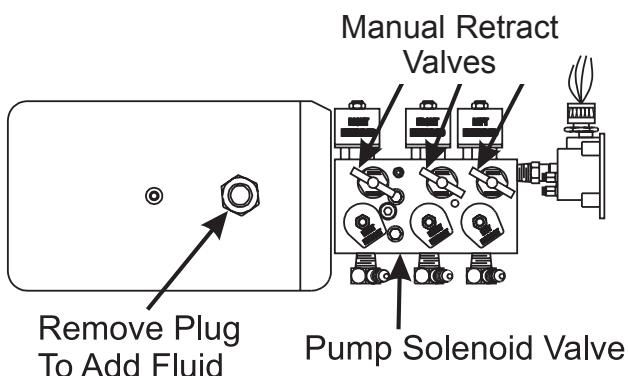


NOTE: Air will not automatically dump from air bags when leveling cycle begins. To expedite the air dumping, a manual air bag release switch is located on the dash panel.

- Place the gear selector in PARK.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
- Switch the main jack control power switch ON.
- To extend a particular jack, push the appropriate rocker switch to extend position and hold it until the desired extension is reached.
- To retract a particular jack, simply push the rocker switch to the retract position and hold until the desired retraction is reached.
- Turn off the switch labeled POWER on the jack control panel.
- Turn off the ignition switch.



Manual Leveling



- Ensure the gear selector is in PARK.
- Ensure the parking brake is applied.
- Turn the ignition switch to the ON position.
- For manual control of the system, switch the control panel power switch ON.
- To retract a particular jack, simply push the rocker switch to the retract.
- All jacks may be retracted by selecting the ALL position on the power switch.



NOTE: Do not move the motorhome until the jacks are fully retracted. A visual check of the jacks is recommended to ensure full retraction. Do not rely solely on the lights and alarms.

Manual Retract Valves

In the event of mechanical or electrical failure that would prevent the leveling jacks from being automatically retracted, the motorhome is equipped with manual emergency retract valves. These valves are located inside the front generator access. The manual system will release fluid under pressure in each jack and allow fluid to return to the reservoir. The jacks will then retract.

To operate the manual system, turn all three valves counterclockwise until they stop. Once the jacks are fully retracted, rotate all the valves fully clockwise. In the event one of the jacks is not holding pressure, check to make sure all valves are fully closed.

Occasionally, while the jacks are fully extended, wipe dirt from the jack rod. This will help lengthen the life of the jacks. This can vary from the amount and type of usage of the jacks. **WD-40** will serve as a solvent as well as a lubricant. Occasional oil or grease on the extended jack ram is normal and aids in the lubrication of the ram. It helps to learn the sound of the normal pumping and gurgling sounds of the pump when it is low on fluid.

Adding Fluid:

1. Use **Dexron III** automatic transmission fluid.
2. Extend any jack six inches from the full retracted position. All other jacks should be fully retracted.
3. Unscrew the reservoir cap from the top of the pump.
4. Turn the ignition switch to the **ON** position. Turn the rocker switch to **ON**. Open the window so the bong alarm is audible from outside the motorhome. Slowly fill the reservoir with fluid until the bong alarm stops sounding.
5. Replace the reservoir cap.
6. Turn the ignition switch and the remote panel **OFF**.

ENGINE - GENERAL INFORMATION

The diesel engine operates differently from the conventional gasoline engine. Gasoline engines control engine speed using a butterfly throttle plate controlling air/fuel mixture inlet flow. As the throttle plate opens, vacuum created by the piston velocity draws the metered fuel/air charge into the combustion chamber, then ignites from a controlled electric ignition source. Closing the throttle plate limits the fuel/air supply, slowing engine speed, increasing intake manifold vacuum.

The diesel engine in the motorhome controls engine speed by varying fuel supply only. No throttle plates are used. An exhaust driven turbine system (turbocharger) compresses the fresh air supply into the engine. The fuel is injected under pressure into the combustion chamber. Ignition of fuel/air charge occurs from heat generated by rapid high compression. The turbo boost gauge registers amount of intake manifold compression measured in lbs./in². Therefore, no intake manifold vacuum exists.

Diesel engine RPM (revolutions per minute) operating speeds are generally much lower than that of the gasoline engine. Peak torque and horsepower output values occur at much lower engine speeds. Idle speeds between the two engine types are similar, however maximum engine speeds are quite different. The gasoline engine generally is not regulated to a maximum engine speed. The maximum engine speed on a diesel engine is controlled by an engine speed governor set by the engine manufacturer.



WARNING: Do not operate a diesel engine where there are or can be combustible vapors. Vapors can be drawn through air intake system and cause engine acceleration and over-speeding, resulting in fire, explosion and extensive property damage. Numerous safety devices are available, such as air intake shutoff devices, to minimize risk of over-speeding where an engine (due to its application) might operate in a combustible environment, such as fuel spills or gas leaks. Equipment owner and operator is responsible for safe operation of engine. Consult your engine authorized repair location for future information.

The maintenance guidelines found in the Cummins Operation & Maintenance manual is recommended for the engine. When followed, it will help with a longer life, better performance and more cost efficient operations. A good maintenance schedule begins with a daily awareness of the engine and its various systems.

The engine is equipped with an intake manifold grid heater. The grid heater helps engine starting in cold weather. Intake manifold air temperature is monitored by the Electronic Control Module on the engine. If intake manifold temperature is below specified level (approximately 40° F.) manifold grid heater will be activated. Grid heater activation is indicated by the **WAIT TO START** indicator lamp.



WARNING: Use of ether starting fluids may cause an explosion upon grid heater activation.

ENGINE

STARTING PROCEDURE

With throttle in idle position, turn ignition to the ON position allowing WAIT TO START lamp to extinguish. Turn key to the start position. When the engine starts the grid heater will again energize for a time period determined by the intake air temperature and the fuel temperature. Allow engine to idle with no load for three to five minutes. The engine coolant temperature should be up to normal operating range (140° F/60 ° C to 212° F/100° C) before operating engine under full throttle.



NOTE: It is not recommended to idle the engine for long periods of time. This will simply waste fuel and annoy neighbors. Consistent periods of long idle may cause damage to the engine.

STARTING PROCEDURE -COLD WEATHER



The engine block heater may need to be plugged in two to three hours prior to starting. The engine block heater is rated at 750 watts ISB & 1000 watts ISC, 110 Volts AC and requires the motorhome be plugged into shore power or have the generator running. It is not necessary to leave the block heater plugged in for long periods of time. The block heater requires about 7.5 10 amps to operate.

OIL RECOMMENDATIONS (Engine)

The maintenance guidelines found in the Cummins Operation & Maintenance Manual is recommended for the engine. When followed it will help with a longer life, better performance and more cost efficient operations. A good maintenance schedule begins with a daily awareness of the engine and its various systems.

A high grade 15W-40 multiviscosity heavy duty lubricating oil meeting Cummins Engineering Specification CES 20071 or CES 20076, American Petroleum Institute (API) specification CH-4 which can be used as an alternative to CES 20071 is recommended. Lubricating oils meeting API CG-4 specifications may be used at a reduced drain interval. The engine uses Pennzoil 15W-40 heavy duty engine lubricating oil that meets Cummins specifications. A critical factor in maintaining engine performance and durability is the use of high grade multigrade lubricating oil and strict adherence to the maintenance service intervals.

A straight weight or monograde lubricating oil is not recommended. Shortened drain intervals may be required as determined by a close monitoring of the lubricating oil condition by means of a oil sampling program. The use of oil analysis to extend drain interval is not recommended. There are numerous variables which is the basis of the recommendation.

Synthetic oils API category III specifications are recommended for extreme cold temperatures only.

Low viscosity oils, used for winter operations, will aid in starting. Synthetic oils, or oil with adequate low temperature properties used for Arctic operations where the engine cannot be kept warm when shut down, will aid in starting.

The use of synthetic oils should not be used to extend drain intervals.

Extended oil change intervals can decrease engine life and possibly affect the engine warranty.

Oil additives should not be used unless the oil supplier or oil manufacturer has been consulted and provided positive evidence or data establishing satisfactory performance in the engine.



NOTE: The engine does not require a “break-in” procedure.

Function of Engine Oil:

If a lubricating oil is to work in an engine it must be capable to perform various functions. Lubrication of the moving parts is the primary function. The lubricating oil should be able to form a film between metal surfaces preventing metal to metal contact and reducing friction. When you have a metal to metal contact, friction heat is generated. Welding of the part can occur and metal transfer will result in scuffing or seizing. The film of oil contacting the surfaces will provide cushioning and shock dampening as well.

Cleaning is another function. The oil should perform as a cleaner in the engine by flushing contaminates from critical components. These contaminates should be removed in the filtration system or during the course of an oil change. Oil will provide a protective barrier to prevent corrosion of non-like metals.

Internal components of the engine require cooling. The primary coolant system cannot provide this cooling. Oil will transfer heat by contacting the various components then transferring to the primary cooling system at the oil cooler. The uneven surfaces are filled to react as a combustion seal within the cylinder liner and other internal components.

Synthetic Engine Oil:

In extreme environments, where ambient temperatures can be as low as 45° C (-50° F), a petroleum based oil will not perform satisfactorily in diesel engines. Synthetic oils were developed for these type applications. These synthetic oils are blend from ester and/or hydrocarbon based oils. These base oils are produced by chemically reacting lower molecular weight materials to manufacture lubricants of desired properties. All synthetic based oils must meet the API category III classifications and SAE viscosity grades. Synthetic oils and petroleum based oils should never be mixed.

Viscosity:

Viscosity is simply a measure of resistance of molecule layers moving relative to an adjacent layer. All fluid viscosity is affected by temperature. A multigrade lubricating oil tends to be less sensitive to temperature changes due to formulation. Lubricating oils are generally selected for use with viscosities appropriate for the expected operating temperature. The correct selection of a lubricating oil of correct viscosity is critical for optimum performance. Some effects of incorrect viscosity when the oil is too thick range from difficulty in starting, to increasing fuel consumption and reducing power output. When the oil is too thin, oil consumption is increased as well as wear from the metal to metal contact. This will also increase engine noise.

Low temperature viscosity specifications are identified by a "W" (winter). High temperature viscosity that meets the 100° C (212° F) requirements have no suffix. When a lubricating oil meets both high and low temperature requirements they are classified as multi-viscosity or multigrade.

Routine Maintenance Recommendations:

1. Check oil level daily.
2. Replace oil filter at every oil drain interval.
3. Cummins Engine Company, Inc. recommends the use of high quality, API (American Petroleum Institute) licensed CH-4 or CES20071, 15W-40, multiviscosity oil or premium oil.
4. The recommended oil drain interval is defined by the API oil performance classification and the engine duty cycle. Refer to the Cummins Operation & Maintenance Manual for complete details.

Oil Recommendations - Cold Weather

It is possible to operate diesel engines in extremely cold environments. The engine should be properly prepared and maintained. The correct lubricants, fuels and coolant MUST be used for the cold weather range for which the motorhome is being operated. Cold weather operation can be defined in two categories: **Winter** and **Arctic**.

WINTER (32° to -25° F) (0° to -32° C): Use a 50% antifreeze to 50% water coolant mixture, use multi-viscosity oil meeting Cummins specifications and fuel to have maximum cloud pour points 10° F (6° C) lower than the ambient temperature in which the motorhome operates.

ARCTIC (-25° to -65° F) (-32° to -52° C): Use a 60% antifreeze to 40% water coolant mixture. Use oil meeting Cummins specifications and fuel to have maximum cloud pour points 10° F (6° C) lower than the ambient temperature in which the motorhome operates.



Refer to the Operations & Maintenance Manual for more detailed information.

General guidelines for shutting the engine down are fairly simplistic. Allow the engine to idle three to five minutes after a full load operation. This allows adequate cool down of pistons, cylinders, bearings and turbocharger components. Under normal driving conditions, exiting the highway is generally lighter engine operation and the need for the three to five minutes is not necessary.

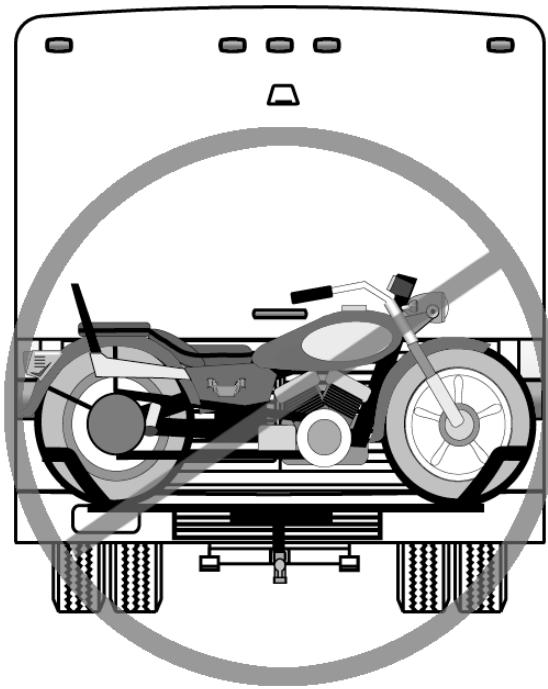
ENGINE SHUTDOWN

When the motorhome has been sitting for extended periods, 30 days or more, verify all the fluid levels are correct. Follow the normal starting procedures. If the oil pressure gauge does not register within 15 seconds, shut off the engine immediately to avoid damage. Consult the Cummins Operation & Maintenance Manual for guidelines on troubleshooting low oil pressure, or contact a qualified service technician. Allow the engine to idle for three to five minutes before operating under a load.

ENGINE SHUTDOWN -Extended

A fully formulated antifreeze or coolant containing a precharge of Supplemental Coolant Additives (SCA) is recommended. The use of either will significantly simplify coolant system maintenance. The difference between a fully formatted antifreeze and a fully formatted coolant is the percentage of water. Both contain balance amounts of antifreeze, SCA, buffering compounds and a percentage of good clean quality water. The antifreeze of coolant must meet ethylene glycol or propylene glycol recommendations. A good clean quality water in a 50/50 ratio (40 to 60% working range) mixed with fully formatted antifreeze will provide protection from -34° F to 228° F. The 50/50 mix ratio must be premixed prior to being put in the system. Placing antifreeze and water in the cooling system is not recommended. Consult the Cummins Operation & Maintenance Manual for more details.

COOLANT



NOTE: An over concentration of antifreeze, or the use of high silicate antifreeze, can cause damage to the coolant system and engine. Antifreeze is essential in every climate.



NOTE: Any item on the back of the motorhome which blocks the grill opening or changes the air flow may cause an overheating condition under some circumstances.

The coolant fluid freeze point should be checked with every oil change interval at 15,000 miles, 500 hours or six months, whichever comes first. Also change the coolant filter at the same interval unless SCA concentration is over three units. The coolant should be drained and flushed at 6,000 hours or two years of service, whichever comes first.

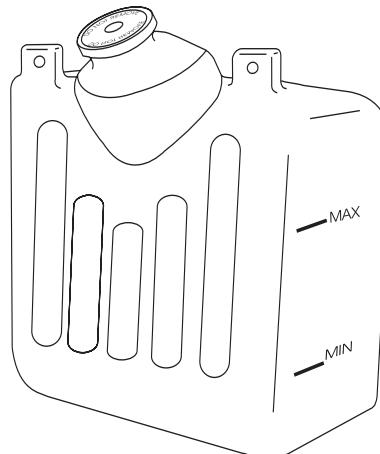
Engine Coolant Reservoir:

A “see-through” plastic reservoir, similar to the familiar windshield washer jar, is connected to the radiator by a hose. As the motorhome is driven, coolant is heated and expands. A portion of fluid displaced by this expansion flows from the radiator into the reservoir tank. When the engine is stopped, and coolant cools and contracts, displaced coolant is drawn back in the radiator by a vacuum. Thus, the radiator is kept filled with coolant to the desired level at all times resulting in increased cooling efficiency. The coolant level should be at or above the appropriate mark on the reservoir tank when the system is cold.



CAUTION: To avoid scalding hot steam or coolant from being released from the engine cooling system, never remove the radiator cap while the engine is running or hot. Failure to follow this warning may result in damage to the engine's cooling system and possibly cause severe personal injury.

- Check the coolant level daily or when refueling.
- Drain and flush the coolant system every 60,000 miles or two years, and refill with a heavy-duty coolant (50/50 mix of water and anti-freeze).
- If the coolant is below the MIN mark, the low coolant alarm will sound and the low coolant light will appear on the dash. You will need to stop and check for coolant loss before driving.
- The coolant level to remain between the MAX and MIN level in the reservoir.

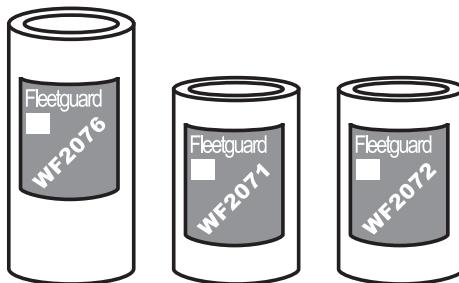


The coolant capacity, when changing the antifreeze, is approximately 11½ gallons.

Routine Maintenance Recommendations:

1. Check the SCA concentration level every 15,000 miles/6 months.
2. Change the coolant filter every 15,000 miles/6 months.
3. Drain and flush the system every 240,000 miles/2 years, and refill with a heavy-duty coolant (50/50 mix of water and antifreeze).
4. Always use antifreeze. In addition to freeze protection, antifreeze is essential for overheat and corrosion protection.
5. The supplemental coolant additive (SCA) is required.
6. Freeze point should be measured every 15,000 miles/6 months.

Fully formulated products contain SCA and are required to protect the cooling system from fouling, solder blooming and general corrosion. The cooling filter is required to protect the coolant system from abrasive materials, debris and precipitated coolant additives.

Coolant - Additive (SCA)

Supplement coolant additives, or equivalent, are used to prevent liner pitting, corrosion and scale deposits in the cooling system. Use the correct Fleetguard coolant filter to maintain the recommended SCA concentration in the system. Maintain the correct concentration by changing the service filter at each oil drain interval.



NOTE: The correct filter is determined by the total cooling system capacity and oil drain interval. Refer to the Coolant Capacity Specifications in this section.

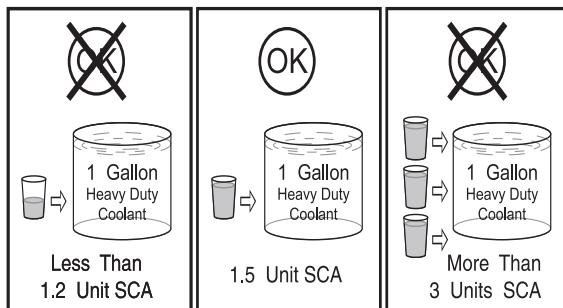


CAUTION: Insufficient concentration of the coolant additives will result in liner pitting and engine failure. The SCA concentration must not fall below 1.2 units or exceed 3 units per gallon of cooling system capacity.

Use the correct Fleetguard coolant filter to maintain the recommended SCA concentration in the system. Maintain the correct concentration by changing the service coolant filter at each oil drain interval. The oil pressure gauge, temperature gauge, warning lamps and other safety lamps should be checked daily to ensure proper operations.



NOTE: The correct filter is determined by the total cooling system capacity. If you have any questions refer to the Cummins manual.



Coolant Hoses

Rotten, swollen and worn hoses, as well as loose connections, are frequent causes of coolant system problems. Overheating can be caused by a collapsed hose or a clog caused by rubber shedding from a rotten hose. Replace any hose found to be cracked, swollen or damaged. Connections should be inspected periodically and hose clamps tightened.

Coolant System - Thawing

If the coolant system becomes frozen solid, place the motorhome in a warm area until the ice is completely thawed. At this point the motorhome must be towed. If the engine is operated when the cooling system is frozen it will result in engine overheating due to insufficient coolant.

Once thawed, check engine, radiator and related components for damage caused by expansion of frozen coolant.

If the engine is overheated, never pour cold coolant into a hot engine. The sudden change in temperature may crack the cylinder head or block. If the engine is hot, fill slowly to prevent rapid cooling and distortion of engine castings.

Auxiliary braking devices are designed to supplement a standard wheel braking system. These devices are not designed to bring the motorhome to a complete stop; however, they can assist in controlling the speed of the motorhome. Proper use of the auxiliary braking device can save on costly service brake repairs.

BRAKE - AUXILIARY

The exhaust retarder is an auxiliary braking device which is attached directly to the engine turbocharger. The exhaust brake is operated by either a dash switch or a foot operated switch. The dash mounted switch will operate the exhaust brake when dash switch is **ON** and the throttle is **RELEASED**. Application of the service brake is required to disengage the cruise control. When the exhaust brake is activated a flapper inside the exhaust brake moves and restricts the flow of exhaust gases and causes an increase of exhaust pressure within the engine.

The increased back pressure quickly slows the engine speed, resulting in powerful engine braking action. When the exhaust brake is activated, the amount of engine braking power developed is related to engine speed (RPM). When a exhaust brake application is made, the engine braking effect increases with higher engine RPM. When the exhaust brake is activated going down a hill, the exhaust brake will help control road speed or slow down the motorhome's road speed until the Allison Transmission automatically downshifts to the next lower gear. Downshifting automatically occurs from high gear down through second gear. Certain road conditions and engine speeds may require the transmission be manually down shifted in order to generate adequate engine RPM and increase the engine brake effect.

BRAKE - EXHAUST

The Exhaust Brake system, used routinely at normal exhaust operating temperatures, is virtually maintenance free. Some contributing causes which can result in failures with the exhaust brake include moisture, dirt, carbon and improper usage.

Starting the engine and idling for short periods of time is not recommended. Moisture is created within the engine and the exhaust system during cold startups. When normal operating temperatures are not obtained, moisture may get trapped in the valve housing resulting in rust, leading to insufficient operation of the exhaust brake.

Some problems you may encounter with the exhaust brake include, but are not limited to, will not activate or deactivate, intermittent on/off operations or actuates with the switch off. These are commonly related to electrical symptoms. Slow operations or delays in operations, as well as limited performance, are mechanical symptoms. Refer these problems to your dealer for diagnosis.

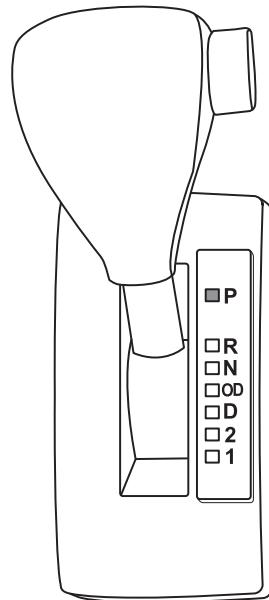
Exhaust Brake Maintenance

TRANSMISSION (T-1000 5 Speed Models)

The Allison 1000 series transmission is a fully automatic, torque-converter driven, electronically controlled transmission. The electronic controls provide automatic gear selection in all drive ranges and automatic engagement of the torque converter lockup clutch.

The electronic control system has five major components: the Transmission Control Module (TCM), engine throttle position sensor, three speed sensors, Neutral Start Back Up (NSBU) switch and the control valve module. The TCM processes information received from the throttle position sensor, speed sensor, NSBU switch and control valve module. The electronic control system optimizes shift quality by using "Adaptive Shifting." A wide variety in shifting under varied conditions is required before optimizing the shift quality. Generally, five typical shifts of a shift type are needed for shift calibration.

Shift Selector



Park (P):

Places the transmission in neutral and engages the park pawl.

Reverse (R):

For backing up the motorhome.

Neutral (N):

Neutral operation.

Overdrive (OD):

Highway driving range 5.

Drive (D):

City driving range 3 and 4.

Second Range (2):

Heavy city traffic and braking on steeper downgrades.

First Range (1):

Driving on steep grades.

Pulling through mud or snow.

Maneuvering in tight spots.

First range provides the maximum driving torque and braking effect.

Range Inhibited Light

The Range inhibit lamp, located on the left dash console, is an indicator that range shifts requested may not occur. Certain operating conditions when detected by the TCM will inhibit shifting to protect from damaging operations. This is in response to diagnostic trouble codes received by the transmission control system.

Shift inhibits falls within certain categories. Above-idle neutral range shifts are shifts from **N** (Neutral) to **R** (Reverse) or **N** (Neutral) to a forward range when the idle is in excess of 900 rpm (Above-idle). Forward/Reverse directional shifts are not permitted when measurable output shaft speed is detected.



NOTE: Sudden movements or lurching the motorhome with an open throttle can result in damage to transmission. Avoid this condition by making shifts only when the throttle is closed and engine is at normal idle.

Certain unusual transmission operating conditions detected by the TCM will temporarily limit transmission operations. These conditions are transmission problems. The TCM will lock the Transmission in a safe gear range to permit the motorhome to be driven to a service location. The TCM may not respond to additional shift requests. Upshift and downshift may not occur and directional changes will not occur.

Shift Inhibits



Range Inhibit Lamp.

The electronic control system is programmed to inform the operator of a problem with the transmission system and automatically take action to protect the operator, motorhome and transmission. When the TCM detects a Range inhibit or Shift inhibit condition, the TCM restricts shifting, turns the **CHECK TRANS** light on the instrument panel and registers a diagnostic code.

Transmission - Check Light



NOTE: For some problems, diagnostic codes may be registered without the ECU activating the CHECK TRANS light. The Allison Transmission authorized service outlet should be consulted whenever there is a transmission related concern. They have the equipment to check for diagnostic codes and to correct problems which arise.

Each time the engine is started the **CHECK TRANS** will light, then turn off after a few seconds. This momentary lighting is to show that the status light circuits are working properly. If the **CHECK TRANS** light does not illuminate during start up, or if the light remains on after start up, the system should be checked immediately. Continued illumination of the **CHECK TRANS** light during vehicle operation (other than start up) indicates that the TCM has signaled a diagnostic code.

It may be possible to rock the motorhome out if it is stuck in snow, mud or deep sand. Shift the selector to **D** (Drive) and apply a steady light throttle. Never apply full throttle as the wheels may spin and bury the motorhome deeper. When the motorhome has moved forward as far it will go, apply and hold the service brakes. Allow the engine to return to idle before selecting **R** (Reverse). Release the brake and apply light throttle until the motorhome has

Rocking Out

rocked as far it will go. Again, apply the service brake and allow the engine to return to idle. Repeat this process if the motorhome has moved a greater distance. If the process does not free the motorhome, call for towing assistance.



NOTE: Sudden movements or lurching the motorhome with an open throttle can result in damage to transmission. Avoid this condition by making shifts only when the throttle is closed and engine is at normal idle.

Parking

Bring the motorhome to a complete stop using the service brakes and hold the brake pedal down. Allow the engine to come to a low idle (500 to 800 rpm). Apply the parking/emergency brake by pulling up on the knob. When the parking/emergency brake is set, move the shifter to the **P** (PARK) position. This engages the park pawl. Release the brake pedal.



NOTE: Chock all the wheels securely if the motorhome is left unattended.

A Park Pawl is used with the transmission which effectively grounds the output shaft preventing rotation of the driveline. An attempt to engage the park pawl with the motorhome in motion will ratchet the park pawl. The park pawl will not hold the motorhome and will not engage. When the motorhome is stationary, the park pawl is automatically engaged by shifting the shift lever to **P** (Park). Parking on an incline and not following parking procedures can result in a condition known as "Torque Lock." Torque lock can occur when an excessive amount of torque is placed on the park pawl. It may be difficult to shift the transmission out of **P** (Park). Setting the Park brake before shifting to **P** (Park) can help prevent torque lock.

Periodic Inspections

For easier inspection, the transmission should be kept clean. Make periodic checks for loose bolts and leaking fluid lines. Check the condition of the electrical harnesses regularly. Check the engine cooling system occasionally for evidence of transmission fluid which would indicate a faulty oil cooler. Report any abnormal condition to the Allison dealer.

Prevent Major Problems

Help the electronic control system oversee the operation of the transmission. Minor problems can be kept from becoming major problems if you notify an Allison Transmission distributor or dealer when one of these conditions occur:

1. The shifting feels odd.
2. The transmission leaks fluid.

3. Unusual transmission-related sounds (changes in sound caused by normal engine thermostatic fan cycling, while climbing a long grade with a heavy load, have been mistaken for transmission-related sounds).
4. The **CHECK TRANS** light comes on frequently.

Because the transmission fluid cools, lubricates, and transmits hydraulic power, it is important that the proper fluid level be maintained at all times. If the fluid level is too low, the converter and clutches do not receive an adequate supply of fluid. If the fluid level is too high, the fluid can aerate. Aerated fluid can cause the transmission to shift erratically or overheat.

The Importance of Proper Fluid Levels

 **NOTE: The motorhome should be stationary for approximately two minutes prior to checking the fluid levels to ensure fluid is stabilized**

Any fluid meeting *Dexron-III* specifications are acceptable for use in the transmission. Transmission performance, reliability, and durability are important influences in the type of fluids used. Change the fluid and remote spin-on filter after the first 8,000 km (5,000 miles). The dipstick/oil fill is located between the engine and transmission underneath the engine access door in the bedroom. Change the transmission fluid and remote spin-on filter every 50,000 miles or 24 months, whichever occurs first.

Checking Fluid Levels

The fluid and remote spin-on filter may require changing sooner depending on the severity of operating conditions. The fluid must also be changed whenever there is evidence of dirt or high temperature conditions as indicated by discoloration, strong odor or fluid analysis. Local conditions, severity of operation or duty cycle will dictate more or less frequent service intervals.



For more detailed information consult the Allison Transmission Owner's Manual.

Cold Check:

The concept of a cold check is to determine adequate fluid level for safe operating until hot check can be performed.

- Park the motorhome on a level surface using the service brakes.
- The engine is operated at a low idle, put the transmission in P (Park).
- Apply the parking brake and chock the wheels to prevent the motorhome from moving.
- Allow the engine to run at idle (500-800 rpm) for one minute.

- Apply the service brakes and shift to **D** (Drive), then to **N** (Neutral) and then to **R** (Reverse) to fill the system. Finally shift to **P** (Park) and release the service brakes. Allow the engine to continue to run at idle (500-800 rpm).
- Remove the dipstick and wipe clean. Reinsert the dipstick fully into the tube and remove to check fluid level. Repeat this to verify the reading if needed.
- Safe operating level is anywhere within the **COLD CHECK** band on the dipstick. The fluid level is sufficient enough to operate until a **HOT CHECK** can be run.
- If the level is not within this band, add or drain the fluid as necessary to bring the level to the middle of the **COLD CHECK** band.
- Perform the **HOT CHECK** the first opportunity after reaching normal operating temperatures (160°-200° F/71°-93° C).



Transmission Oil Level Dipstick.

Hot Check:

- Because the fluid level rises as the temperature increases, the fluid must be hot to ensure an accurate check.
- Be sure the fluid has reached normal operating temperature (160°-200° F/71°-93° C). If a transmission temperature gauge is not present, check the fluid level when the engine water temperature gauge has stabilized and the transmission has been operated under a load for at least one hour.
- Park the motorhome on a level surface and shift to **P** (Park). Apply the parking brake and allow the engine to idle (500-800 rpm).
- After wiping the dipstick clean, check the fluid level. Safe operating level is anywhere within the **HOT RUN** band on the dipstick.
- The width of the **HOT RUN** band is approximately one quart of fluid at normal temperature range.
- If the level is not within this band, add or drain the fluid as necessary to bring the level within the **HOT RUN** band.
- Be sure that the fluid level checks are consistent. Check the level more than once. If the readings are not consistent ensure that the transmission breather is clean and not clogged. If the readings are still not consistent, contact the nearest Allison distributor or dealer.

The Allison World transmission incorporates the World Transmission Electronic Control (WTEC) system. The system is comprised of five major components connected by a wiring harness: the electronic control unit (ECU), engine throttle position sensor, three speed sensors, remote shift selector (keypad) and the control module. The ECU processes information received from the throttle position sensor, speed sensor, pressure switch and shift selector to activate solenoids on the control module in the transmission. The solenoids control oncoming and off going clutch pressure to provide closed loop shift control. This is accomplished by matching rpm during a shift to an established desired profile within the ECU.

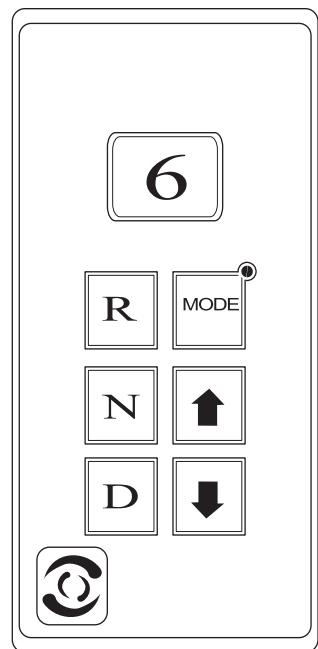
The system is monitored within the first 30 seconds of each engine start. This is referred to as "autodetect." Autodetect searches for presence of data inputs or transmission components. The autodetect enables the ECU functional or diagnostic response to the items which are detected.

Another feature of the transmission is the ability to "learn" or "adapt." The electronic control system optimizes shift quality by using "Adaptive Shifting." A wide variety in shifting under varied conditions will be required before optimizing the shift quality. Generally, five typical shifts of a shift type is needed for shift calibration.

The range selection is accomplished via the remote pushbutton selector. The selector is simplistic in appearance. The controls are **R**, **N**, **D**, arrow **UP**, arrow **DOWN**, **MODE** buttons and a digital display window. Under normal operations the "**D**" button is pressed and the digital display shows the highest forward range attainable for the shift selection in use. The digital display window will also indicate codes for abnormal conditions, and can even be a useful troubleshooting aid. When the ignition is turned ON, the display should be visible. This display indicates the presence of neutral start command. If this display indication is not visible, there is no power to the selector and may indicate electrical problems with the batteries.

- Digital display window enables information requested to be easily read.
- Select the **REVERSE** gear by pressing "**R**".
- Select **NEUTRAL** by pressing "**N**". The area around the "**N**" button is a raised ridge so the driver can orient his hand to the push buttons by touch, without looking at the display.
- Select **DRIVE** range by pressing "**D**". The highest forward gear appears on the **SELECT** display and the transmission will shift to the starting gear.

TRANSMISSION - Shift Selector (MH 2000 & 3000)



- The **UPSHIFT** and **DOWNSHIFT** arrow buttons are used to select a higher (if not in “**D**”) or lower (if not in “**1**”) forward range. These buttons are not functional in **NEUTRAL** or **REVERSE**. One press changes the range selected by one range. If the button is held continuously, the selected range will continue to change up or down until the button is released or until the highest/lowest possible range of gears is selected.
- The **MODE** button enables a secondary shift point to be selected. This is commonly referred to as “**Economy**.” It is further used by the service technician to access diagnostic codes when troubleshooting. The diagnostic circuitry must be enabled to display.
- When the Auxiliary Braking device is used, the display changes to a default reading of two or three. This default is pre-selected at the factory and can only be reprogrammed by an authorized Allison Service Center. The transmission is not in second or third gear. This is only the reference for the rpm shift points to optimize the braking capacity.

Transmission - Check Light

The electronic control system is programmed to inform the operator of a problem with the transmission system and automatically take action to protect the operator, motorhome and transmission. When the Electronic Control Unit (ECU) detects a **DO NOT SHIFT** (DNS) condition the ECU restricts shifting, turns the **CHECK TRANS** light on the instrument panel and registers a diagnostic code.



NOTE: For some problems, diagnostic codes may be registered without the ECU activating the CHECK TRANS light. An Allison Transmission authorized service outlet should be consulted whenever there is a transmission related concern. They have the equipment to check for diagnostic codes and to correct problems which arise.

Each time the engine is started the **CHECK TRANS** will light, then turn off after a few seconds. This momentary lighting is to show that the status light circuits are working properly. If the **CHECK TRANS** light does not illuminate during start up, or if the light remains on after start up, the system should be checked immediately.

Continued illumination of the **CHECK TRANS** light during vehicle operation (other than start up) indicates that the ECU has signaled a diagnostic code. Illumination of the **CHECK TRANS** light is accompanied by a flashing display from the shift selector. The shift selector display will show actual range attained and the transmission will not respond to shift selector requests.

Indications from the shift selector are provided to inform the operator that the transmission is not performing as designed and is operating with reduced capabilities. Before turning the ignition off, the transmission may be operated for a short time in the selected range in order to “limp home” for service assistance. Service should be performed immediately in order to minimize potential for damage to the transmission.

When the **CHECK TRANS** light comes on, and the ignition switch is turned off, the transmission will remain in **N** (Neutral) until the condition causing the **CHECK TRANS** light is corrected. Generally, while the **CHECK TRANS** light is on, upshifts and downshifts will be restricted and direction changes will not occur. Lever and push-button shift selectors do not respond to any operator shift request while the **CHECK TRANS** light is illuminated. The lockup clutch is disengaged when transmission shifting is restricted, or during any critical transmission malfunction.

Diagnostic Codes:

The diagnostic codes are numerical representations of malfunctions in the transmission operations. Each code is a two digit main code and a two digit sub code. The codes, when detected, are logged in the ECU memory. These codes will fall in two classes: active and inactive. Active codes are codes currently effecting the ECU process. Inactive codes are retained but may not effect the ECU process. The diagnostic mode must be entered. A maximum of five codes, **D1** to **D5**, may be listed at one time. The highest priority code will be listed in **D1**. The **MODE** button will enable selection of sequential codes.

- Enable Diagnostic Code Selection Display.
- Stop the motorhome at a safe location.
- Apply the parking brake.
- Simultaneously press the **UP** and **DOWN** arrows twice to enter the stored codes. The first time the arrows are pressed will indicate the oil level sensor information.
- The codes will display one digit at a time.
- The mode button is pressed to scroll through the codes.
- Any code obtained should be noted and reported to an Allison Service Center for evaluation and possible repair.
- Inactive codes can be cleared by holding the **MODE** button for approximately three seconds. Some codes are self clearing while others will require service or ignition cycles to clear.

The Allison MH Series requires minimum maintenance. Careful attention to the fluid level and the connections for the electronic and hydraulic circuits is very important.

Transmission
- Periodic
Inspections

For easier inspection the transmission should be kept clean. Make periodic checks for loose bolts and leaking fluid lines. Check the condition of the electrical harnesses regularly. Check the engine cooling system occasionally for evidence of transmission fluid which would indicate a faulty oil cooler. Report any abnormal condition to an Allison dealer.

Prevent Major Problems:

Help the WTEC III control system oversee the operation of the transmission. Minor problems can be kept from becoming major problems if an Allison Transmission distributor or dealer is notified when one of these conditions occur:

1. The shifting feels odd.
2. The transmission leaks fluid.
3. There are unusual transmission-related sounds (changes in sound caused by normal engine thermostatic fan cycling, while climbing a long grade with a heavy load, have been mistaken for transmission-related sounds).
4. The **CHECK TRANS** light comes on frequently.

The Importance of Proper Fluid Levels:

The transmission fluid cools, lubricates and transmits hydraulic power. Proper fluid levels must be maintained at all times. If the fluid level is too low, the converter and clutches do not receive an adequate supply of fluid. If the fluid level is too high, the fluid can aerate. Aerated fluid can cause the transmission to shift erratically or overheat.

The MH Series oil level sensor (OLS) allows the operator to obtain an indication of sensor fluid level from the keypad shift selector. Frequently check for the presence of oil level diagnostics in the transmission. If the OLS has not been detected, troubleshooting of the OLS circuit is required. This will have to be performed by an Allison Service Center. After the OLS circuit is repaired, ensure that reset of the “autodetect” or manual selection of the OLS function, using the Pro-Link, has been accomplished.

Fluid Level Check with the Keypad:

- Park the motorhome on a level surface, place the transmission in “N” and set parking brake.
- The transmission should be at normal operating temperature.
- The motorhome should be stationary for approximately two minutes to ensure fluid is stabilized.
- Simultaneously press the arrow up and arrow down buttons one time.

- The delayed fluid level check will display in the digital display window. The display will be one character at a time. The “o,L” represents oil level check mode. This will be followed with fluid level indication readings. The “o,K” indicates a correct fluid level. Reading between the OLS and the dipstick may not agree because the OLS compensates for fluid temperatures. Abnormal indications of the OLS will be “Lo” representing a low fluid level, “Hi” for a high fluid level or “oL” for invalid information and system problems. All indications will be followed by numeric values. The “Lo” and “Hi” followed by the numeric value represents the quarts of fluid required for the system. The invalid code numbers represent specific symptoms.

Common Oil Level Fault Codes:

- 0,5 settling time too short.
- 5,0 speed RPM too low.
- 5,9 speed RPM too high.
- 7,0 sump temperature too low.
- 7,9 sump temperature too high.
- 9,5 OLS FAILURE.



NOTE: Exit the fluid level display by pressing any range button on the keypad.



NOTE: To correctly check the transmission fluid level using the dipstick, the transmission fluid must be at operating temperature. The oil level sensor method of checking the fluid level compensates for transmission fluid temperature between 60° C - 104° C (140° F - 220° F). Any temperature below 60° C (140° F), or above 104° C (220° F), will result in an Invalid for Display condition.

Any fluid meeting Dexron-III specifications are acceptable for use in the transmission. Transmission performance, reliability and durability are important influences in the type of fluids used. Change the fluid internal filters after the first 8,000 km (5,000 miles). The dipstick/oil fill is located between the engine and transmission underneath the engine access door in the bedroom. Change the transmission fluid and internal filters every 40,000 km (25,000 miles) or 18 months, whichever occurs first.

TRANSMISSION LUBRICATING FLUID

Fluid and Internal Filters Change Interval Recommendations:

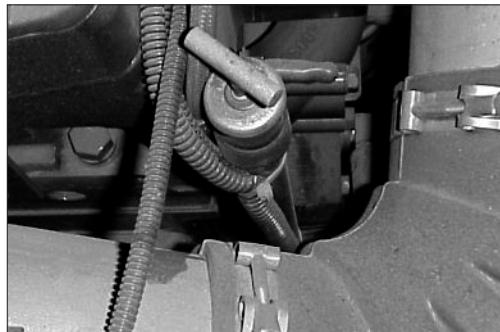
The fluid and internal filters may require changing earlier depending on the severity of operating conditions. The fluid must also be changed whenever there is evidence of dirt or high temperature conditions as indicated by discoloration, strong odor or fluid analysis. Local conditions, severity of operation or duty cycle will dictate more or less frequent service intervals.

Transmission Fluid Levels - Cold Check

Cold Check - Manual Check Procedures:

The concept of a cold check is to determine adequate fluid level for safe operating until hot check can be performed.

- Park the motorhome on a level surface using the service brakes.
- The engine is operated at a low idle. Put the transmission in **N** (Neutral).
- Apply the parking brake and chock the wheels to prevent the motorhome from moving.
- Allow the engine to run at idle (500-800 rpm) for one minute.
- Apply the service brakes and shift to **D** (Drive), then to **N** (Neutral) and next to **R** (Reverse) to fill the system. Finally shift to **N** (Neutral) and release the service brakes. Allow the engine to continue to run at idle (500-800 rpm).
- Remove the dipstick and wipe clean. Reinsert the dipstick fully into the tube and remove to check fluid level. Repeat this to verify the reading if needed.
- Safe operating level is anywhere within the **COLD CHECK** band on the dipstick. The fluid level is sufficient enough to operate until a **HOT CHECK** can be run.
- If the level is not within this band, add or drain the fluid as necessary to bring the level to the middle of the **COLD CHECK** band.
- Perform the **HOT CHECK** the first opportunity after reaching normal operating temperatures (160° - 200° F/71° - 93° C).



Transmission Oil Level Dipstick.



CAUTION: Low or high fluid level can cause overheating and irregular shift patterns. These conditions can damage the transmission if not corrected.

- The fluid level rises as the temperature increases. The fluid must be hot to ensure an accurate check.
- Be sure the fluid has reached normal operating temperature (160° - 200° F/71° - 93° C). If a transmission temperature gauge is not present, check the fluid level when the engine water temperature gauge has stabilized and the transmission has been operated under the load for at least one hour.
- Park the motorhome on a level surface and shift to **N** (Neutral). Apply the parking brake and allow the engine to idle (500-800 rpm).
- After wiping the dipstick clean, check the fluid level. Safe operating level is anywhere within the **HOT RUN** band on the dipstick.
- The width of the **HOT RUN** band is approximately one quart of fluid at normal temperature range.
- If the level is not within this band, add or drain the fluid as necessary to bring the level within the **HOT RUN** band.
- Be sure that the fluid level checks are consistent. Check the level more than once. If the readings are not consistent check to be sure that the transmission breather is clean and not clogged. If the readings are still not consistent, contact the nearest Allison distributor or dealer.

Transmission Fluid Level - Hot Check

Low sulphur #2 diesel fuel or #1 and #2 commercial winter blend diesel fuels are the most common commercially available and recommended for use. The Cummins Engine Company Inc. recommends the use ASTM #2D fuel. The use of #2 diesel fuel will result in optimum engine performance.

FUEL REQUIREMENTS



WARNING: Do not mix gasohol with diesel fuel. This mixture can cause an explosion.



NOTE: Due to the precise tolerances of diesel injection systems, it is extremely important that fuel be kept clean and free of dirt or water. Dirt or water in the system can cause severe damage to both the fuel pump and the fuel injector. Fuel additives for lubricity are not recommended. There are numerous diesel fuel additives to help remove moisture from fuel, prevent microbe growth and to prevent freeze-up during cold weather. Any fuel additives product should show supporting data for performance and benefits. Engine failures caused by incorrect fuel are not covered under warranty.

FUEL TANK

The diesel fuel tank is made of a 12 gauge aluminized steel. The capacity of the tank is 75 gallons. The engine pickup tube is cut at a 45° angle to allow optimum flow to the engine.



NOTE: If the motorhome has been stored for any length of time you should check the vent for blockage. It is not uncommon for insects to plug the vent tube. If the tank appears to be pressurized the vent tube may be blocked. To inspect the vent tube check on the roadside of the fuel tank, near the bottom. Always store the motorhome with a full fuel tank.

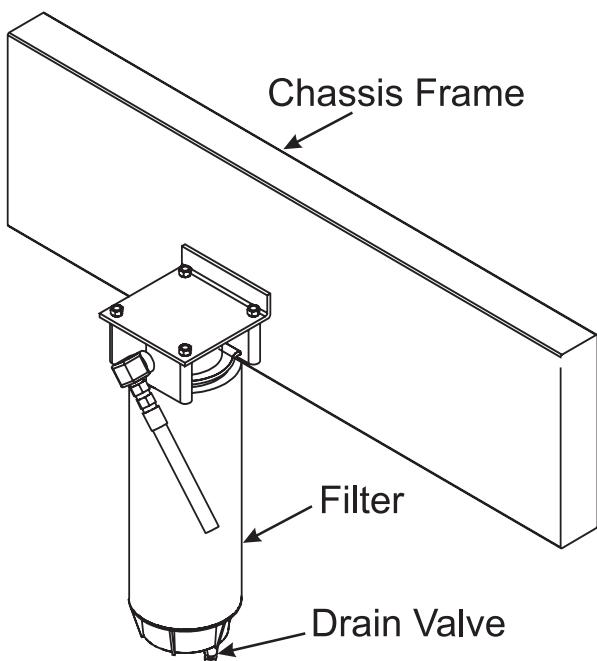
Routine Maintenance Recommendations:

1. Change the fuel filter at every oil change interval.
2. Change the fuel-water separator filter every 12-18 months or every 25,000 miles.

FUEL/WATER SEPARATOR

Fuel/Water separator is located in rear engine compartment on the right side of the frame. If the **WATER IN FUEL** light is illuminated, the fuel filter will need to be drained. Shut off the engine and open the drain valve. Turn the valve counterclockwise approximately 1½ to 2 turns until draining occurs. Drain the fuel/water separator of water and sediment until clear fuel is visible. Turn the valve clockwise to close the drain valve.

In the event the engine runs out of fuel, the lift pump on the fuel pump will run for approximately one minute with the ignition ON. The ignition may have to be turned on and off several times before attempting a start. If unable to restart, contact the nearest Cummins Center or phone **1-800-343-7357** for Cummins Customer Assistance Center.



FUEL SENDING UNIT

The Centroid fuel sender has no moving parts. It works by measuring capacitance, an electrical property, between its inner and outer tubes in the tank. The more fuel between the tubes, the higher the reading. Electronics in the hockey-puck head of the sender convert the capacitance to current to drive the fuel gauge.

Connections:

The Centroid sender has four connections:

- Positive and Negative: Battery voltage to run the electronics in the sender head.
- Send: Connects to the Send terminal of the gauge on the dash.
- Alarm: Makes a connection internally to the Negative terminal when the low alarm fuel level is reached (when gauge is reading about 1/8 tank). This turns on the alarm light on the dash. It is not adjustable.

Checking the Gauge:

- Remove the SEND wire from the Sender. Turn the ignition power ON. The fuel gauge should read above FULL.
- Touch the SEND wire to the NEGATIVE terminal of the sender. When the ignition Power is applied, the gauge should read EMPTY.
- If this test passes, place the send wire back on the SEND terminal of the sender.

Checking the Voltage:

- Place the BLACK lead of the voltmeter on the sender NEGATIVE terminal.
- Place the RED lead of the voltmeter on the POSITIVE terminal of the sender.
- Reading of the voltmeter should be about 12 Volts DC.
- Place the RED lead of the voltmeter on the SEND terminal of the sender.
- Reading of the voltmeter will range between Zero and 9 Volts DC.

Calibration and Adjustments:

- Calibration and adjustments to the fuel sender must be performed with the Engine running since this affect the voltage at the sending unit.

There are two adjustments on the Centroid sender:

- Empty: Adjusts for length of sender. It should be sealed with a brown sealant, stating that the sending unit manufacturer has set it at the factory. If the sealant has been tampered with, the sending unit may have an incorrect calibration. Do not change if the sealant is intact.
- Full Adjustment: The full adjustment can be used to correct for slight differences between fuel meters. During installation, it has been calibrated for your meter and should not need readjustment.

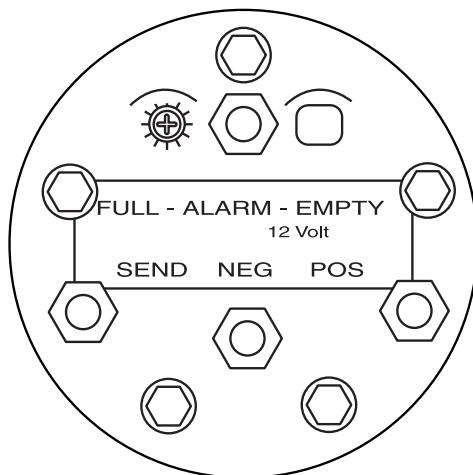


NOTE: Any Calibration procedure should be performed by a qualified service technician. Calibration procedure will require both Empty and Full potentiometers be adjusted.

Proper calibration is performed by calibrating the Empty side first, then the Full side. Ensure the Fuel Tank is full prior to performing the following procedure.

1. Setting Empty:

- Place the sending unit in two inches of clean diesel fuel.
- Rotate both the full and empty potentiometers fully clockwise.
- Slowly adjust the Empty potentiometer counter clockwise until the needle on the gauge just covers the empty mark.
- Rotate the potentiometer back clockwise slightly and then counter clockwise to Empty ensuring the needle on the gauge is not below empty. The sender will not show anything below the Empty mark.



Fuel Sending Unit.

2. Setting Full

- Put sending unit in the full tank of fuel.
- Slowly turn Full potentiometer counterclockwise until the needle on the gauge is down to the full mark.

Both adjustments should be verified several times to ensure proper calibration.

The key for proper adjustment technique is to start with the full adjustment screw fully clockwise, and with a full tank of fuel. This causes the readings to be above marks. Then adjust slowly counterclockwise until the marks are reached. The intent is to always adjust downscale rather than upscale.

Troubleshooting:

- A. Fuel Only: One possibility is that when there is a constant above full reading there may be water in the bottom of the fuel tank. The sender will not work correctly in conducting fluids such as water (it will read above full all the time in water).
- B. Electronic output: The sender has a transistorized output. This prevents an ohmmeter from getting a correct reading of its output resistance.
- C. Contact Centroid: Probably 90% of the returns Centroid tests work okay on the bench. If you have incorrect readings contact Centroid (telephone: 800-423-3574 or, preferably, fax: 904-423-3709) with the symptoms. A short, "fill in the blanks" troubleshooting test is provided, appropriate to the sender. It is easier to find the problem that way than after the sender has been removed from the system, since the problem is not necessarily with the sender.



NOTE: Sending units are calibrated by length from the manufacturer. If replacing a sending unit and the sender needs cut, the empty setting will require being set first.

Make a visual check for fuel leaks at all engine-mounted fuel lines and connections and at the fuel tank suction and return lines. Leaks in this area may best be detected by checking for accumulation of fuel under the tank. Engine performance and auxiliary equipment is dependent upon the ability of flexible hoses to transfer lubricating oil, air, coolant and fuel oil. Diligent maintenance of hoses is an important step in ensuring efficient, economical and safe operation of engine and related equipment.

Check hoses daily as part of the pre-start-up inspection. Examine hoses for leaks. Check all fittings, clamps and ties carefully. Make sure that the hoses are not touching shafts, coupling and heated surfaces, including exhaust manifolds, sharp edges or other obviously hazardous areas. Since all machinery vibrates and moves to a certain extent, clamps and ties can fatigue with age. To ensure continued proper support, inspect fasteners frequently and tighten or replace them as necessary.

Engine oil levels above the dipstick full mark or a decrease in lube oil consumption may indicate internal fuel leaks into the crankcase. Check oil level frequently for fuel contamination.

Fuel Lines & Hoses

HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

On a walk around and pre-check of the motorhome, look for oil leaks under the coach and around hose fittings. If a hose connection appears to be leaking, clean the filter and the surrounding area. If the seepage continues, have the problem corrected to prevent an untimely failure.

Hydraulic Reservoir

The power steering reservoir with internal filter is located in the engine compartment. The hydraulic filter assembly is located inside the reservoir. It is rated at ten micron*. The reservoir is filled with *Dexron III* Automatic Transmission Fluid from the factory.

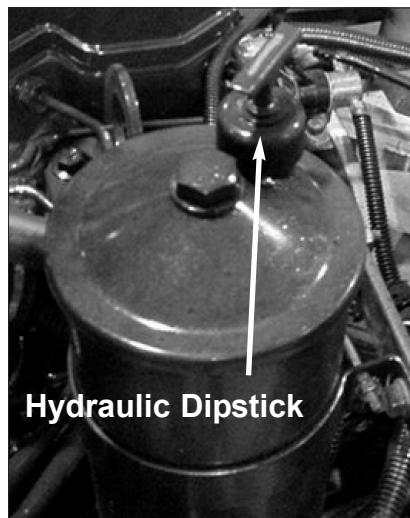
Filter assembly: Nelson 910048A

Element number: 83213D (ten micron)

***One micron is one millionth of one meter.**

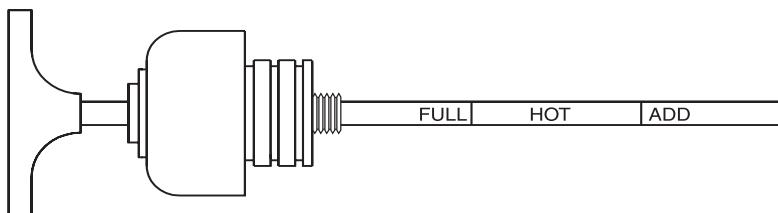
The primary function of the power steering reservoir is to keep the steering system free of contamination and to dissipate excessive heat that builds during extreme operating conditions.

Check the oil level in the reservoir every 6,000 miles or three months. The oil dipstick fill is located on top of the reservoir in the rear compartment. The oil level should be kept between the full and add marks on the dipstick. If adding of fluid is required, use only *Dexron III* Automatic Transmission Fluid.



Checking the Fluid Level:

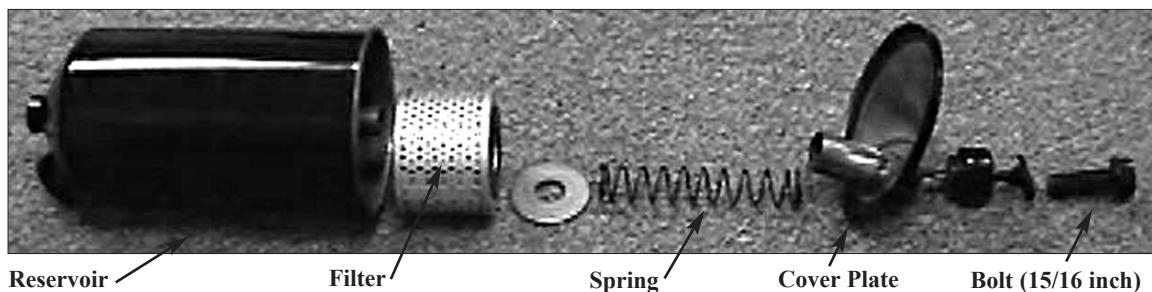
1. Start the engine and allow it to reach normal operating temperature.
2. While the engine is at idle, turn the steering wheel left and right several times.
3. Shut the engine off.
4. The easy grip handle is rotated counter-clockwise to remove the dipstick.
5. Check the fluid level on the "HOT" side of the dipstick. It should be in the area of "HOT" on the dipstick. This is the normal range for the dipstick. Do not exceed the full mark.
6. If the fluid level is low, add fluid in small amounts continuously checking the level until the "FULL" mark is reached.
7. Insert the easy grip handle back in the reservoir and rotate clockwise until securely fastened.



Change the hydraulic oil filter every 15,000 miles, or once a year for cellulose element. A synthetic media filter is available, which will extend the interval to once every five years.

Hydraulic Filter**Changing the hydraulic oil filter:**

1. Using a 15/16 inch wrench, loosen the center cover bolt.
2. Remove the bolt and cover plate to access the spring and filter.
3. Remove the spring and washer to remove the filter assembly.
4. After replacing the filter assembly, reverse the process to re-assemble the reservoir.
5. When attaching the cover plate in the rubber cover seal, check for any damage.



STEERING GEAR

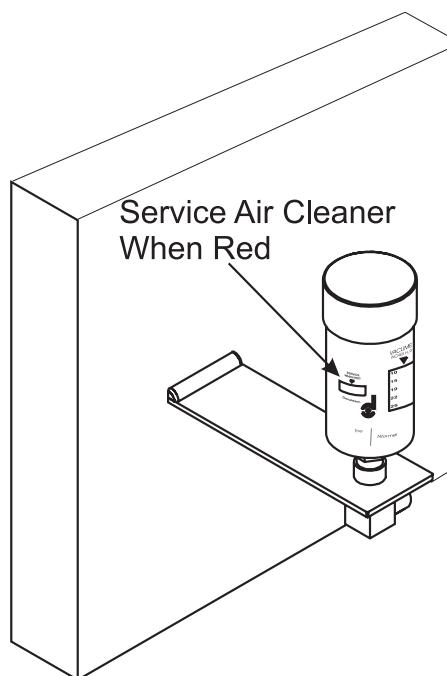
The M-100 series Sheppard steering gear requires no maintenance. Power steering is provided by using hydraulic pressure to assist rotating the output shaft of the steering gear. Located at the end of the input shaft of the steering gear is poppet valve and worm drive. The poppet valve directs the hydraulic fluid pressure to a type of spool. There are worm drive threads in the center of the spool. When in the center position, pressurized hydraulic fluid bypasses the spool. When a turn is made, the poppet valve shifts to one direction or the other, directing the hydraulic pressure to one side of the spool depending on turning direction. The hydraulic fluid is then cooled before returning to the reservoir. Inspect for signs of leakage when performing fluid level checks. Changing the hydraulic filter at regular intervals will help ensure trouble free operation.

AIR FILTER MINDER

The air filter minder is a precision overflow restriction gauge designed to take the guesswork out of air cleaner replacement.

The air filter minder is located in the engine rear compartment. Its operation is simple and virtually foolproof. As dirt captured by filter cartridge slowly builds up the system pressure drop increases and is indicated by the filter minder on an easy to read scale. The indicator locks up at the point of maximum restriction so readings can be taken with or without the engine running.

When the desired change-out point is reached, the air filter should be replaced and the service indicator is easily reset by pushing the button at the bottom of the minder.

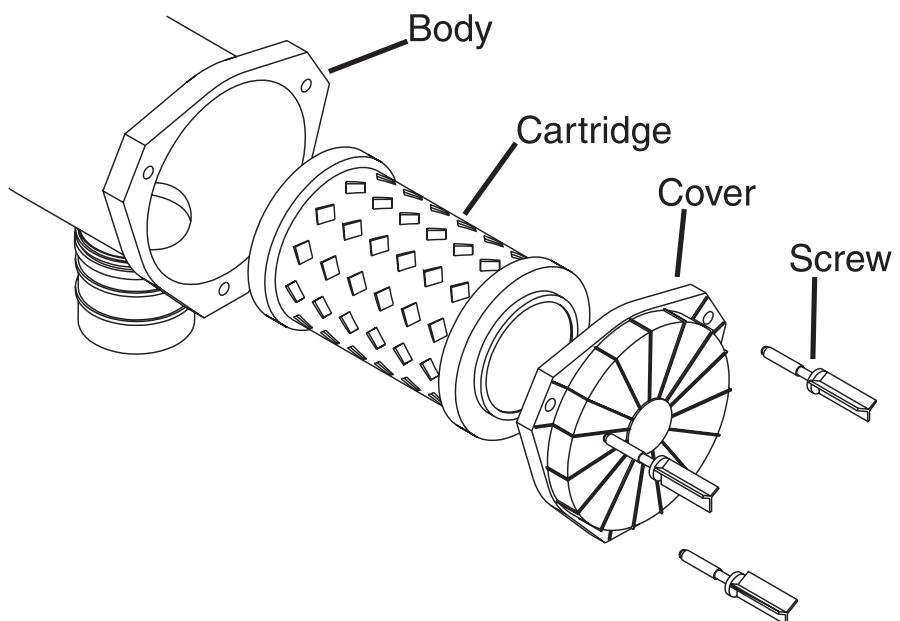


To replace air cleaner remove three screws and cover from air cleaner body. Remove air cleaner cartridge and discard. Install new air cleaner cartridge and secure with cover and three screws.

AIR FILTER - *Changing*



WARNING: Do not start the engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.



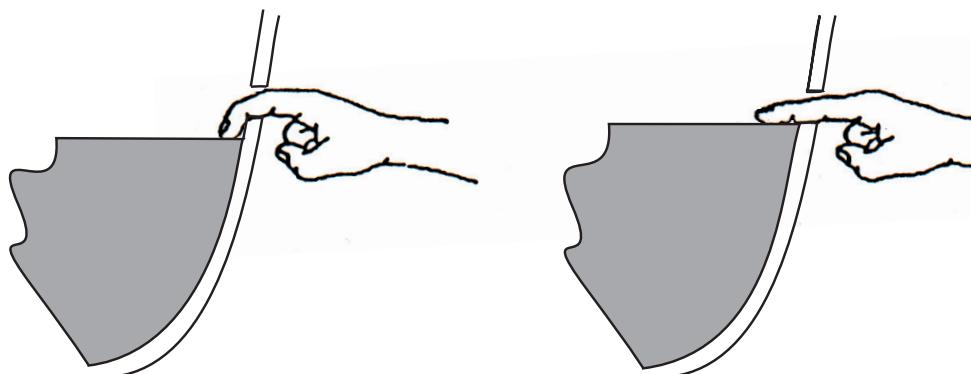
DRIVE AXLE LUBRICANT

The drive axle used on all Roadmaster chassis are filled with a synthetic lubricant. Check the lubricant level annually. The lubricant change interval is 3 years or 250,000 miles whichever occurs first.

- Regular inspection of the drive axle lube level is an essential maintenance procedure.
- Lubricant should be level with bottom of the fill hole.
- The lubricant level visible through the fill hole or close enough to be reached with a finger is insufficient. The lube must be level with the fill hole.
- The differential is filled with API GL-5 or MT-1 type gear lubricant, Pennzoil Gear Plus Super-EW 75w-90, synthetic lubricant. Mil. Spec.=Mil-L-2105D



NOTE: When checking the lube level, also check the housing breather. Clean the breather if dirty, or replace them if damaged.



Incorrect Oil Level.

Correct Oil Level

DRIVE SHAFT

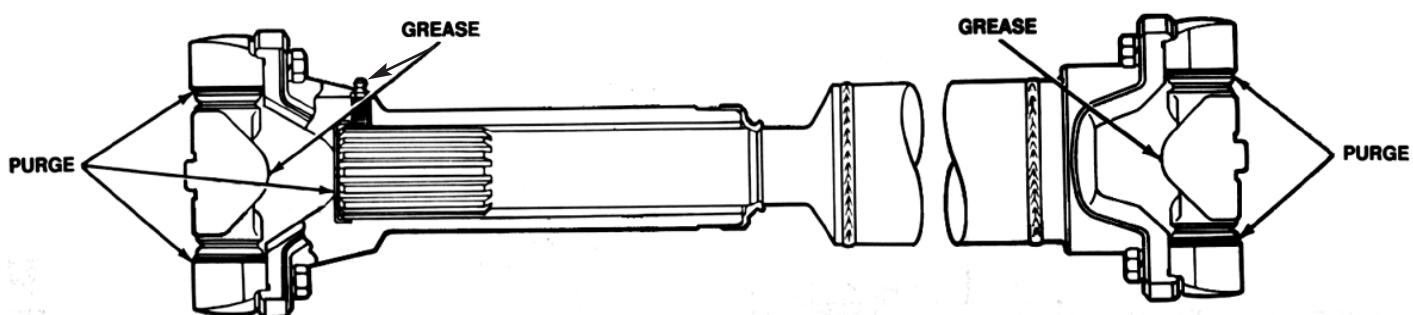
The drive shaft transfers the power produced by the engine to the drive axle. A worn or out of balance driveline causes chassis vibration that generally increases in intensity with road speed.

Greasing the Drive Shaft Universal Joints:

1. Check the drive shaft for looseness. If loose or worn, repair the drive shaft as necessary.
2. Apply the specified grease at the grease fitting on the universal joint. Apply new grease until new grease purges from all the seals.
3. If new grease does not purge at the seals, loosen the bearing cap bolts and re-grease until all four caps purge. If new grease still does not purge, disassemble and clean or replace the universal joint.

Greasing the Drive Shaft Slip Yoke and Splines:

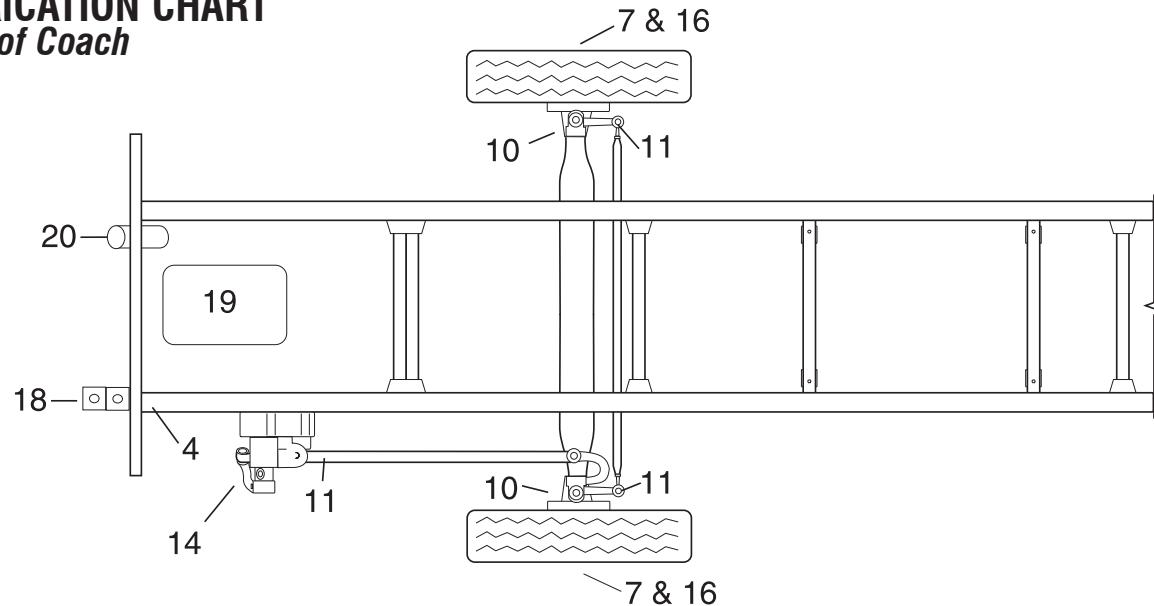
1. Check the drive shaft for looseness. If loose or worn, repair the drive shaft as necessary.
2. With finger, cover the rear air hole so grease flows to the front seal. Apply the specified grease at the grease fitting on the slip yoke. Apply grease until new grease purges and forces finger away from the air hole in the end of the slip yoke. Greasing interval is 10,000 miles or annually.



WARNING: Rotating shafts can be dangerous. Rotating shafts can snag clothes, skin, hair, hands, etc. causing serious injury or death. Do not work on or near a shaft "with or without a guard" when the engine is running.

LUBRICATION CHART

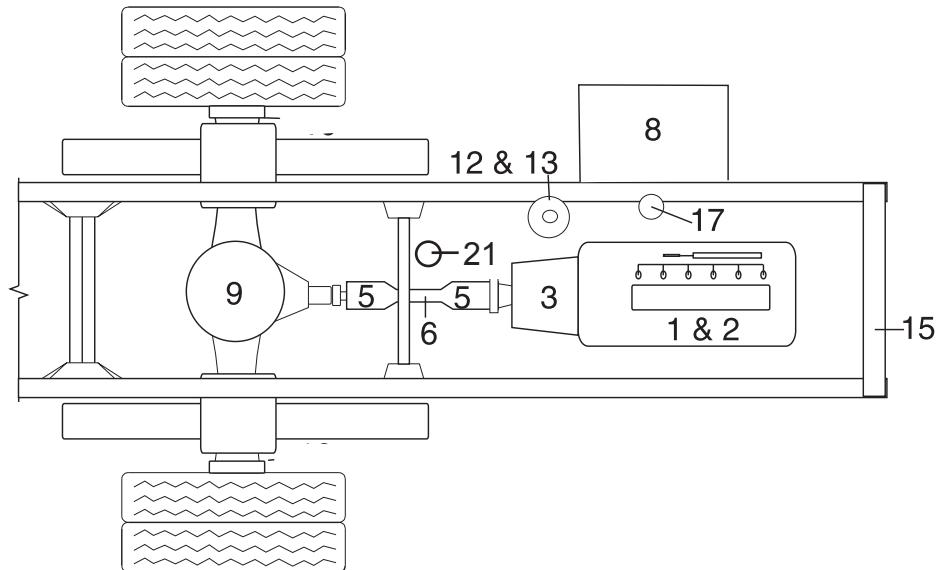
Front of Coach



Service must be performed every twelve (12) months regardless of actual mileage, to protect seals, bearings and gaskets from drying out and failing. The motorhome must be started and driven for at least 20 miles bimonthly.

Component	Action	When	Code - Refer To Chart
1. Engine Oil	Keep To Full Mark	Check Daily	EO
2. Engine Oil Filter	Replace	At Oil Change	OP
3. Transmission	Keep To Full Mark	Refer O & E Manual	TF
4. Steering Shaft	3 Fittings	30,000 or Annually	CL-4
5. Drive Shaft U-Joints	2 Fittings	10,000 or Annually	CL
6. Drive Shaft Slip Joint	1 Fitting	10,000 or Annually	CL
7. Steering Axle Hubs	Check Oil level line	1,000	GO
8. Battery Terminals	Apply Coating	10,000 or Annually	P
9. Rear Axle Differential	Replace	50,000 or 3 Years	MP
10. King Pins & Knuckles	2 Fitting Each End	5,000 or 6 months	CL
11. Drag Link/Tie Rod	4 Fittings	5,000 or 6 months	CL
12. Power Steering Reservoir	Keep To Full	6,000 or 3 months	TF
13. Power Steering Filter	Replace	15,000 or Annually	TF
14. Steering Gear Box	1 Fitting	30,000 or Annually	CL
15. Engine Coolant	Replace	Every 2 Years	AF
16. Steering Axle Hubs	Change	30,000 or Annually	GO
17. Engine Fuel Filter	Change	15,000 or 6 months	FF
18. Master Cylinder	Keep to Full	6 months	BF
19. Generator Set	Hours	Refer O & E manual	OP
20. RVA Reservoir	Fill	As Required	TF
21. Air Dryer Filter (Optional)	Replace	2 - 3 Years	--

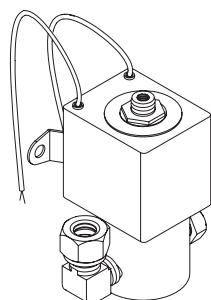
It is important to remember the generator lubrication interval is based on hours of usage. Consult the O & E manual for the generator service interval.



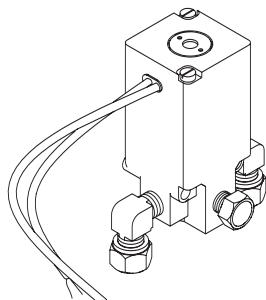
Lubrication Code Chart:

- CL-4 U-Joints located inside coach under steering cover.
- EO Engine oil as recommended by engine manufacturer.
- OP Refer to operators manual.
- MP API GL-5 or MT-1 type gear lubricant - Pennzoil Gear Plus SUPER-EW 75W-90, Synthetic.
- GO EP-SAE 90 gear oil.
- CL Chassis lubricant should be a high quality non corrosive multipurpose lithium soap pressure gun lubricant that is water resistant and designed to withstand extremely high operating temperatures.
- TF Transmission fluid. Use *Dexron III* transmission fluid only.
- P Petroleum jelly, or a commercial battery terminal corrosion inhibitor.
- AF Consult Cummins Owners manual for antifreeze type.
- BF Dot-3 Brake fluid.
- FF Fuel Filter.

PARTS - COMMON SOLENOIDS & SENDERS



Rear Bag Dump Solenoids.



Front Bag Dump Solenoid.

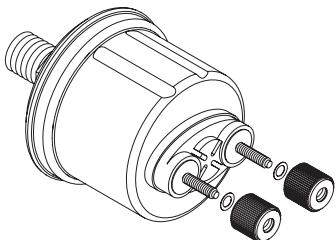
Rear Bag Dump Solenoids:

- Only used for the hydraulic leveling.
- Dumps air in the rear bags.
- Two air bag solenoids, one for each side.
- Location - Open rear the engine compartment door, the solenoids are located on the curbside next to the radiator.

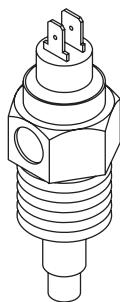
Front Bag Dump Solenoid:

- Only used on hydraulic leveling.
- Dumps the air in the front air bags.
- Location - Open the generator door and the solenoid is located on the center front firewall.

Sending Unit Locations:



Sending Unit.



Water Temperature Sender.

Oil Pressure/Low Oil Pressure Warning Dual Post Sending Unit:

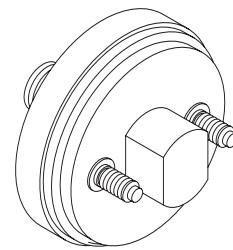
- One post oil pressure.
- ISB 260 engines, the sending unit is located on the curbside under the ECM.

Water Temperature/High Water Temp Dual Post Sending Unit:

- One post water temperature.
- ISB 260 engines, the sending unit is located in the engine block.

Low Air Switch:

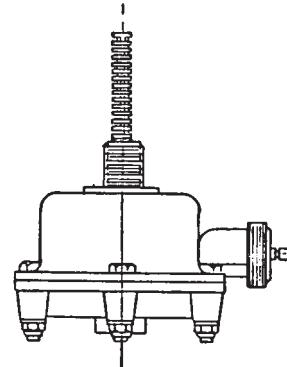
- 1/8-27 NPTF thread.
- Actuates at 66 psi.
- Single pole, two terminal.
- Switch used to illuminate park brake lamp under left dash console.
- Switch used to illuminate low air lamp located behind the dash cluster.



Low Air Switch.

Automatic Drain Valve:

- Momentary release of air/water.
- Activated through brake light circuit.
- Located WET side of the Air Storage tank.



Drain Valve.

Link Assembly:

- Located on ends of connecting rod between axles and ride height valve.
- Secures connecting rod with hose clamp.
- Type Hadley Products HPB450-3.
- MP# 2057.

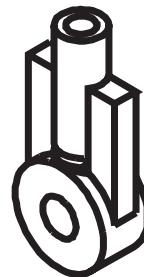


CHART - FILTERS & BELTS

FILTER & BELT	MANUFACTURER	ISB 260-300 HP	ISC 315 HP
Coolant Filter		WF 2071	WF 2071
Oil Filter	Fleetguard	LF 3729	LF 3000
Fuel Filter Primary	Raycor	S3201T	S3201T
Fuel Filter (Secondary)	Fleetguard	FS 19519	FS 1022
Hydraulic Filter	Nelson	84365 (1 Year)	84365 (1 Year)
	Nelson	87904 (5 Year)	87904 (5 Year)
Alternator Belt	Dayco	3911584	3911581
A/C Belt	Dayco	17435	17475
Air Filter	Donaldson	P527484	P527484
Air Dryer Filter	Meritor Wabco	R950011	R950011
Transmission Filter	--	Filtech - 29531007 (spin-on)	Allison - 29526889
A/C Filter Drier	--	MP 05400001	MP 05400001

MP = Manufacturer Part #.



NOTE: Filter and belt numbers were correct at the time of printing. Verify the numbers at time of removal. The manufacturer will not be responsible for incorrect filter or belt usage. Please refer to the engine manufacturer's operating instructions for specific maintenance information.

CHART - SPECIFICATIONS

Measurements	30' PBD	32' PBD	34' PBD	36' PBS	36' PBD	38' PBD	38' PBT
Wheelbase	160"	184"	204"	228"	228"	252"	252"
Overall Length	30'11"	32'4"	34'4"	36'4"	36'4"	38'5"	38'5"
Overall Height	11'9"	11'9"	11'9"	11'9"	11'9"	11'9"	11'9"
Interior Height	6'6"	6'6"	6'6"	6'6"	6'6"	6'6"	6'6"
Interior Width	94.5"	94.5"	94.5"	94.5"	94.5"	94.5"	94.5"
Exterior Width	100.5"	100.5"	100.5"	100.5"	100.5"	100.5"	100.5"
Weights	30' PBD	32' PBD	34' PBD	36' PBS	36' PBD	38' PBD	38' PBT
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating	22,000 lbs.	22,000 lbs.	26,000 lbs.	26,000 lbs.	26,000 lbs.	26,000 lbs.	26,000 lbs.
Gross Combined Weight Rating	26,000 lbs.	26,000 lbs.	31,000 lbs.	31,000 lbs.	31,000 lbs.	31,000 lbs.	31,000 lbs.
Front Gross Axle Weight Rating	7,500 lbs.	7,500 lbs.	10,500 lbs.	10,500 lbs.	10,500 lbs.	10,000 lbs.	10,000 lbs.
Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating	14,500 lbs.	14,500 lbs.	15,500 lbs.	15,500 lbs.	15,500 lbs.	16,000 lbs.	16,000 lbs.



NOTE: This chart reflects product specifications available at the time of printing. Therefore any floor plans introduced thereafter may not be reflected in the chart. All other information contained throughout the manual will still apply.

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS	ISB 260-300	ISC 315
Cubic Inch Displacement	5.9 Liter 359 CI	8.3 Liter 508 CI
Engine HP	260 @ 2600 RPM	315 @ 2000 RPM
Engine Torque	550 ft lbs. @ 1500 RPM	950 ft lbs. @ 1300 RPM
Rear Axle Ratio	4:88	4:10
Alternator Size	160 amp	160 amp

CHASSIS LIQUID CAPACITIES	ISB 260-300	ISC 315
Engine Oil	17 Qts	22 Qts
Transmission Oil (initial amount)	17 Qts (T-1000)	22 Qts (MH 2000-3000)
Transmission Oil (with service)	15 w/filter	19 w/filter
Radiator Coolant (initial amount)	11.5 Gallons	11.5 Gallons
A/C Refrigerant (initial amount)	4.0 lbs of 134 A	4.0 lbs of 134 A
Rear End Capacity	16 Qts approx.	16 Qts approx.

Tank Capacities	30' PBD	32' PBD	34' PBD	36' PBS	36' PBD	38' PBD	38' PBT
Water Heater	6 gal.	10 gal.	10 gal.	10 gal.	10 gal.	10 gal.	10 gal.
Grey Holding Tank	52 gal.						
Black Holding Tank	52 gal.						
Fresh Water Tank	80 gal.						
LP-Gas Tank*	31 gal.	38 gal.					
Fuel Tank	75 gal.						

*Actual filled LP-Gas Tank Capacity is 80% of listing due to safety shut-off required on tank.

CHART - METRIC CONVERSION

U.S. Customary to Metric		Metric to U.S. Customary		
Measurement	Multiplied By	Equals/Measurement	Multiplied By	Equals
Length				
inches (in)	25.4	millimeters (mm)	0.03937	inches (in)
inches (in)	2.54	centimeters (cm)	0.3937	inches (in)
feet (ft)	0.3048	meters (m)	3.281	feet (ft)
yards (yd)	0.9144	kilometers (km)	1.094	yards (yd)
miles (mi)	1.609		0.6215	miles (mi)
Area				
square inches (in ²)	645.16	square millimeters (m ²)	0.00155	square inches (in ²)
square inches (in ²)	6.452	square centimeters (cm ²)	0.15	square inches (in ²)
square feet (ft ²)	0.0929	square meters (m ²)	10.764	square feet (ft ²)
Volume				
cubic inches (in ³)	16387.0	cubic millimeters (mm ³)	0.000061	cubic inches (in ³)
cubic inches (in ³)	16.387	cubic centimeters (cm ³)	0.06102	cubic inches (in ³)
cubic inches (in ³)	0.01639	liters (L)	61.024	cubic inches (in ³)
fluid ounces (fl oz)	29.54	milliliters (mL)	0.03381	fluid ounces (fl oz)
pints (pt)	0.47318	liters (L)	2.1134	pints (pt)
quarts (qt)	0.94635	liters (L)	1.0567	quarts (qt)
gallons (gal)	3.7854	liters (L)	0.2642	gallons (gal)
cubic feet (ft ³)	28.317	liters (L)	0.03531	cubic feet (ft ³)
cubic feet (ft ³)	0.02832	cubic meters (m ³)	35.315	cubic feet (ft ³)
Weight/Force				
ounces (av) (oz)	28.35	grams (g)	0.03527	ounces (av) (oz)
pounds (av) (lb)	0.454	kilograms (kg)	2.205	pounds (av) (lb)
U.S. tons (t)	907.18	kilograms (kg)	0.001102	U.S. tons (t)
U.S. tons (t)	0.90718	metric tons (t)	1.1023	U.S. tons (t)
Torque/Work Force				
inch-pounds (lbf.in)	11.298	Newton-centimeters (N.cm)	0.08851	inch-pounds (lbf.in)
foot-pounds (lbf.ft)	1.3558	Newton-meters (N.m)	0.7376	foot-pounds (lbf.ft)
Pressure/Vacuum				
inches of mercury (inHg)	3.37685	kiloPascals (kPa)	0.29613	inches of mercury (inHg)
pounds per square inch (psi)	6.895	kiloPascals (kPa)	0.14503	pounds per square inch (psi)
Measurement	Subtract	Divide By	Equals/Measurement	Multiply By
Temperature				
degrees Fahrenheit (°F)	32	1.8	degrees Celsius (°C)	1.8
				32
				degrees Fahrenheit (°F)

MAINTENANCE RECORD

After scheduled services are performed, record the date, odometer reading and who performed the service in the boxes provided after the maintenance interval. Any additional information from “Owner Checks and Services” or “Periodic Maintenance” can be added on the following record pages. In addition, you should retain all maintenance receipts. Your owner information portfolio is a convenient place to store them.

MAINTENANCE RECORD

MAINTENANCE RECORD

MAINTENANCE RECORD

KNIGHT

GLOSSARY OF TERMS • 381

INDEX • 385

SURVEY • 389

AC Electricity - Alternating current also known as household power.

GLOSSARY OF TERMS

Air Compressor - A device that pumps air to and builds air pressure in an air system.

Air Dryer - A device that cools, filters and dries the air delivered by an air compressor.

Air Governor - A device that controls the operation of the air compressor by constantly monitoring air pressure in the supply tank of the air system. The air governor initiates the unload cycle when the cut-out pressure is reached. The air governor also controls the air dryer by sending an air signal (at the beginning of the compressor unload cycle) to the control port of the air dryer, initiating the purge cycle. When this air signal is removed by the governor (at the beginning of the compressor load cycle) the purge valve closes and the drying cycle begins.

Ampere (Amp) - The unit of measure of electron flow rate of current through a circuit.

Ampere-hour (Amp-hr. AH) - A unit of measure for a battery electrical storage capacity, obtained by multiplying the current in amperes by the time in hours of discharge. (Example: A battery which delivers 5 amperes for 20 hours, delivers 5 amperes times 20 hours, or 100 Amp-Hr. of capacity.)

Black Water - Term associated with the sewage holding tank. The toilet drains directly into this tank.

Chassis Battery - Powers chassis 12V accessories and starts engine.

Circuit - An electric circuit is the path of an electric current. A closed circuit has a complete path. An open circuit has a broken or disconnected path.

City Water - A term associated with the water supply that you hook-up to when you are at campgrounds. It is called city water because you pull water from a central source (like in a city) and not the fresh water tank.

Compressor Load Cycle - The time during which the air compressor is building air pressure in an air system.

Compressor Unload Cycle - The time during which the air compressor is idling and is not building air pressure in an air system.

Curbside - This refers to the side of the motorhome which faces the curb when it is parked. Often called the door side.

Current (Alternating) (AC) - A current that varies periodically in magnitude and direction. A battery does not deliver alternating current. Also referred to as shore power, utility power, inverter power, generator power, etc.

Current - The rate of flow of electricity or the movement rate of electrons along a conductor. It is comparable to the flow of a stream of water. The unit of measure for current is the ampere.

Cut-In Pressure - The pressure level in the air system supply tank which triggers the compressor load cycle.

Cut-Out Pressure - The pressure level in the air system supply tank which triggers the compressor unload cycle.

Cycle - In a battery, one discharge plus one recharge equals one cycle.

DC Electricity - Direct current also known as battery power.

Desiccant - A granular substance that has a high affinity for water and is used to retain moisture from the air stream flowing through the air dryer cartridge.

Direct Current (DC) - Power that is stored in a battery bank or supplied by photovoltaics, alternator, chargers and DC generators.

Drain Trap - This is a curve that is in all drains. Water is trapped in the curve and this creates a barrier so tank odors cannot escape through the drain.

Dry Camping - Camping in the motorhome when there is no city water hook-up or shore power. In other words, using only the water and power that is in the motorhome and not from another source.

Drying Cycle - The time during which the air dryer cools, filters and removes moisture from the air delivered by the air compressor. The drying cycle begins and ends the same as the compressor load cycle.

Dump Station - Sites where you can drain your waste (grey) and sewage (black) tanks. In most states it is illegal to drain your tanks anywhere except at dump stations.

Dump Valve - Another name for the T-handle valve used to drain the sewage (black) and waste (grey tanks).

Egress Window - The formal name for the emergency window located in the rear of the motorhome. Egress windows can be easily identified by their red handles.

Full Hook-Up Site - A campground that has city water, shore power and sewer hook-ups or connections available.

Grey Water - Term associated with the waste water holding tank. Water from the sink drains, the shower and the washer/dryer (if equipped) go into this tank.

House Battery - Powers 12 Volt lights and accessories inside motorhome.

LED - (Light Emitting Diode) Indicator light.

Low Point - The lowest point in the plumbing. Drains are placed here so that water will drain out of the lower end of the motorhome. These drains must be closed when you fill the water tank.

OHM - A unit for measuring electrical resistances.

Ohm's Law - Express the relationship between volt (E), amperes (I) in an electrical circuit with resistance (R). It can be expressed as follows: $E = IR$. If any two of the three values are known, the third value can be calculated by using the above formula.

Purge - The initial blast of air (decompression) from the air dryer purge valve at the beginning of the air compressor.

Purge Cycle - The time during which the air dryer is undergoing purge and regeneration. This cycle starts at the beginning of the compressor unload cycle and normally ends well before the beginning of the compressor load cycle.

Regeneration - The mild backflow of air through the air dryer and out the purge valve that begins immediately after the purge and lasts normally 10 to 15 seconds. This backflow of air, from the air system and through the air dryer, removes moisture from the desiccant cartridge and prepares the air dryer for the next compressor load cycle.

Road Side - This refers to the side of the motorhome which faces the road when it is parked. Often called the off-door side.

Shore Line - This is the electrical cord which runs from the motorhome to the campground 120 Volt electrical supply.

Shore Line Plug - The 120 Volt outlet allows the motorhome to be hooked up to a campground facility.

Stinger - An arm attachment on a tow truck that is used to lift motorhome slightly so that it can be towed.

TS1 - Terminal Strip One.

VIM - Vehicle Interface Module.

Volt - The unit of measure for electric potential.

Watt - The unit for measuring electrical power, i.e. the rate of doing work, in moving electrons by or against an electric potential.

Wet Cell Battery - A type of battery that uses liquid as an electrolyte. This type of battery requires periodic maintenance such as cleaning the connections and checking the electrolyte level.

— A —

Air Conditioner - Roof	124
Air Coupler - Universal.....	276
Air Dryer.....	273
Air Filter - Changing.....	323
Air Filter Minder.....	322
Air Governor.....	273
Air Storage Tanks.....	276
Air Supply System.....	272
Air System - Charging (External).....	277
Alignment Specifications.....	285
Alternator.....	244
Awnings.....	150

— B —

Backing Up A Motorhome.....	34
Battery Cut-off Switch.....	204
Battery - Chassis.....	240
Battery Disconnect - Chassis.....	239
Battery Disconnect - House.....	204
Battery - How It Works.....	220
Brake - Auxiliary.....	303
Brake - Exhaust.....	303
Brake - Park & Emergency Systems.....	287
Brake Systems.....	287
Brake Systems - Air Over Hydraulic.....	291
Brakes - ABS System (Anti-lock).....	287
Brakes - Electric Pump & Master Cylinder..	286
Brakes - Exhaust Brake System.....	287
Brakes - Maintenance & Troubleshooting....	288
Breaking Camp.....	42
Bulb Usage - Exterior.....	268
Bulb Usage - Interior.....	299

— C —

Carbon Monoxide Detector.....	65
Chart - Filters & Belts Specifications.....	330
Chart - Tank Capacities.....	175
Chart - Tire.....	53
Chart - Lubrication.....	322
Chart - Metric Conversion.....	332
Checklist - LP-Gas Emergency Procedures..	222
Checklist - Pretrip Preparations.....	31
Checklist - Set-up Procedures.....	36
Checklist - Winter Storage.....	95
Cold Weather Use.....	182
Compartment Slide (Optional).....	160
Cooktop Range (Optional).....	123
CooktopRange/Oven.....	121
Coolant.....	299
Customer Relations.....	13

— D —

Dash	249
Diagnostic Plug Location.....	268
Dinette Bed Conversion (Optional).....	159
Distribution Panel - House 110.....	212
Distribution Panel - House 12 Volt.....	218
Door - Sliding.....	158
Drive Axle Lubricant.....	324
Drive Shaft.....	325
Driving & Safety.....	27
Dry Camping Tips.....	38

— E —

Egress Exit Window.....	67
Emergency Procedures - Roadside.....	44
Engine - General Information.....	295
Engine.....	295
Engine Shutdown.....	299
Engine Shutdown - Extended.....	299
Entertainment Systems.....	160
Entry Door.....	139
Entry Step.....	137
Exterior Care.....	71

— F, G —

Fans	157
Fire Extinguisher.....	67
Front Axle (Oil Filled Bearings).....	291
Fuel Sending Unit.....	317
Fuel Requirements.....	315
Fuel Tank.....	316
Fuel/Water Separator.....	316
Furnace.....	125
Fuses.....	219
Fuses & Circuits - Chassis.....	242
Generator 120 AC.....	208
GFCI Breakers & Outlets.....	214
Glossary of Terms.....	339

— H, I —

Hitch.....	32
Hydraulic Systems.....	320
Interior Care.....	76
Inverter/Converter (Opt.).....	229

— J, K, L —

Leveling System - Hydraulic Leveling.....	292
Limited Warranty.....	1
Limited Warranty - Roadmaster Chassis.....	5
LP-Gas Consumption.....	227
LP-Gas Detector.....	63, 220
LP-Gas Distribution Lines.....	228
LP-Gas Emergency Procedures - Checklist..	222
LP-Gas Fundamentals.....	225
LP-Gas Regulator.....	226
LP-Gas Safety Tips.....	228
LP-Gas System.....	219
LP-Gas Tank.....	223
LP-Gas Tank Capacity.....	223
Lubrication Chart.....	326

— M, N, O —

Maintenance Record.....	333
Microwave Oven.....	107
Microwave/Convection Oven.....	115
Monitor Panel.....	169, 222
Oil Recommendations (Engine).....	296
Owner's Record - Insurance.....	19
Owner's Record - Personal Property.....	18
Owner's Record - Serial Numbers.....	17

— P, Q, R —

Parts - Common Solenoids & Senders.....	338
Radio - Dash.....	165
Rear View System.....	33
Refrigerator.....	101
Reporting Safety Defects.....	14
Ride Height Valves.....	280

— S —

Service Suggestions.....	15
Shock Absorbers.....	280
Shore Power Hook-Up.....	205
Slide Lock.....	149
Slide-Out Bedroom.....	144
Slide-Out Operation.....	141
Smoke Detector.....	62
Sofa Bed Conversion.....	159
Specifications - Dimensions Chart.....	59
Starting Procedure.....	296
Starting Procedure - Cold Weather.....	296
Steering Column.....	245
Steering Gear.....	322
Stepwell Cover.....	139
Storage - Cold Weather.....	
Storage - Long Term.....	92
Storage - Short Term.....	91
Storage Removal.....	95
Storage - Under Bed.....	159
Suspension.....	282
Suspension - Air Ride Bags.....	277

— T, U —

Taking Delivery.....	14
Tank Capacities - Chart.....	175
Tire Chart.....	53
Tires.....	46
Toilet.....	178
Towing Procedures.....	45
Transfer Switch.....	207
Transmission (T-1000).....	246, 304
Transmission (MH 2000 & 3000).....	247, 309
Transmission Lubricating Fluid.....	313

— V, W, X, Y, Z —

Views - Curbside & Roadside.....	60
Views - Front & Rear.....	61
Wall Thermostat.....	124
Vendor List.....	
Warranty Information File.....	8
Washer/Dryer (Optional).....	132
Washer/Dryer Prepared.....	131
Waste Water Systems	176
Water - City Hook-Up.....	171
Water Heater.....	127
Water Pump.....	172
Water System General Information.....	169
Water System - Disinfecting Fresh Water....	174
Water System - Troubleshooting.....	174
Water Tank - Fresh Fill.....	170
Water Tank - Fresh Gravity Fill.....	170
Weighing the Motorhome.....	49
Weight Terms.....	47
Winter Storage - Checklist.....	95
Winterizing - Fresh Water System.....	185
Winterizing - Using Air Pressure.....	183

TECHNICAL PUBLICATIONS

Manager Vance Buell
Editing Technical Publications

*OREGON OPERATIONS

Technical Writers

William Birch
Robert Buckholtz

Creative

Layout Design Dawn Davis, Kelly Stroble
Cover Design
Technical Illustrator Judy Pressler

Printing

Holiday Graphics

INDIANA OPERATIONS

Technical Writer

Fran Weisenstein

Creative

Layout Design Penny Eddinger
Technical Illustrator Judie Pressler

VIDEO PRODUCTIONS

Dean Mitchell

ONLINE

CORPORATE SITE
www.monaco-online.com

MONACO PRODUCTS
www.monacocoach.com

ONLINE TOURS
www.monaco-tours.com

2002 KNIGHT

Your suggestions are very important to us and we are continually striving to improve the quality of our manuals. After becoming familiar with your new recreational vehicle and the accompanying manual, please take the time to answer the following questions. When you are finished please return it, postage paid, to our Technical Publications Department. Feel free to attach an additional page if you desire.

1. Is this your first recreational vehicle? YES / NO

2. Was the overall appearance and lay-out of this manual what you expected to see in your new recreational vehicle?

3. Was the information within this manual helpful in acquainting you with your new recreational vehicle? If not please address any area(s) we need to expand or improve on.

4. Were the operating instructions clearly written, and were you able to follow the steps without any difficulty?

5. Is there any additional information you would like to see incorporated within the owner's manual?

NAME: _____ PHONE: (____)_____

ADDRESS: _____

SERIAL # _____

CUT ALONG
DOTTED LINE 

FOLD

FOLD

 CUT ALONG
DOTTED LINE